AL ADWAA

Gem

- مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية وتدريبات على كل جزء.
- مراجعات شهرية من أسئلة مجمعة من المحافظات وأسئلة مؤلفة.

CONNECT

2025

5th PRIM.

FIRST TERM



Table of contents

Theme 2 Myself and others نفسى والآخرون

Unit 4 Looking after our world الاعتناء بعالمنا

Unit 6 What's the weather like? حالة الطقس؟

Unit 5 Jobs we do وظائف نقوم بها

Final Revision & Exams



Part 1: Previous Year Revision



Revision on Grammar

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة قواعد اللغة التى درسها فى الأعوام السابقة.

1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.
نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التى نقوم بها كل يوم.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ You/ They + (الفعل فى المصدر) + ...

e.g. I walk to school every day.

He/ She/ It + (الفعل فى المصدر + s, es, ies) + ...

e.g. She walks to school every day.

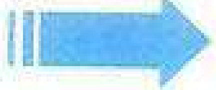
لاحظ



s → معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):
e.g. Hala wakes up early in the morning.



es → الأفعال المنتهية بـ(ss, sh, ch, o, x)، يضاف لها (es):
e.g. Dad watches TV every night.



ies → الأفعال المنتهية بحرف الـ (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف الـ (y) ويضاف للفعل (ies):
e.g. My cousin flies to Paris every year.



إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (y) يسبقه حرف متحرك (a, e, i, o, u)، أضف حرف الـ (s) فقط:
e.g. Maged plays tennis on Fridays.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

I/ We/ You/ They + don't + (الفعل فى المصدر) + ...

e.g. The students don't walk to school.

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (الفعل فى المصدر) + ...

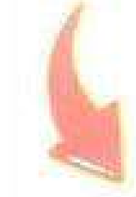
e.g. Ola doesn't play tennis.

ملحوظة

- (inf.) هى اختصار لكلمة (infinitive) وهى تعنى الفعل فى المصدر (فى صورته الأساسية دون أية إضافات).

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

Question السؤال	Do	I/ you/ we/ they	+ (الفعل فى المصدر) ... ?
	Does	he/ she/ it	



Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do/ does.
	No,		don't/ doesn't.

e.g. A: Do Italians like pizza?
B: Yes, they do.

e.g. A: Does Amira have a car?
B: No, she doesn't.



Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I/ you/ we/ they	+ (الفعل فى المصدر) ... ?
	does	he/ she/ it	

e.g. A: What do you do on Friday?
B: I visit my grandmother.

e.g. A: What time does she get up?
B: She gets up at 6 am.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

always	دائمًا	I always go to work by car.
usually	عادةً	I usually take the bus at 10 am.
often	غالبًا	My friends often play tennis after school.
sometimes	أحيانًا	We sometimes have chicken for lunch.
never	أبدًا	Mom never watches TV late at night.
every (day, week, month, year)	كل (يوم، أسبوع، شهر، سنة)	I walk to school every day.

لاحظ

تأتى الكلمات الدالة فى الجملة كالآتى:

- قبل الفعل مباشرة:

e.g. Maha usually gets up at 7 am.

- بعد (verb to be):

e.g. She is always active.

Verb to (be) in the Present Simple Tense

الفعل (يكون) فى زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative Form
صيغة الإثبات

I	am	I'm	happy.
He	is	He's	hungry.
She	is	She's	a nurse.
It	is	It's	big.
We	are	We're	early.
You	are	You're	students.
They	are	They're	quiet.

Negative Form
صيغة النفى

I	am not	sad.
He	is not = isn't	thirsty.
She	is not = isn't	a pilot.
It	is not = isn't	small.
We	are not = aren't	late.
You	are not = aren't	teachers.
They	are not = aren't	noisy.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

+ **Affirmative:** الإثبات: They are happy. She is rich.

? **Questions:** السؤال: Are they happy ? Is she rich ?

Short Answer: إجابة مختصرة: Yes, they are./ No, they aren't. Yes, she is./No, she isn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	am/is/are	subject (الفاعل)	.... ?

e.g. A: Where are you from?
B: I am from Egypt.

e.g. A: What time is the English lesson?
B: It is at 10 am.

Practice on the Present Simple Tense

1 Choose the correct answer:

1 People in Egypt (speak – speaks – speaking – to speak) Arabic.
2 A nurse (work – works – working – to work) in a hospital.
3 Mr Ali always (washed – wash – washes – washing) his truck on Saturday mornings.
4 We usually (listen – listens – listened – listening) to the radio in the morning.
5 Ali has a car. He (don't – doesn't – isn't – aren't) walk to work.
6 My parents don't (like – likes – liked – to like) watching TV.
7 Haidy doesn't (have – has – had – having) a car.
8 (Do – Does – Is – Have) your sister have a job?
9 (Do – Does – Is – Are) your sisters like football?
10 Do elephants (drink – drinks – drank – drinking) milk?
11 How (do – does – has – have) you usually go to work?
12 When does the train (arrive – arrives – arrived – arriving)?
13 We (am – is – are – be) very busy at the moment.
14 Nour (am – is – are – be) a good friend.
15 I (am not – isn't – aren't – don't) at work.



2 Read and correct:

1 Those gloves .... (costs) too much.
2 Sam .... (eat) too much, so he's really fat.
3 The library .... (close) at 5:00 pm.
4 Dina .... (have) three children.
5 Elephants .... (has) four legs and big trunks.
6 I have a DVD player, but I .... (doesn't) use it often.
7 The restaurant is really cheap, it .... (don't) cost much.
8 He doesn't .... (sings) well.
9 We don't .... (eating) dinner at 8 pm.
10 .... (Do) it often rain?
11 ....(Be) they your children?
12 What do the children .... (playing) after school?

2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous tense to express an action happening right now.
نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I	+	am	=	I'm	inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing ....
He / She / It	+	is	=	He's/ She's/ It's	inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing ....
We / They / You	+	are	=	We're/ They're/ You're	inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing ....

e.g. I am working.

e.g. Amr is playing.

e.g. The girls are studying.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

I	am not	inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing ....
He / She / It	is not (isn't)	inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing ....
We / They / You	are not (aren't)	inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing ....

e.g. I am not eating my lunch.

e.g. Noha isn't walking to school.

e.g. The children aren't sleeping.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

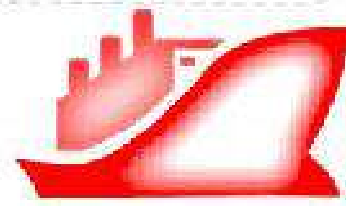
Question السؤال	Is	he/ she/ it	inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing ...?
	Are	we/ you/ they	



Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	am/ is/ are.
	No,		am not/ isn't/ aren't.

e.g. A: Is Ola driving to work?
B: Yes, she is.

e.g. A: Are you studying math?
B: No, I am not.



ملحوظة

- تتحول (Are you) فى السؤال إلى (I am / We are) فى الإجابة

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	am/ is/ are	subject (الفاعل)	inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing ...?

e.g. A: What is Nader doing?
B: He is playing football.

e.g. A: What are you waiting for?
B: We are waiting for the bus.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

Look! انظر!	Look! The match is starting.
Listen! استمع!	Listen! The baby is crying.
now الآن	Omar is flying his kite now.
at the moment فى هذه اللحظة	I'm working at the moment.
this (time) هذا (وقت)	Mom and dad are staying in London this week.

Practice on the Present Continuous Tense

1 Choose the correct answer:

1 I am (eat – eats – eating – ate) a sandwich now.
2 I am busy now. I (am have – have – having – am having) breakfast.
3 Dad (is – does – do – has) fixing the car at the moment.
4 Look! Sarah (sleeps – is sleeping – slept – sleep) on the couch.
5 We're (walked – walk – walking – walks) to the park now.
6 Look! The machines (works – is working – are working – work).
7 Ahmed and Ali (don't – aren't – isn't – doesn't) studying their lessons.
8 We (don't – are – is – doesn't) enjoying our holiday here so much.
9 Is he (plays – play – played – playing) now?
10 (Do – Are – Does – Is) you waiting for a bus?
11 What are you (drinks – drink – drinking – drank)?
12 A: Are you reading the story now? B: Yes, (we do – you are – you do – I am).
13 What (you are doing – are you doing – you do – do you) now?
14 How many sandwiches (are they eating – they are eating – eat – eating) at the moment?
15 Are you (pick – picking – picks – picked) up flowers from the garden?

2 Read and correct:

1 It is .... (rain) outside.
2 Look! Maya .... (wears) a beautiful dress.
3 Listen! The kids .... (play) in the playground.
4 He .... (not) eating fish now.
5 The kids .... (not) running in the street.
6 No, she .... (doesn't) listening to music now.
7 .... (Is) you doing your homework?
8 ....(Does) your mother working now?
9 She's reading a book .... (yesterday).
10 Why are you .... (learn) English this year?
11 Are you .... (clean) the room?
12 Is .... (they) studying?

3. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى الماضى فى وقت معين.

* نستخدم التصريف الثانى للفعل فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

* الأفعال المنتظمة (regular verbs) تتكون بإضافة الـ (ed/ d/ ied) للفعل:

1. Regular Verbs
أفعال منتظمة



* الأفعال غير المنتظمة (irregular verbs) لا تتبع قاعدة عند تحويلها للماضى البسيط وتحفظ كما هى، على سبيل المثال:

2. Irregular Verbs
أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
buy	bought	make	made	wear	wore	come	came
go	went	get	got	write	wrote	grow	grew
take	took	sleep	slept	leave	left	have	had
drink	drank	do	did	sing	sang	eat	ate

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g. - I visited my grandparents last week.

- Hana went to the zoo yesterday.



Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. Mai didn't finish her homework yesterday.

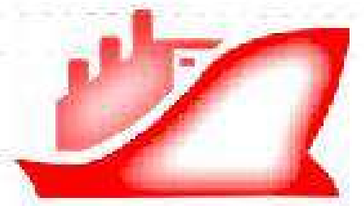
Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل)

Question السؤال A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

Answer الإجابة

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.

e.g. A: Did you do your homework? Or B: Yes, I did. / B: No, I didn't.



Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام

A: Wh- word (كلمة الاستفهام)	did	subject	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g. A: What did Talia do last night? B: She watched TV last night.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	e.g. Mona did her homework yesterday.
last	الماضى	e.g. I traveled to Luxor last winter.
ago	منذ	e.g. They had a car two years ago.
in the past	فى الماضى	e.g. My grandpa lived in a village in the past.

Practice on the Past Simple Tense

1 Choose the correct answer:

1 I (watch – watched – watches – watching) a movie last night.
2 She (went – go – goes – going) to work by bus yesterday.
3 We (live – lives – living – lived) in England in the past.
4 Sara (writes – wrote – writing – write) a letter to Mona four hours ago.
5 The children (don't – doesn't – didn't – aren't) sleep early last night.
6 Adel (don't – doesn't – isn't – didn't) want to go out yesterday.
7 He didn't (has – have – had – having) eggs for breakfast.
8 The bird didn't (eat – eats – eating – ate) the seeds.
9 (Do – Does – Did – Are) they go to school last week?
10 Did Ola (swim – swam – swims – swimming) in the pool?
11 A: Did Amany have a doll? B: Yes, she (do – does – did – doing).
12 A: Did you play football? B: No, (I did – you did – I didn't – you didn't).
13 What time (do – does – did – are) you go to bed yesterday?
14 When did you (cleans – clean – cleaned – cleaning) your room?
15 I got up at 6 (today – tomorrow – yesterday – now).



2 Read and correct:

1 They .... (walk) to school yesterday.
2 He .... (call) his friend an hour ago.
3 She .... (wears) a dress at the party last night.
4 Nora didn't .... (plays) the piano well.
5 I .... (not get) the gold medal last year.
6 The children .... (not) watch a movie. They played a game.
7 .... (Do) they climb the mountain last year?
8 Did your brother .... (had) his breakfast?
9 A: Did Nadin study English? B: Yes, she .... (does).
10 What .... (do) you do yesterday?
11 A: When .... (do) they arrive? B: They arrived at 10 am.
12 Where did she .... (works) last year?

Part 2: Skills



1. Writing Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب
من مراجعة أساسيات تكوين الجملة.



Parts of speech أجزاء الكلام



Nouns

* هى اسم شخص، حيوان، مكان، أو شىء.

e.g. Ola, cat, house, bus, ...

* قد يأتى الاسم فاعلًا (بداية الجملة) أو مفعولًا (بعد الفعل).

e.g. Nada has a car.

A monkey is climbing the tree.

Check

Underline the nouns:

1 Ali is tall.
2 My school is big.
3 Mona likes pizza.

Pronouns

* تحل محل الأسماء.

e.g. I, me, my, ...

* قد يأتى الضمير فاعلًا (بداية الجملة).

e.g. I have a car

This is my car.

Check

Choose the pronoun:

1 (Ali – He) is my brother.
2 Sarah has (a – her) pen.
3 Dad gave (Nour – her) a present.

Verbs

* تعبر الأفعال عن حدث.

e.g. play, go, drink, ...

* يأتى الفعل بعد الفاعل.

e.g. They play football.

Nader goes to school on foot.

Check

Read and circle the verbs:

I get up at 6. I wash my face. I eat my breakfast. I walk to school. I study at school. I play tennis after school.

Adjectives

* تصف الأسماء والضمائر.

e.g. fat, nice, hungry, ...

* قد تأتى الصفة قبل الاسم أو بعد الفعل (be).

e.g. This is the fat elephant.

The giraffe is tall.

Check

Circle the adjective out:

1 girl – boy – big – man
2 small – read – run – write
3 book – pen – red – pencil

Prepositions

١- للدلالة عن الوقت أو المكان.

e.g. at, under, behind, ...

٢- تأتى حروف الجر قبل اسم أو ضمير آخر.

e.g. The cat is under the tree.
The chair is behind you.
I drink coffee in the morning.

Check

Read and reorder:

1 the sea – The fish – in – are.

....

2 on – The hat – my head – is.

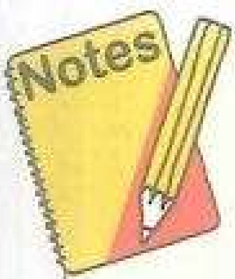
....

3 is – at – home – Mom.

....

4 watch – at – TV – I –night.

....



Prepositions of Time:

لاحظ استخدامات حروف الجر الآتية:

- **at** with times: (مع الأوقات) → 3 o'clock/ 3:30/ night
- **in** with months, seasons, and years: (مع الشهور، الفصول، والسنوات) → summer/ May/ the morning/ 2018
- **on** with days and dates: (مع الأيام والتواريخ) → Friday/ 5th May/ May 5th

Check

Read and choose:

1 I get up (at – in – on) 8 o'clock.

2 We visit Grandma (in – on – by) Friday.

3 I was born (at – on – in) January.

4 My birthday is (on – in – at) June 7th.

5 My father sometimes comes late (on – in – at) night.

6 I bought a new car (on – in – at) 2023.

7 The football match is (on – in – at) 7 o'clock.

8 Are there any holidays (on – in – at) October?



Sentence Formation تكوين الجملة

* فى اللغة الإنجليزية لا يوجد جمل اسمية وجمل فعلية ولكن تتكون الجملة من الآتى:

Subject الفاعل	Verb الفعل	Completement تكملة الجملة
e.g. I eat a sandwich.	e.g. Kareem drinks juice.	e.g. She is tall.

١. الفاعل (Subject): هو من قام بالفعل ودائمًا ما يأتى فى بداية الجملة ويمكن أن يكون اسم (شخص/بلد/ مكان /حيوان/شىء) أو ضميرًا:

e.g.

Ali studies English well.
Lions eat meat.
Egypt is a nice place.
A flower is red.
Our school is big.
He is a good boy.

Check

Read and choose the correct subject:

1 (A school – A table – Amr) listens to music.
2 (My father – A goat – A river) is a farmer.
3 (The chair – The tree – The cake) is tall and green.

٢. الفعل (verb): هو ما قام به الفاعل، ودائمًا ما يأتى بعده مباشرة.

e.g. I sleep early.
She washes the dishes.

Check

Read and underline the verbs:

1 They eat fish for lunch.
2 Hana takes the bus to work.
3 My friends are playing in the playground.

٣. تكملة الجملة (completement): هو ما يأتى بعد الفعل مباشرة وقد تكون (اسمًا / ضميرًا / صفة / ظرفًا / حرف جر / ...).

e.g.

I have a car.
She drives slowly.
Mona loves her cat.
I sleep in my bed.
Marwa is thin.

Check

Read and reorder:

1 book – I – read – a. ....
2 are – singing – Birds. ....
3 to – We – school – walk. ....



Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من معرفة بعض علامات الترقيم التى تساعده فى الكتابة بشكل صحيح.



Capital letters
الحروف الكبيرة

فى بداية الجملة (الخبرية / الأمرية) / السؤال / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / الضمير (I) فى أى مكان بالجملة / اللغات/ الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة.

e.g.
1. Ahmed is from Egypt.
2. I am Egyptian and I speak Arabic.
3. Today is Monday.
4. I visited the Egyptian Museum in August.

Check

Punctuate the following:

1 i visit my Grandpa on fridays. ....
2 asmaa went to china last year. ....
3 this is Mike from america. ....



Period (Full stop)
النقطة

فى نهاية الجملة الخبرية والأمرية.

e.g. I eat breakfast every day.
Shut the window, please.



Question mark
علامة الاستفهام

فى نهاية السؤال.

* **Wh- question:**
e.g. What are you doing?
* **Yes/No Question:**
e.g. Do you have a car?



Exclamation point
علامة التعجب

نضع علامة التعجب (!) فى نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التى تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب أو الشعور القوى.

e.g. Hi! / Wow! / I feel excited!

Check

Punctuate the following using (. – ? – !):

1 The cat is red ....
2 Where is the dog ....
3 I love ice cream ....
4 You're great ....
5 Do you like chicken ....
6 Wow ....



Comma
الفاصلة السفلى

نستخدم الفاصلة عندما نكتب قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

e.g. I like football, tennis, and basketball.

تستخدم بعد «Yes/ No» فى الإجابات.

Yes, of course.

تستخدم قبل «but».

I like playing sports, but I don't like reading books.

تستخدم قبل "please" إذا جاءت فى نهاية الجملة.

Can I have some tea, please?

Check

Put the (,) in the right place:

1 Can you help me please?
2 Hana's hobbies are reading drawing, and swimming.
3 No I don't have a car.



Apostrophe
الفاصلة العليا

توضع قبل «s» الملكية.

e.g. Kareem's bag is blue.

توضع فى الاختصارات.

I'm a girl.

Check

Put the (') in the right place:

1 This is mom s room.
2 She s Sarah.
3 What s your name?

General Practice on punctuation marks

Find and write TWO (2) missing punctuation marks:

1 Mr ali is my teacher ....
2 noha goes to the club on monday. ....
3 What s your favorite color ....
4 do you like bananas ....
5 the baby is sleeping ....
6 i like to eat cheese ....
7 don t touch the candle. ....



Tips for writing a paragraph نصائح لكتابة فقرة

How to write a paragraph

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابة فقرة إنشائية بطريقة صحيحة.

- استخدم علامات الترقيم الصحيحة punctuation.
- اترك مسافة صغيرة قبل أول جملة.
- ابدأ الجملة بحرف كبير capital letter.
- ضع نقطة آخر الجملة (.) period.
- استخدم جملًا بسيطة مرتبة.
- استخدم الزمن المناسب.
- تأكد من عدم وجود أخطاء إملائية.

مسافة قبل أول جملة

أول كل جملة حرف (capital)

My family

I have a wonderful family. I love all of them. I live with my grandparents and parents. I have a sister. My father is an engineer. My mother is a school teacher. My sister and I go to the same school. We love each other. We go for picnics on holidays, eat dinner together, and watch TV together every evening. I learn a lot from my family.

تأكد من استخدام علامات الترقيم (comma)

نهاية كل جملة (period)

2. Reading Skills



Wh- questions

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة كلمات الاستفهام والإجابة عن المطلوب بطريقة صحيحة.

What ...? ما / ماذا

للسؤال عن نوع ماهية الأشياء.

e.g. A: What is this?
B: This is a book.

Where ...? أين

للسؤال عن المكان.

e.g. A: Where are you?
B: We are at school.

When ...? متى

للسؤال عن الوقت.

e.g. A: When do you get up?
B: I get up at six in the morning.

Who ...? من

للسؤال عن العاقل.

e.g. A: Who is he?
B: He is my friend Ahmed.

Whose ...? لمن

للسؤال عن الملكية.

e.g. A: Whose car is this?
B: This is my car. / This car is mine.

Which ...? أى

للسؤال عن الاختيار.

e.g. A: Which present do you want?
B: I want the blue present.

Check

Read and choose:

1 (What – Who) is he?
2 A: Who are they? B: They're my (friends – books).
3 A: (Whose – Which) meal do you like to eat? B: Chicken and rice.
4 A: What is that? B: That is (a boy – a cat).
5 (Who – What) is your name?
6 A: (What – Whose) bag is this? B: It's my bag.
7 A: (When – Where) are you? B: I'm at home.
8 A: (Who – Which) dress do you want? B: The red dress.
9 A: (Where – When) do you play? B: In the club.
10 A: (Where – When) is the match? B: At 10 pm.

How ...? كيف

للسؤال عن الحال ووسيلة المواصلات.

e.g. A: How do you go to school?
B: I go to school by bike.

How many ...? كم العدد

للسؤال عن العدد.

e.g. A: How many pens are there?
B: There are six pens.

How old ...? كم العمر

للسؤال عن العمر.

e.g. A: How old are you?
B: I'm six years old.

How long ...? كم الطول

الأطوال الأفقية.

e.g. A: How long is this table?
B: It is 1 meter long.

How much ...? كم الثمن / الكمية

للسؤال عن الثمن / الكمية.

e.g. A: How much are the shoes?
B: They are one hundred pounds.
A: How much water do you drink?
B: I drink 5 glasses of water a day.

Why ...? لماذا

للسؤال عن السبب.

e.g. A: Why didn't you come to school?
B: I didn't come because I was ill.

Check

Read and choose:

1. (Who – How) many apples are there in the box?
2. How (much – many) books did she read?
3. A: How many students are there? B: (At school. – Ten.)
4. (Who – How) old are you?
5. How (many – old) is your brother?
6. A: How old is he? B: He's (a teacher – 20).
7. A: How (long – old) is the window? B: It's 90 cm.
8. A: (When – How) do you go to work? B: I drive to work.
9. A: (What – Why) are you happy? B: Because I've got the full mark.
10. A: (How – Who) do they go to the club every week? B: By car.



How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions
كيفية الإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من إجابة أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

للإجابة عن قطعة القراءة المكونة من (80 – 90) كلمة فى الورقة الامتحانية، اتبع الإرشادات الآتية:

I'm Nour. I use social media almost every day. Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share information and thoughts. I can find information for my homework online. I can talk to my friends and family on social media. I can share photos with my friends. My teacher always says it's important to be safe online. We shouldn't contact people we don't know. We should use strong passwords.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Identify the general idea of the text.
لتحدد الفكرة العامة من النص، عليك قراءة الفقرة كها مرتين ثم قراءة الاختيارات جيدًا واختيار الإجابة التى تتمحور حولها القطعة.

The general idea of the text is about ....
a) playing video games b) social media c) reading books d) playing sports

Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.
عليك أن تركز مع تفاصيل القطعة وربط الأحداث ببعضها وكذلك الترابط والعلاقات ما بين الأشخاص والشخصيات فى القطعة.

We can share information and .... on social media.
a) computers b) devices c) thoughts d) passwords

Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.
لتحدد وتستنتج معانى الكلمات وما تشير إليه، عليك قراءة الجملة التى وردت فيها الكلمة لتستنتج معنى الكلمة بناء على المعنى العام للجملة.

The underlined word "important" means ....
a) bad b) harmful c) good d) weak

B) Answer the following questions:

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.
عليك الانتباه إلى الروابط والعلاقة ما بين الأشياء والأشخاص ببعضها، وعليك كذلك التركيز على ترتيب المعلومات وعلاقتها بعضها ببعض.

What is social media?
Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share information and thoughts.

Make logical inferences from the text.
عليك التركيز على عناصر وأجزاء المعلومات لتستخرج من النص المعلومات المطلوبة.

Why is social media important?
Because I can find information for my homework online. I can talk to my friends and family on social media. I can share photos with my friends.

Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.
لتتمكن من تلخيص الفقرة، عليك قراءة القطعة جيدًا واستخرج النقاط الهامة والرئيسية وضعها فى جمل مفيدة.

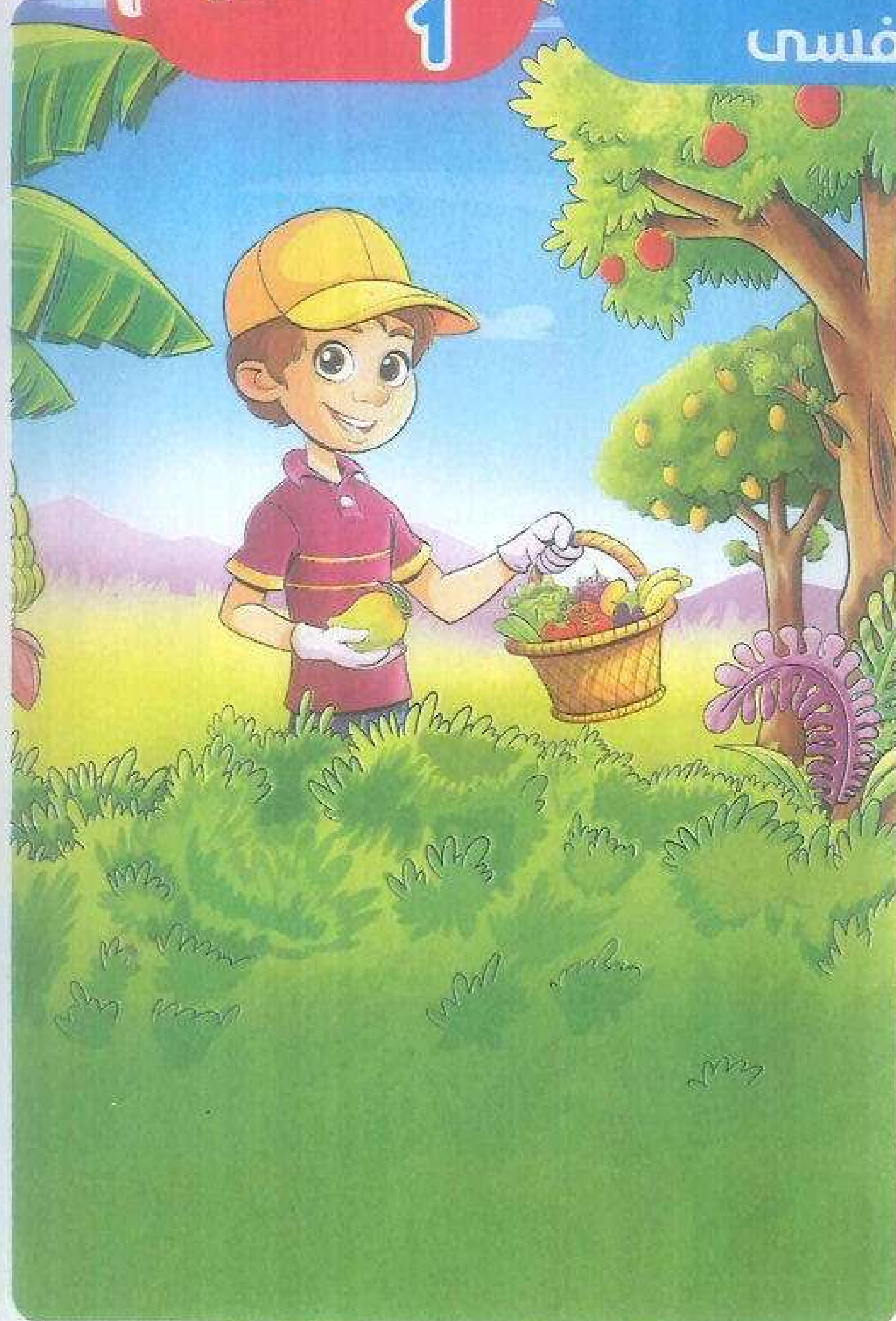
Summarize the text in two sentences.
Social media is useful, but you shouldn't contact people you don't know. You should use strong passwords.

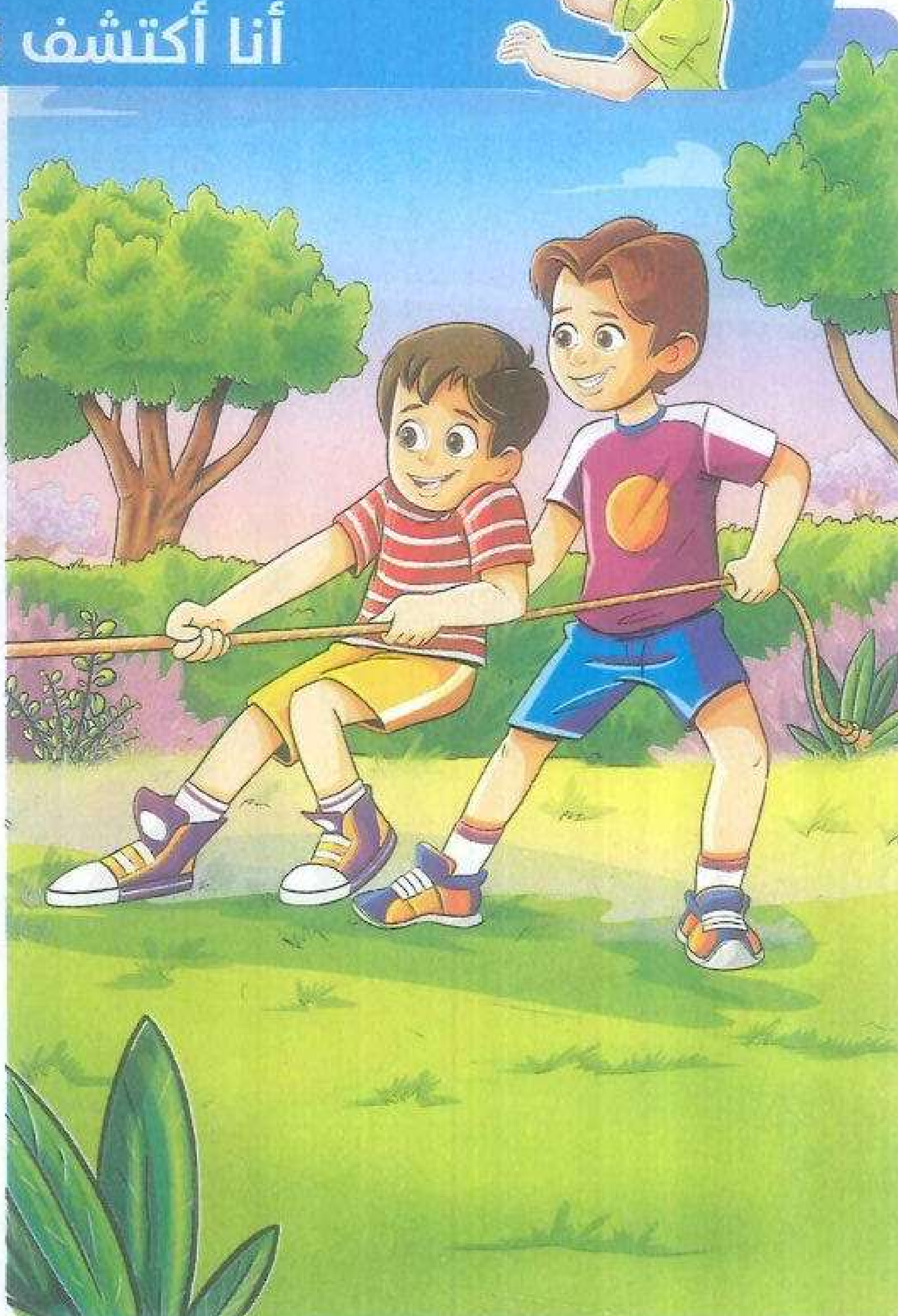
Theme 1

I discover myself

أنا أكتشف نفسى







Unit 1 We plant our food

نحن نزرع طعامنا



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
  - listen to a conversation about favorite food.
  - practice making suggestions with "how about".
  - read a fairy tale.
  - practice saying vowel sounds.
  - understand decimal fractions.
  - write a recipe.
  - research and make a poster about fruits and vegetables that grow in Egypt.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث، ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الطعام.
  - يستمع إلى محادثة عن الطعام المفضل.
  - يتدرب على تقديم الاقتراحات باستخدام «how about».
  - يقرأ قصة خرافية.
  - يتدرب على نطق الأصوات المتحركة.
  - يفهم الكسور العشرية.
  - يكتب وصفة طعام.
  - يبحث ويصمم ملصقًا عن الفاكهة والخضراوات التى تنمو فى مصر.

Did you know?

- Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.

Find out!

- Plants grow in different ways. Apples, for example, grow on trees. Strawberries, on the other hand, grow on *vines, while *berries grow on *bushes.

* vines	تكعيبات / كروم	* berries	التوت	* bushes	شجيرات



Lesson 1
Foods and Drinks
أطعمة ومشروبات

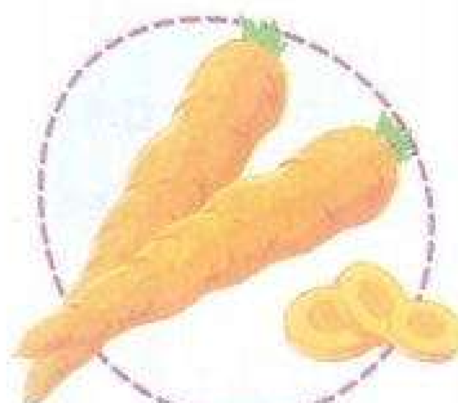
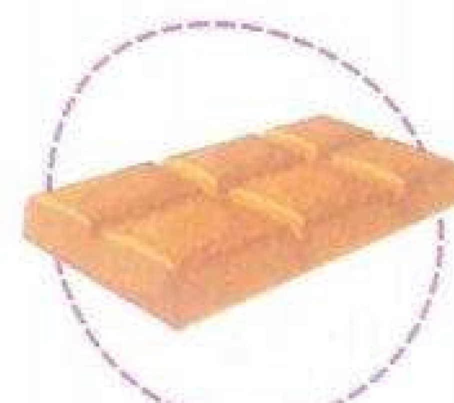
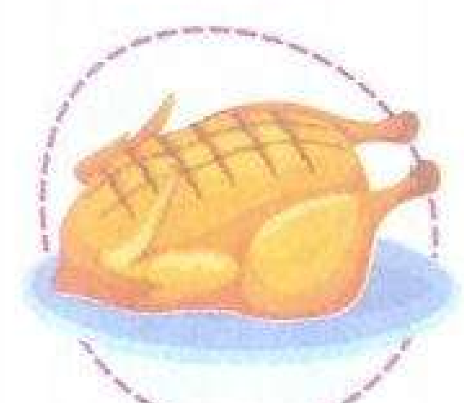




1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary

				
lemons ليمون	eggs بيض	carrots جزر	chocolate شوكولاتة	coconuts جوز الهند
				
beans فول	limes ليمون حامض	onions بصل	pineapples أناناس	chicken دجاجة

Extra vocabulary

healthy (adj.)	صحى	favorite (adj.)	مفضل	little (adj.)	قليل
unhealthy (adj.)	غير صحى	a lot	كثيرًا	mango	مانجو
garden	حديقة	potatoes	بطاطس	fresh (adj.)	طازج
market	سوق	pot	إناء/ وعاء	lemonade	عصير الليمون

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
like	يحب	liked	collect	يجمع	collected
plant	يزرع	planted	pick	يقطف / يلتقط	picked

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يعتقد	thought	grow	يزرع	grew
sell	يبيع	sold	buy	يشترى	bought

Expressions and Phrases

That's easy!	هذا أمر سهل!	It's OK.	لا بأس.

How we grow lemons كيفية زراعة الليمون

1



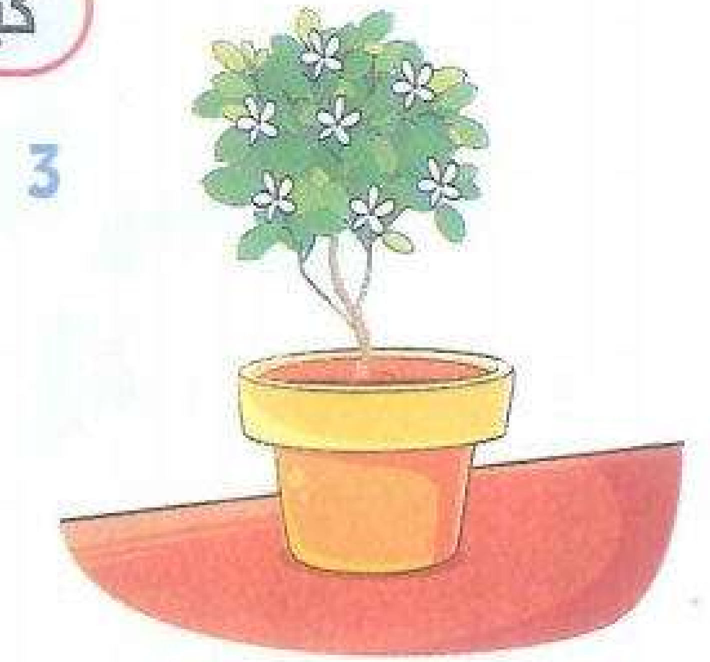
The girl is planting a lemon seed in a pot.
تزرع الفتاة بذرة ليمون فى وعاء.

2



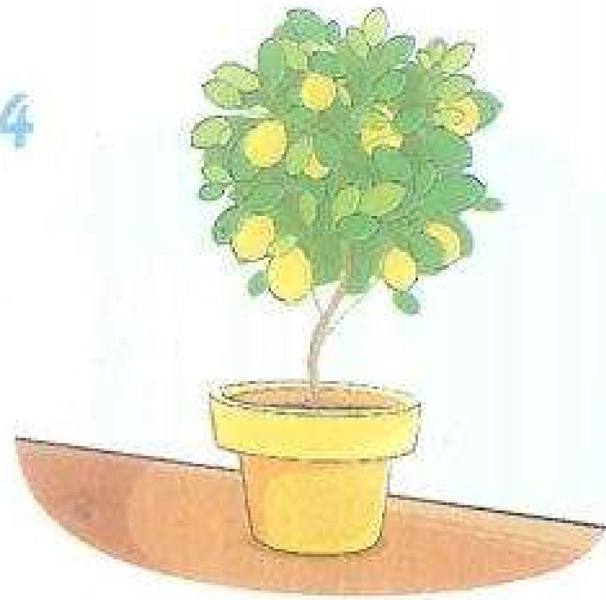
The lemon tree is starting to grow.
تبدأ شجرة الليمون فى النمو.

3



Some flowers are growing.
بعض الزهور تنمو.

4



There are lemons on the tree.
يوجد ثمار ليمون على الشجرة.

5



The girl is picking the lemons.
تقطف الفتاة ثمار الليمون.

6



She's making lemonade.
تصنع الفتاة عصير الليمون.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Fareeda's favorite food is chocolate. طعام فريدة المفضل هو الشوكولاتة.
* Chocolate is unhealthy if you eat a lot. الشوكولاتة غير صحية إذا تناولتها بكثرة.
* Fareeda has a mango tree in the garden. فريدة لديها شجرة مانجو فى الحديقة.
* Fareeda's uncle grows onions and potatoes. عم فريدة يزرع البصل والبطاطس.
* Fareeda's uncle collects fresh eggs and sells them at the market. يجمع عم فريدة البيض الطازج ويبيعه فى السوق.

Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 I always have (trees – beans – flowers – grass) for breakfast.
2 Children like sweet food like (onions – carrots – chocolate – fish).
3 We add (tea – chocolate – coconuts – carrots) when we make a green salad.
4 A: What's your favorite (drink – color – subject – food)? B: It's chicken.
5 We have a (chocolate – chicken – lime – eggs) tree in the garden.
6 My uncle (drinks – makes – sells – grows) fish at the market.

Does Fareeda think chocolate is healthy?
هل تعتقد فريدة أن الشوكولاتة صحية؟



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Dina

What's your favorite food, Fareeda?

ما هو طعامك المفضل يا فريدة؟



Fareeda

That's easy! It's chocolate.

هذا أمر سهل! إنها الشوكولاتة.



Dina

Mmm... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?

مم.. أنا أحب الشوكولاتة أيضًا. ولكنها ليست صحية، أليس كذلك؟

Fareeda

I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot.

أعتقد أنه لا مانع من تناول القليل. ولكن نعم، إنها غير صحية إذا تناولت منها الكثير.

Dina

What's your favorite healthy food?

ما هو طعامك الصحى المفضل؟



Fareeda

Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.

أوه، أنا أحب الدجاج والسمك. ولكن طعامى المفضل هو المانجو. لدينا شجرة مانجو فى الحديقة.





Dina

I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.

أنا أحب المانجو أيضًا. ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو. لدينا شجرة ليمون حامض وشجرة ليمون.



Fareeda

My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.

عمى يزرع البصل والبطاطس. ولديه دجاج أيضًا. يقوم عمى بجمع البيض الطازج يوميًا. وأحيانًا يقوم ببيعه فى السوق.

Practice



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Fareeda's favorite food is ....
a) rice b) fish c) chocolate d) beans

2 Eating a lot of chocolate is ....
a) healthy b) good c) unhealthy d) nice

3 Fareeda's favorite fruit is ....
a) apple b) banana c) coconut d) mango

4 She has a mango tree in the ....
a) market b) garden c) house d) desert

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 My grandpa is a farmer. He raises ....
a) fish b) onions c) chickens d) eggs

2 A: What's your favorite ....? B: I like pineapples.
a) sport b) fruit c) movie d) animal

3 .... give us eggs. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024
a) Goats b) Sheep c) Cats d) Chickens

4 Coconuts are ....
a) unhealthy b) healthy c) bad d) lucky

5 A .... is a kind of fruits.
a) carrot b) mango c) bean d) lime

6 Chocolate is a/an .... food. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) easy d) cute

7 We .... mangoes in our garden. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024
a) grow b) play c) run d) go

8 Rabbits like to eat ....
a) carrots b) coconuts c) limes d) onions

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

seed – farmer – Lemons – mango – lemonade

Ola likes planting trees. Her uncle is a ....(1)............ . She learned everything about plants from her uncle. She plants a lemon ....(2)............ in a pot. The lemon tree starts to grow. ....(3)............ grow on the tree. Then, flowers grow. Ola picks the lemons. She makes delicious ....(4)............ for her family.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Waleed lives in a big house with his family. There is a big garden in the house where his grandpa grows many different kinds of vegetables and fruits. He grows tomatoes, carrots, and onions. There are lemon, lime, and mango trees as well. He has chickens, too. He collects fresh eggs and sells them at the market. Waleed's favorite healthy food is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make delicious juice. Waleed likes chocolate, too. He knows it's unhealthy. But he thinks it's OK to eat a little.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Waleed's .... grows different kinds of vegetables and fruit.

a) grandma b) grandpa c) mother d) father

2 The underlined word "unhealthy" means ....

a) good for your body b) bad for your body
c) smart d) fresh

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why does Waleed eat a little chocolate?

....

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

1 food – What's – healthy – favorite – your?

....

2 onions – grows – tomatoes – My father – and. المنيا – إدارة دمشير غرب 2024

....

3 to – eat – It's – a little – OK – chocolate. الدقهلية -إدارة السنبلاوين 2024

....

4 eggs – at – sells – My – the market – uncle.

....

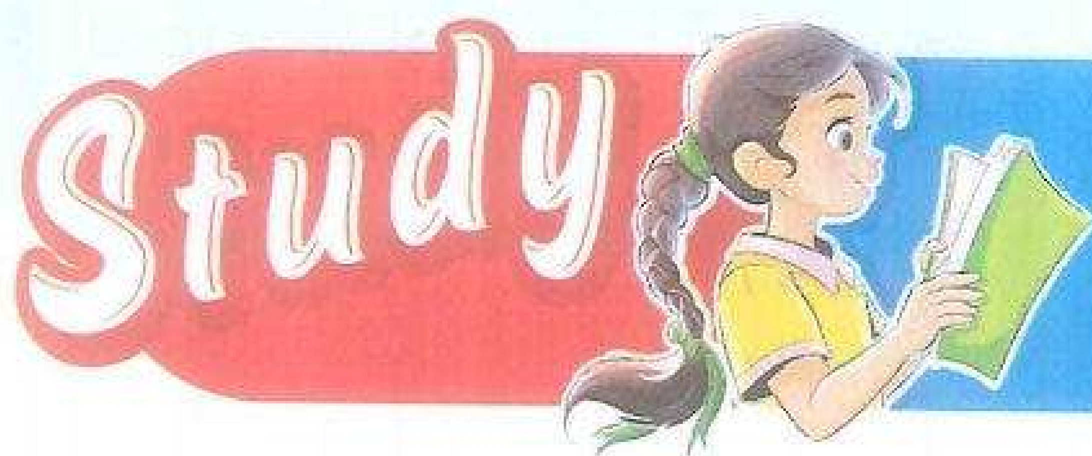
6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1 fareeda's favorite food is chocolate

....

2 what's your favorite food دمياط – إدارة الزرقا 2024

....



Lesson 2





A My Shopping List قائمة مشترياتى



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

shopping list	قائمة مشتريات	tomatoes	طماطم	pineapple	ثمرة أناناس
mahalabia	مهلبية	boiled eggs	بيض مسلوق	koshari	كشرى

Extra vocabulary

trader	تاجر	lovely (adj.)	رائع	price	سعر
pounds	جنيهات	kilogram	كيلوجرام	juicy (adj.)	كثير العصارة
lucky (adj.)	محظوظ	later	لاحقًا	fridge	ثلاجة
grapes	عنب	dessert	تحلية	food diaries	يوميات الطعام
breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	lunch	وجبة الغداء	dinner	وجبة العشاء
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن	nutrients	مواد غذائية	sensible (adj.)	معقول / منطقى
choices	اختيارات	delicious (adj.)	شهى	cupboard	دولاب / خزانة
bowl	سلطانية	nuts	مكسرات	cookies	بسكويت (كوكيز)

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
need	يحتاج	needed	visit	يزور	visited
unpack	يفرغ الحقائب	unpacked	collect	يجمع	collected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يعتقد	thought	come	يأتى	came
buy	يشترى	bought	say	يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

How much ...?	كم الثمن ...؟	How about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟	They're a good price.	إنها بسعر جيد.
There you go.	تفضل.	in total	كليًّا (إجماليًّا)	haven't got	ليس لدينا
of course	بالطبع	for lunch	للغداء	It's my favorite!	إنه المفضل لدى!
here are	ها هو	over there	هناك	on Mom's list	بقائمة أمى
until after	إلا بعد	for now	للوقت الحالى	make sure	يتأكد

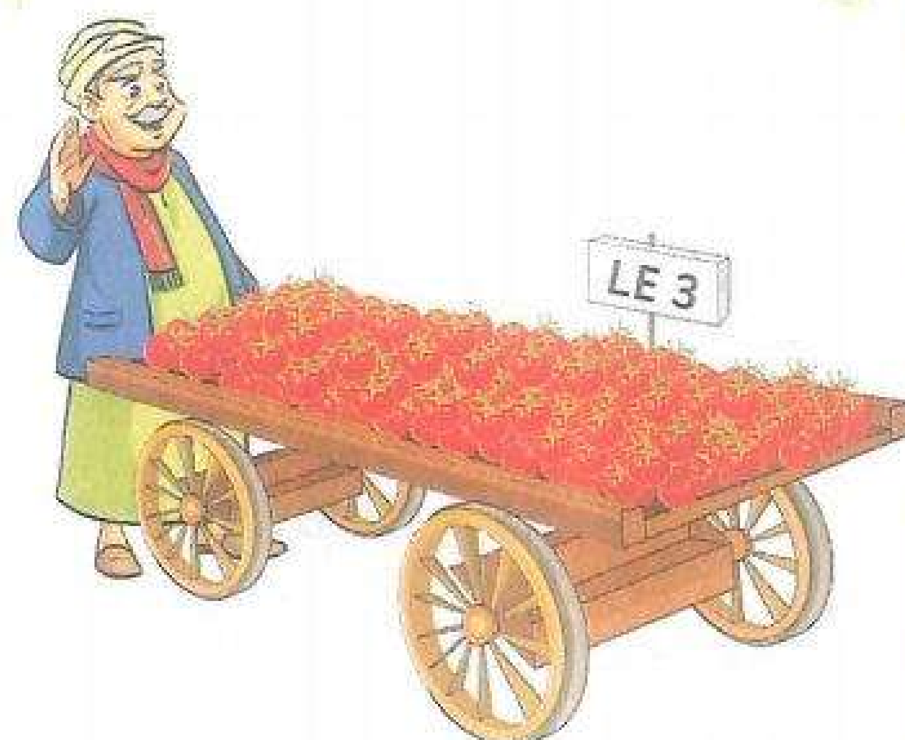


2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Listening script page 6 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



1 **Market trader:** Lovely tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely red tomatoes?

طماطم رائعة! تعال واشترِ! ماذا عن شراء بعض الطماطم الحمراء الرائعة؟

Mom: Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they?

أوه، أعتقد أننا بحاجة إلى بعض الطماطم. ما سعرها؟

Market trader: They're a good price: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

إنها بسعر جيد؛ ثمنها 3 جنيهات للكيلوجرام الواحد.

Mom: OK. We'll have a kilogram, please.

حسنًا. سوف نأخذ كيلو جرامًا واحدًا، من فضلك.

Market trader: How about buying some carrots too?

ماذا عن شراء بعض الجزر أيضًا؟

Mom: No, thank you.

لا، شكرًا.

Ibrahim: Mom, please can we have a pineapple?

أمي، هل يمكن أن نحصل على ثمرة أناناس من فضلك؟

Mom: Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.

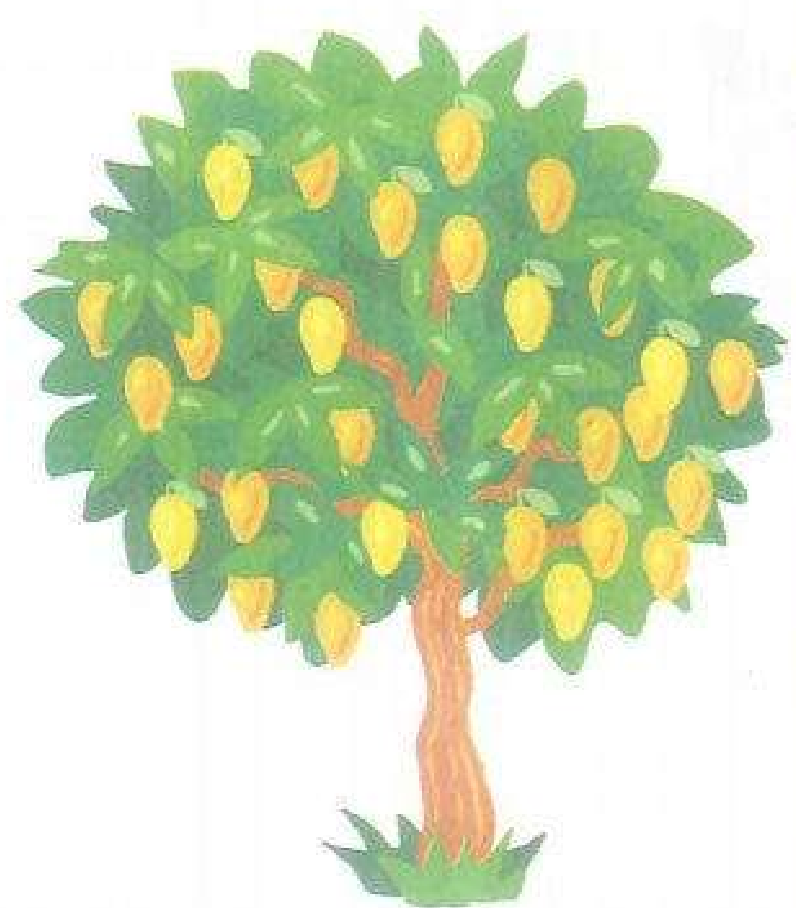
نعم، إبراهيم! لنشترِ ثمرة أناناس كثيرة العصارة.

Market trader: There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.

تفضلى. سيكون إجمالى الحساب 20 جنيهًا، من فضلك.

2 **Nada:** I really like coming to your house, Grandma.

أحب حقًّا القدوم إلى منزلك يا جدتى.



Grandma: I like it when you visit me, Nada.

أحب عندما تزورينني يا ندى.

Nada: We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree.

ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو فى حديقتنا فى المنزل. لدينا شجرة ليمون.

Grandma: I know. I'm lucky to have one. Would you like to have a mango now?

أعرف. أنا محظوظة لامتلاك واحدة. هل ترغبين فى الحصول على مانجو الآن؟

Nada: Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut mahalabia later. Have you got any coconut?

نعم من فضلك! أود أيضًا أن أحصل على مهلبية المانجو وجوز الهند لاحقًا. هل لديك أى جوز هند؟

Grandma: Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.

نعم، اشتريت بعضًا من السوق هذا الصباح.



3 **Mom:** Ashraf, will you come to the market with me?

أشرف، هل ستأتى معى إلى السوق؟

Ashraf: Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?

نعم طبعًا. ماذا نحتاج أن نشترى؟

Mom: We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday? Uncle Faisal is coming.

نحن بحاجة لشراء الخبز والأرز. ماذا تريد على الغداء يوم السبت؟ العم فيصل قادم.

Ashraf: Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite!

أوه، أريد كشرى من فضلك. إنه المفضل لدى!

Mom: OK, are there any onions in the fridge?

حسنًا، هل هناك أى بصل فى الثلاجة؟

Ashraf: No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.

لا، لا يوجد. لذلك نحن بحاجة لشراء الخبز والأرز والبصل.



4 **Dad:** OK, what do we need to get, Amal?

حسنًا، ما الذى نحتاج إليه يا آمال؟

Amal: Mom says three lemons and some eggs.

أمى تقول ثلاث حبات ليمون وبعض البيض.

Dad: Here are the lemons.

ها هو الليمون.

Amal: The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!

البيض هناك. أوه، والشوكولاتة أيضًا!

Dad: Is it on Mom's list?

هل هى فى قائمة الأم؟

Amal: No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?

لا، ليس كذلك. ولكن هل يمكننى الحصول على البعض من فضلك؟

Dad: OK, but don't eat it until after dinner, Amal.

حسنًا، لكن لا تتناوليها إلا بعد العشاء يا آمال.

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.

Listening script page 9 SB





3. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mom: Jana, can you help me unpack the bags, please?

جانا، هل يمكنك مساعدتي في تفريغ الحقائب من فضلك؟

Jana: Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!

نعم بالطبع. أوه، جيد، لقد اشتريتِ مانجو من السوق. أنا أحب المانجو. أوه، واشتريتِ الشوكولاتة. ممم، لذيذ!



Mom: Put that in the cupboard, please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays – it isn't very healthy.

ضعي ذلك في الخزانة من فضلك. إنه للتحلية غدًا. نحن نتناول الشوكولاتة فقط في أيام السبت فهي ليست صحية للغاية.

Jana: OK. Where shall I put the cookies?

حسناً. أين أضع الكوكيز؟



Mom: Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one – they aren't very healthy!

من فضلك ضعيها في الخزانة العلوية. يمكنك الحصول على واحدة بعد المدرسة غدًا، ولكن واحدة فقط - فهي ليست صحية جدًا!

Jana: OK. I'll put the bananas in the fruit bowl on the table.

حسناً. سأضع الموز في وعاء الفاكهة على الطاولة.



Mom: Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

شكرًا لك. هل الدجاج في الثلاجة؟ إنه من أجل الشاورما على الغداء اليوم.

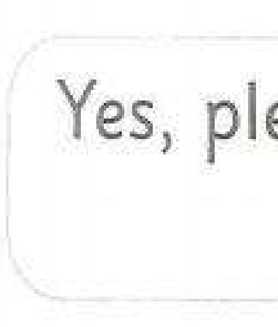
Jana: Yes, it's there with the carrots.

نعم، إنه موجود مع الجزر.



Mom: Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert tonight? I bought a bag of nuts.

شكرًا لك جانا. هل تريدين أم علي للتحلية الليلة؟ اشتريت كيسًا من المكسرات.





Jana: Yes, please, Mom! That's my favorite!

نعم من فضلك يا أمي! هذا هو المفضل لدي!



4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



FOOD DIARY
يوميات الطعام

	Breakfast وجبة الإفطار	Lunch وجبة الغداء	Dinner وجبة العشاء
Saturday	ful medames and bread, boiled eggs, fresh juice	koshari, salad, an orange	yogurt, fruit salad
Sunday	cheese and bread, cucumber, jam	chicken, French fries, rice	yogurt and honey, cake
Monday	2 fried eggs, French fries, cheese	burger and French fries	pizza

Tip! Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.
تأكد من تناول نظام غذائى متوازن حتى يحصل جسمك على العناصر الغذائية التى يحتاج إليها.
e.g. ful medames, salad, yogurt, and honey



Important sentences جمل هامة

* I have ful medames and bread for breakfast. أتناول فولًا مدمسًا وخبزًا على الفطور.
* I have chicken, rice, and salad for lunch. أتناول الدجاج والأرز والسلطة على الغداء.
* I have yogurt and fruit salad for dinner. أتناول زبادى وسلطة الفواكه على العشاء.
* Boiled eggs, bread, and cheese are healthy food. البيض المسلوق والخبز والجبن من الأطعمة الصحية.
* French fries and burgers are unhealthy food. البطاطس المقلية والبرغر من الأطعمة غير الصحية.



Language Focus

Countable and uncountable nouns
الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns:
- هى الأسماء التى (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- الأسماء التى تعد تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an) إذا كانت مفردة.
- الأسماء التى تعد تُجمع بـ (s/ es/ ies).

e.g. an onion – onions
a mango – mangoes
a candy – candies

Uncountable nouns:
- هى الأسماء التى (لا تعد)، ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الأسماء التى لا تعد لا تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an) ولا تُجمع بـ (s/ es/ ies).

e.g. rice – cheese

e.g. water – milk – bread – sugar

a - an

- تستخدم "a" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التى تبدأ بصوت حرف ساكن.
- a banana - a mango

- تستخدم "an" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التى تبدأ بصوت حرف متحرك (a/ e/ i/ o/ u).
- an apple - an orange

some/ any with countable and uncountable nouns
(some) و (any) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة

- تستخدم «some» مع الجمل المثبتة والعرض والطلب.

some + اسم يُعد جمع / اسم لا يعد

Affirmative
الجملة المثبتة

Offer/ Request
العرض/ الطلب

e.g. - Hana has some orange juice.
- The children ate some candies after lunch.

e.g. - A: Would you like some pineapples? (عرض)
B: Yes, please.
- A: Can I have some rice, please? (طلب)
B: Sure.

تستخدم "any" مع الجمل المنفية والسؤال مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة.

any + اسم يُعد جمع / اسم لا يعد

Negative sentence الجملة المنفية	Question السؤال
e.g. - There isn't any water. - We don't have any onions.	e.g. - Are there any books on the table? - Is there any butter in the fridge?

Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1 I eat (a – an – some – any) apple every day.
2 Nader doesn't want (a – an – any – some) juice.
3 Samar has (a – an – any – some) oranges.
4 Are there (some – any – a – an) tomatoes?
5 We haven't got (a – an – any – some) grapes.
6 Would you like an (apple – apples – banana – bananas)?
7 Do you have (a – an – any – some) onions?
8 Can I have (a – an – any – some) tea?
9 There (am – is – are – be) a chair in the room.
10 There (am – is – are – be) some cars on the road.
11 There (am – is – are – be) some rice for lunch.
12 I haven't got (a – an – some – any) brothers or sisters.
13 Are there any (carrot – a carrot – carrots – carrot's) for salad?
14 (Am – Is – Are – Do) there a watermelon in the fridge?
15 Would you like (a – an – some – any) bananas?

To Express Offers & Requests التعبير عن العروض والطلبات

To Express Offers: التعبير عن العروض:

لعرض شيء على أحد، يمكنك استخدام إحدى الطريقتين:

1 A: What would you like? → B: I would like + (noun).

e.g. - I would like a banana, please. - I would like some carrots, please.

2 A: How about + (verb + ing)/(noun)?
A: Would you like some + noun?
→ B: Yes, please.
→ B: No, thank you.

e.g. - A: Would you like an orange? B: Yes, please.
- A: How about buying some lemons? B: No, thanks.

To Express Requests: التعبير عن الطلبات:

Can I have some + (noun) ......, please?

e.g. - A: Can I have an apple, please? B: Sure.
- A: Can I have some grapes, please? B: Yes, of course.

Expressing Inquiries: التعبير عن الاستفسار:

Are there any + (noun).......?
Or
Do you have any + (noun) ....?

e.g. - A: Are there any tomatoes? B: Yes, there are lots of tomatoes.
- A: Do you have any grapes, too? B: Yes, I do.

Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 (How – What – Who – When) would you like?
2 I would (likes – liking – liked – like) some koshari.
3 How about (eat – eats – eating – ate) some rice?
4 Can I have (a – an – any – some) pineapples?
5 (Is – Are – Do – Does) there any onions?
6 (Will – Would – Have – Are) you like some water?



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Bread is not on my shopping ....
a) market b) bag c) list d) computer

2 Cookies and chocolate are .... food.
a) unhealthy b) good c) healthy d) fine

3 Sara, can you help me .... the bags, please? الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة 2024
a) unpack b) unplug c) eat d) cry

4 We buy fruits and vegetables at the .... الإسماعيلية - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
a) bakery b) market c) school d) library

5 Om Ali is a ....
a) lunch b) dessert c) dinner d) breakfast

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

home – shopping – some – sorry – buy

Ali and Hani go shopping with their mom every week. Last week, Mom had pineapples, mangoes, grapes, and tomatoes on her ....(1)............ list. She needed to ....(2)............ bread, too. "Can I have ....(3)............ oranges, Mom?" Asked Hany. Mom said, "No, sorry you can't. It's not on our list". They bought what they needed and went ....(4)............ early.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل:

1 any – have – Do – trees – you – mango? دمياط - إدارة السرو 2024

....

2 like – you – What – have – would – to? القاهرة - إدارة الزاوية الحمراء 2024

....

3 like – mango – Would – some – you – juice? الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024

....

4 any – Samar – have – didn't – fruits. الفيوم - إدارة يوسف الصديق 2024

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1 Would you like .... (any) orange juice? الإسكندرية - إدارة الإبراهيمية 2024

2 A: .... (Is) there any books? B: Yes, there are.

3 We don't have .... (some) onions. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024

4 Are there .... (some) tomatoes? الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية 2024

5 A: .... (Do) you like some fish? B: No, thanks.

6 How about .... (go) to the zoo? الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية 2024

7 There .... (be) some potatoes.

8 There .... (be) any cheese at home.

9 ....(Who) much are the mangoes?

10 Can I have .... (some) apples?

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1 What would you like, amira المنيا - إدارة دمشير غرب 2024

....

2 eating a lot of fruits is healthy الإسكندرية - إدارة الإبراهيمية 2024

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب نصًا من ٣٠ كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه صفحة 307

"Healthy food"

- Why is healthy food important?
- What healthy food can we eat?
- What is your food diary?

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





A Story



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

beanstalk	ساق الفاصوليا	castle	قلعة	giant	عملاق
cage	قفص	golden egg	بيضة ذهبية	magic hen	دجاجة سحرية

Extra vocabulary

poor (adj.)	فقير	market	سوق	last (adj.)	أخير
price	سعر	special (adj.)	خاص / مميز	gold coins	عملات ذهبية
rich (adj.)	غنى	top	قمة	suddenly	فجأة
terrible (adj.)	مرعب - فظيع	axe	فأس	free (adj.)	حر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
climb	يتسلق	climbed	count	يعد	counted
cry	يصيح	cried	save	ينقذ	saved
reach	يصل	reached	grab	ينتزع	grabbed
chop	يقطع	chopped	stay	يبقى	stayed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sell	يبيع	sold	meet	يقابل	met
buy	يشترى	bought	throw	يرمى	threw
fall	يسقط	fell	get	يحصل على	got

Expressions and Phrases

get a good price	يحصل على سعر جيد	out of the window	خارج النافذة	on the way to	فى الطريق إلى
go all the way	يذهب على طول الطريق	up to the clouds	عاليًا نحو السحاب	at the very top	فى أعلى القمة
look very sad	يبدو حزينًا للغاية	as soon as	بمجرد أن	run away	يهرب بعيدًا
at last	أخيرًا	Thank you for ...	شكرًا على ...	happily ever after	فى سعادة أبدية

Definitions

giant	عملاق	a very, very big person	شخص كبير جدًا
grab (v.)	ينتزع	to pick something up quickly	أن يلتقط شيئًا ما سريعًا
castle	قلعة	a very large building built a long time ago	مبنى ضخم بُنى منذ فترة طويلة
chop (v.)	يقطع	to cut something down	أن يقطع شيئًا ما
cage	قفص	a box in which we keep animals	صندوق نربى فيه الحيوانات

Jack and the Beanstalk جاك وساق الفاصولياء

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"

كان جاك ووالدته فقيرين للغاية. قالت والدة جاك: «اذهب إلى السوق وقم ببيع بقرتنا الأخيرة». «من فضلك احصل على سعر جيد يا جاك!»

On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.

فى الطريق إلى السوق ، التقى جاك برجل عجوز. قال الرجل: «لدى هذه الفاصوليا المميزة. هل تريد شراءها؟ سوف تجعلك غنيا!» .

Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

اشترى جاك الفاصوليا. لكن والدته كانت غاضبة جدا. «نحن بحاجة إلى الطعام يا جاك ، وليس الفاصوليا!» رمتها من النافذة. قال جاك «آسف يا أمى». «اعتقدت أنها ستساعدنا». ذهب جاك إلى الفراش. كان حزينًا وجائعًا جدًا.

The middle



The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a castle. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.

فى صباح اليوم التالى، رأى جاك ساق شجرة فاصوليا طويلة جدًا فى الحديقة. تمتد الساق عاليًا حتى السحاب. تسلق جاك ساق الفاصوليا. فى القمة رأى قلعة. ذهب جاك إلى الداخل ليرى ما إذا كان أى شخص بحاجة إلى المساعدة.

Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the floor. The hen was in a cage. Next to the hen were some golden eggs. The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please," cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!"
"I'll help you!" said Jack.

فجأة، رأى جاك عملاقًا كبيرًا جدًا. كان يعد أكياسًا من العملات الذهبية. كانت هناك دجاجة على الأرضية. كانت الدجاجة فى قفص. بجانب الدجاجة كان هناك بعض البيض الذهبى. كانت الدجاجة تبدو حزينة جدا. لقد كانت دجاجة سحرية ، ويمكنها التحدث! صرخت الدجاجة: «ساعدنى من فضلك». «أنقذنى من هذا العملاق المرعب!» قال جاك «سأساعدك!» .

The end

As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe. He chopped down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!

"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?" Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.

بمجرد أن وصل جاك إلى حديقته، أمسك بفأسه. قطع ساق الفاصوليا. سقط العملاق على الأرض وهرب بعيدًا. كانت الدجاجة سعيدة! فقد أصبحت حرة أخيرًا!

«شكرًا لك على مساعدتى يا جاك. أنت فتى طيب. هل يمكننى البقاء معك ومع والدتك من فضلك؟» لم يعد جاك ووالدته فقراء بعد الآن. باعوا البيض الذهبى لشراء الطعام. عاش جاك ووالدته فى سعادة إلى الأبد.

Take care!

- كلمة (gold) تعنى ذهبى مصنوع من خام الذهب.

e.g. The giant was counting bags of gold coins.

- كلمة (golden) تعنى لونه أصفر مثل الذهب.

e.g. There were some golden eggs.

Check

Choose the correct answer: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:**

1. Jack doesn't have money. He isn't (poor – sick – rich – angry).
2. Jack met an old (girl – woman – man – hen) on the way to the market.
3. It was a magic hen, and it can (dance – eat – talk – fly)!
4. Jack went to the market to sell their (goat – cow – sheep – chicken).
5. Jack (chopped – built – cooked – grabbed) down the beanstalk.
6. The magic hen was in a (garden – cage – house – school).
7. The giant lives in a (house – castle – school – market).
8. Jack used a/an (car – cage – beanstalk – axe) to cut down the tree.



Pronunciation

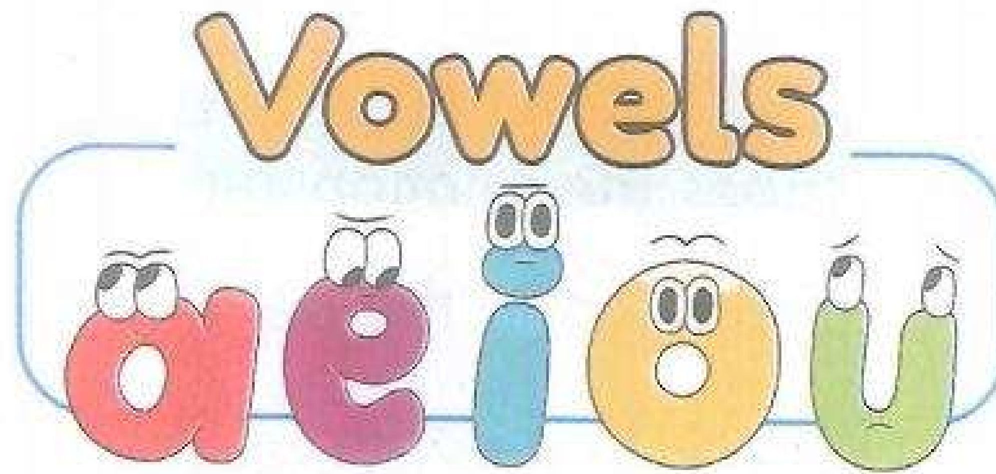
Short and long vowels الحروف المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة



3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Vowels



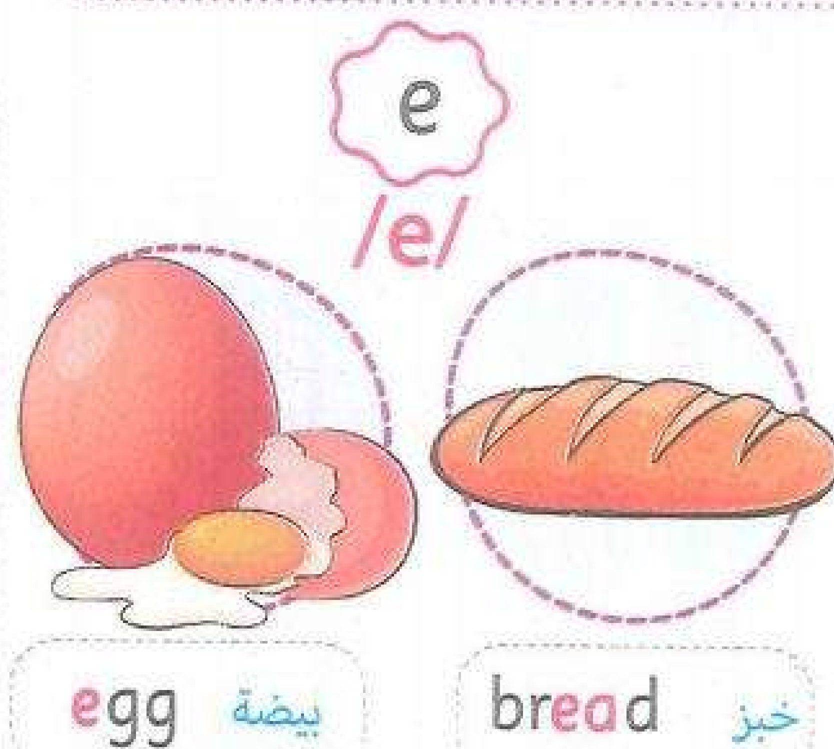
Short vowels

a /æ/



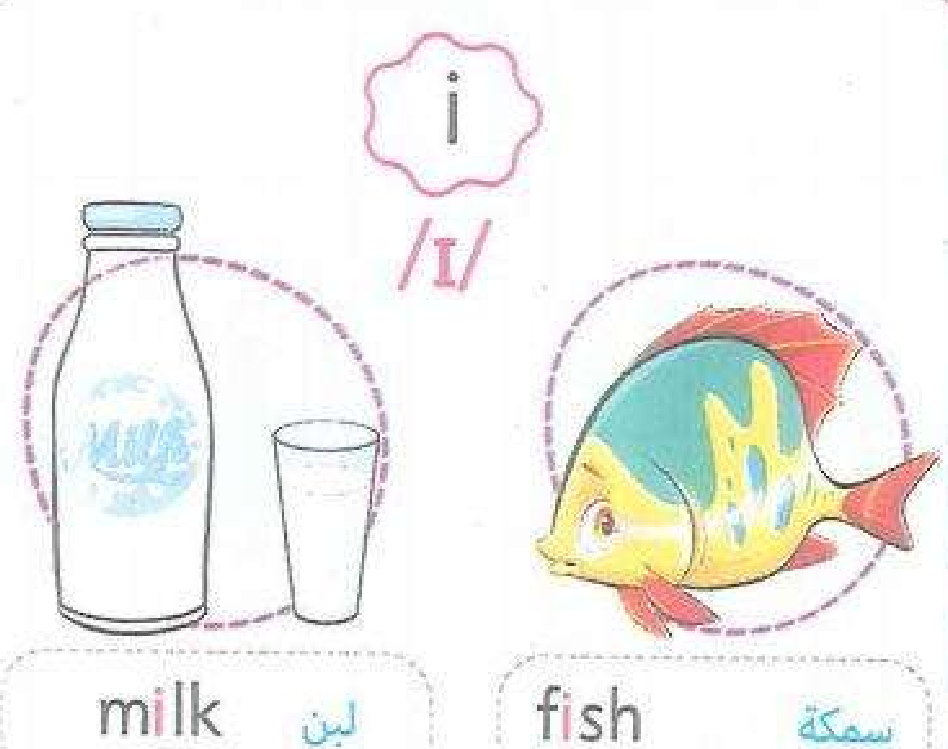
candy حلوى | mango مانجو

e /e/



egg بيضة | bread خبز

i /ɪ/



milk لبن | fish سمكة

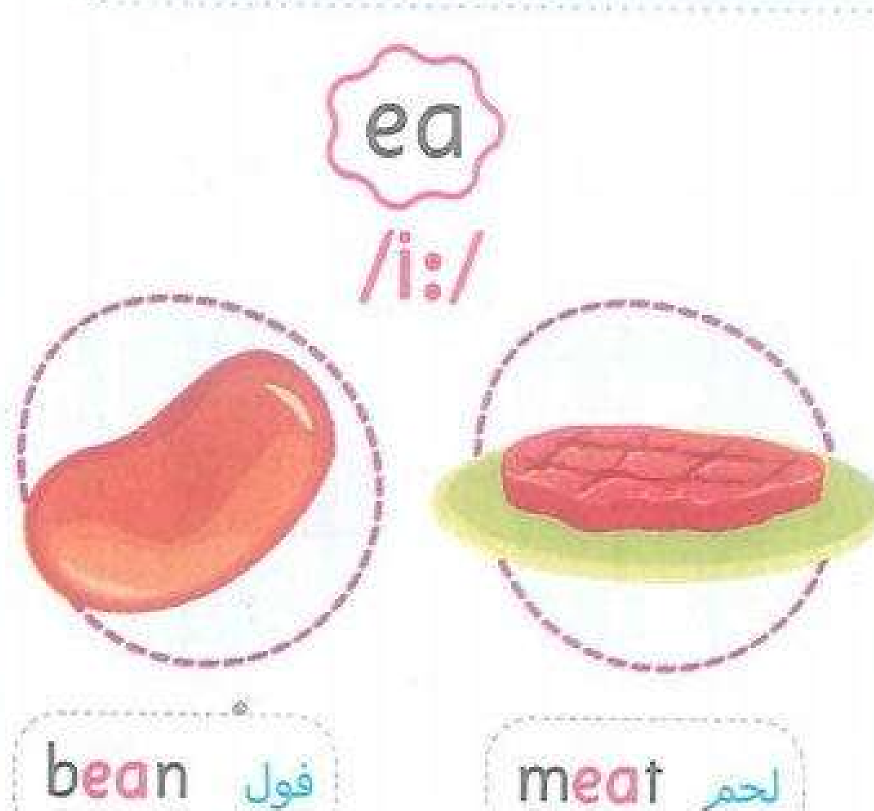
Long vowels

a-e /eɪ/



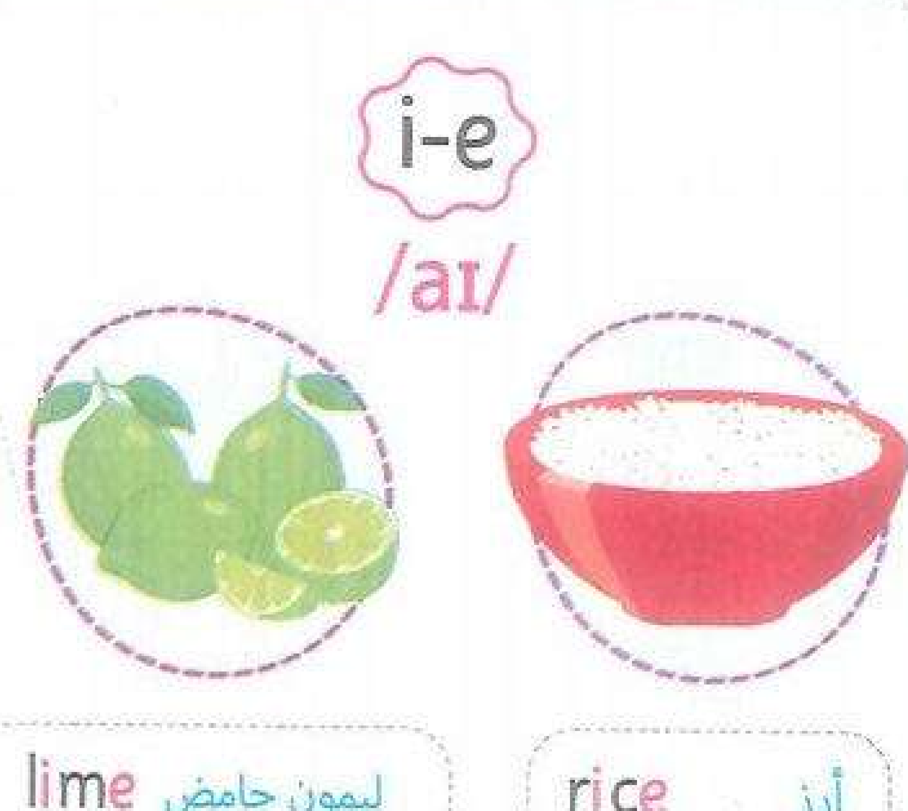
cake كيك | grape عنب

ea /iː/

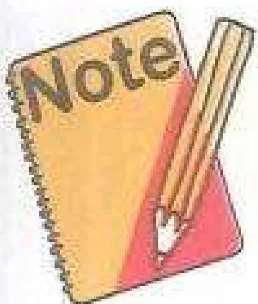


bean فول | meat لحم

i-e /aɪ/



lime ليمون حامض | rice أرز



Some words sound the same but have different spelling.

تبدو بعض الكلمات متشابهة ولكن لها تهجئة مختلفة.

/eɪ/

a-e

cake	كيك
snake	ثعبان
bake	يخبز

ai

rain	مطر
pain	ألم
tail	ذيل

ay

gray	رمادى
stay	يبقى
say	يقول
play	يلعب



CLIL: Math

Decimal fractions الكسور العشرية



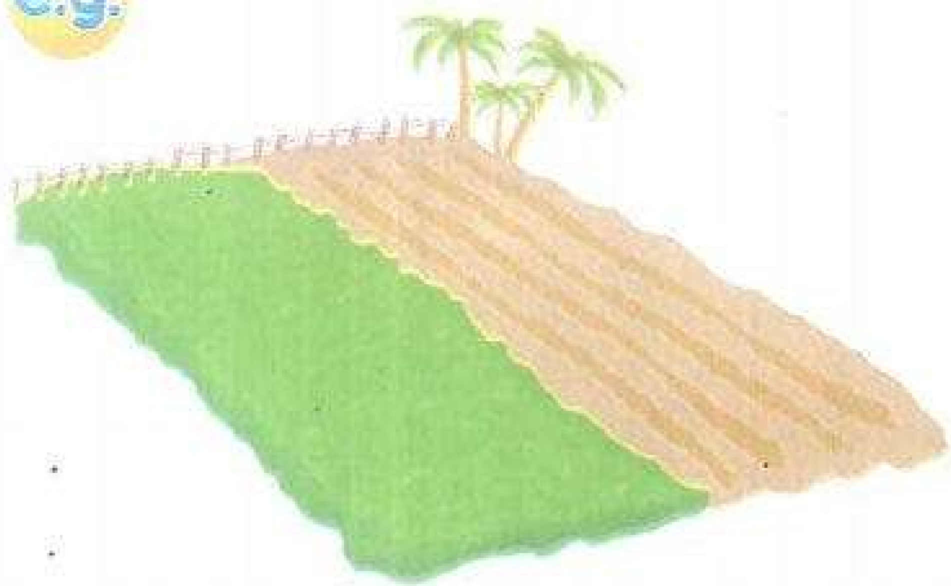
4. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

A fraction is a number that describes the relationship between a part (represented by the numerator) and a whole (represented in the denominator).

الكسر هو رقم يوضح العلاقة بين الجزء (متمثلًا فى البسط) والكل (متمثلًا فى المقام).

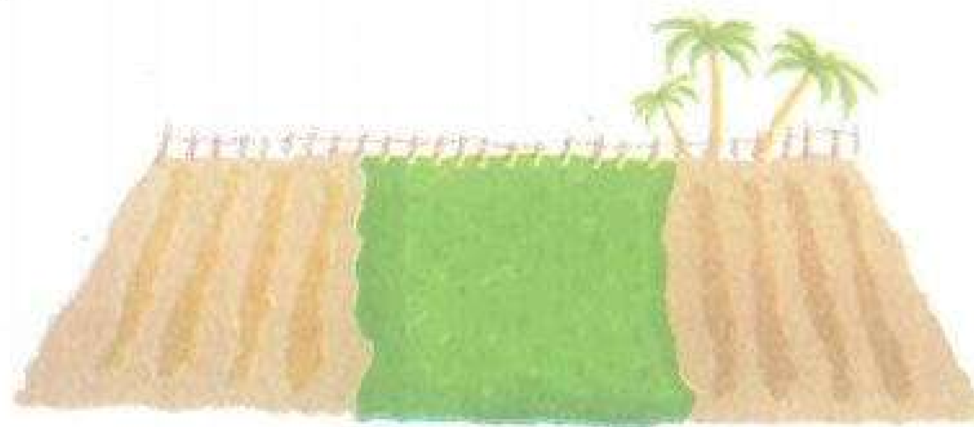
Numerator → $\frac{1}{2}$ ← Denominator

e.g.



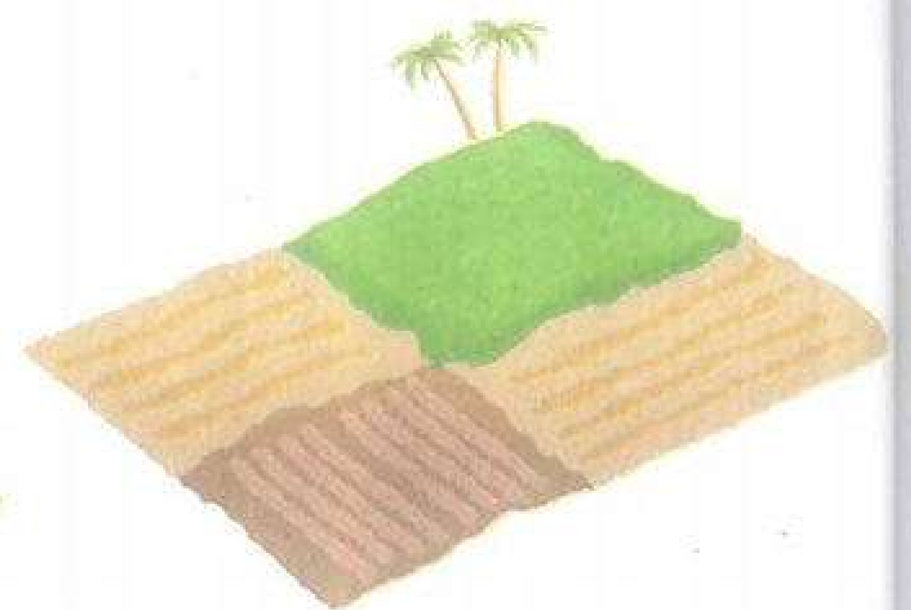
$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$

Amir planted $\frac{1}{2}$ of his field.



$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$

Walaa planted $\frac{1}{3}$ of her field.



$\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$

Tarek planted $\frac{1}{4}$ of his field.



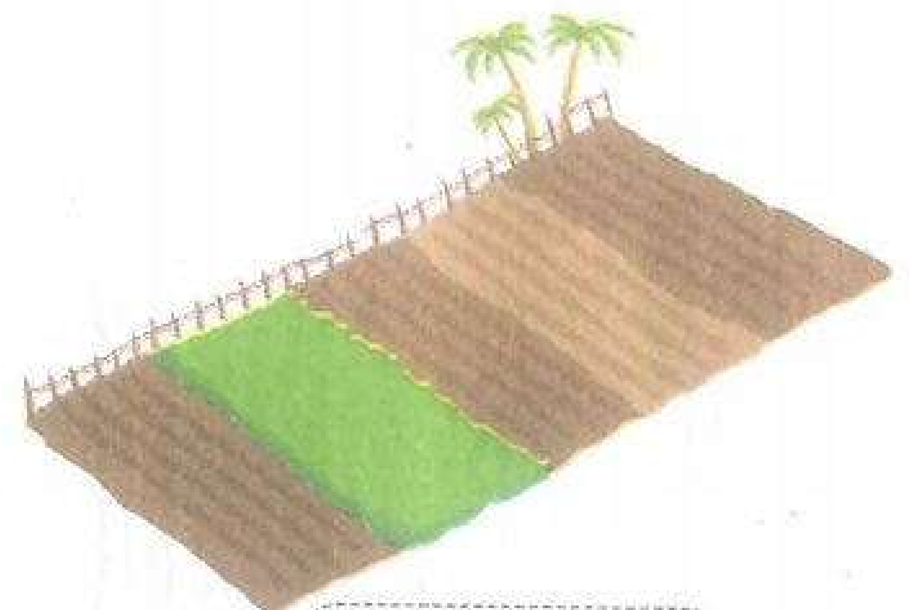
$\frac{3}{4} = 0.75$

Sherif planted $\frac{3}{4}$ of his field.



$\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$

Manar planted $\frac{2}{5}$ of her field.



$\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$

Lubna planted $\frac{1}{5}$ of her field.



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



1 Jack bought some special ....
a) apples b) rice c) beans d) wheat

2 The hen was in a ....
a) garden b) cage c) house d) tent

3 Next to the hen was a .... egg.
a) silver b) giant c) big d) golden

4 Jack and his mother became .... ever after.
a) sad b) poor c) magic d) rich

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 We can buy and sell things at the ....
a) library b) school c) market d) park

2 He is a very, very big person; he is a ....
a) lucky b) giant c) magic d) rich

3 "..........” is to cut something down.
a) Castle b) Giant c) Chop d) Grab

4 It was a .... hen. It could talk.
a) lucky b) bad c) magic d) rich

5 The farmer uses his .... to cut the wood. الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2024
a) bread b) axe c) clothes d) hen

6 A .... is a very large building built a long time ago. الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024
a) market b) cage c) field d) castle

7 He has no money. He is .... الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2024
a) pour b) rich c) poor d) rash

8 Lions are kept in a .... at the zoo. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024
a) cage b) page c) bag d) coin

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

أقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

free – buy – rich – special – cow

الشرقية - إدارة الحسينية 2024

Jack and his mother were poor. Jack went to sell his ....(1)............ in the market. On his way, he met an old man. The man had ....(2)............ beans. He wanted Jack to ....(3)............ them. He said the beans will make Jack ....(4)............. Jack bought the beans at last.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

الشرقية - إدارة أولاد صقر 2024

Once upon a time, a kind farmer lived with his wife in a village. They were very poor, but they were happy. Every morning, the farmer collected eggs from the hens to eat. One morning, the farmer found a golden egg, so he ran to tell his wife. He sold the golden egg at the market for a lot of money. This happened for a week, so he got a lot of money. They became very rich.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The farmer sold the golden egg at the ....

a) farm b) house c) market d) bag

2 The farmer and his wife were very .... with the golden eggs.

a) sad b) unhappy c) old d) happy

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did the farmer and his wife live?

....

4 Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل:

دمياط - إدارة الزرقا 2024

1 was – The – in – hen – cage – a.

....

2 bought – special – Jack – the – beans.

....

3 price, – Jack – Please – good – a – get.

....

4 giant – from – Save – this – me – terrible.

....

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

1 Let s bake a cake

....

2 do you want to buy them

....



Lessons 4 & 5





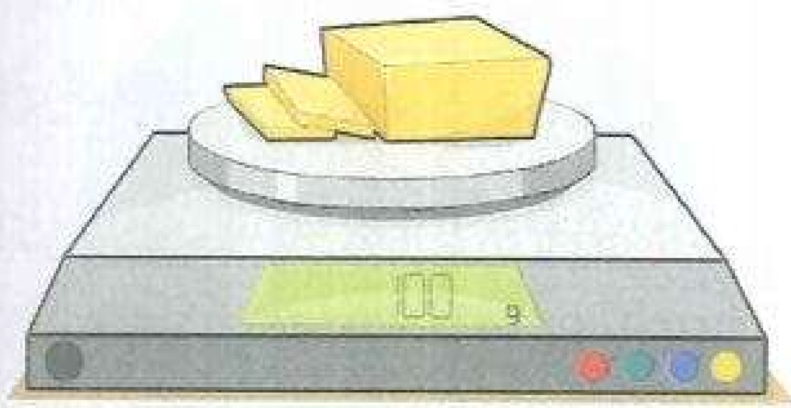
A Writing



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary



weigh out (v.)
يزن



mix (v.)
يخلط



pour (v.)
يصب



bake (v.)
يخبز



boil (v.)
يغلى



cut (v.)
يقطع

Extra vocabulary

recipe	وصفة طعام	ingredients	مكونات	semolina	دقيق السميد
melted butter	زبدة ذائبة	baking powder	مسحوق الخبز	coconut	جوز الهند
almonds	اللوز	syrup	شراب السكر	lentil soup	شوربة عدس
molokhia	ملوخية	basbousa	بسبوسة	oven	فرن
mixture	خليط	baking dish	وعاء الخبز	diamond	شكل المعين
shape	شكل	pretty (adj.)	رائع	saucepan	قدر/ إناء
instructions	تعليمات	drinks	مشروبات	dishes	أكلات
mango juice	عصير المانجو	cocktail juice	عصير كوكتيل	fruit salad	سلطة فواكه

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
turn	يشغل	turned	add	يضيف	added
mix	يخلط	mixed	share	يشارك	shared
pour	يصب	poured	cook	يطبخ	cooked

Expressions and Phrases

turn on	يشغل	get it hot	لتسخينه
on top of ...	في قمة الـ ...	on each	على كل واحدة
mix by hand	اخلطهم باستخدام يدك	looks really pretty	تبدو جميلة حقًا

Take care!

recipe = ingredients + instructions الوصفة تعنى المكونات مع التعليمات الخاصة بصنع الشيء.

(tsp) تعنى tea spoon وهى الملعقة الصغيرة المخصصة للمشروبات.

(tbsp) تعنى table spoon وهى الملعقة الكبيرة المخصصة للأكل.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. الشيء المفضل لدى هو خبز البسبوسة.
* First, turn on the oven to get it hot. أولًا قم بتشغيل الفرن حتى يصبح ساخنًا.
* Then, mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, yogurt, and melted butter. ثم اخلط السميد وجوز الهند والسكر والزبادى والزبدة المذابة.
* Bake the basbousa for 30 minutes. اخبز البسبوسة لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة.
* Make the syrup and pour it over the basbousa. قم بعمل الشربات وصبه فوق البسبوسة.

Tip!

When writing a recipe, use the base form of verbs, and imperatives to give instructions. Use sequence words (first, then, after that, etc.) to organize your steps.

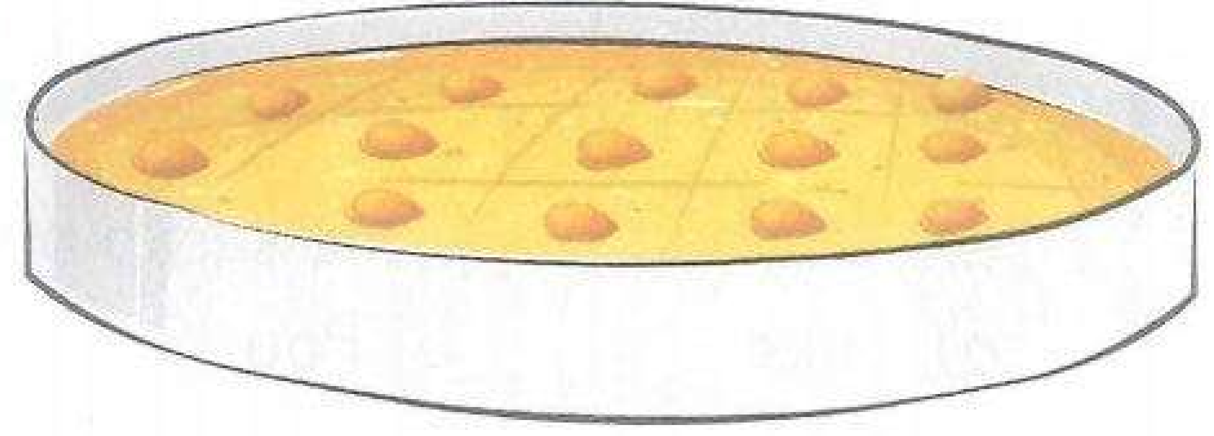
عند كتابة وصفة، استخدم صيغة المصدر للأفعال والأوامر لإعطاء التعليمات. استخدم كلمات التسلسل (أولاً، ثم، بعد ذلك، إلخ) لترتيب خطواتك.

e.g. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

My favorite recipe وصفتي المفضلة



We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames, and Molokhia. My favorite thing to bake is basbousa. This is how you make it.

نحن نطهو العديد من الأشياء كشوربة العدس والفول المدمس والملوخية. أنا أفضل خبز البسبوسة. إليك كيف تقوم بعملها.

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this!

في البداية، أنت تحتاج إلى إشعال الفرن لتسخينه. قم بوزن المكونات ثم اخلط السميد وجوز الهند والسكر والزبدة المذابة. يجب عليك خلطها باليد. أنا حقًّا أحب فعل هذا.

Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

ثم أضف الزبادي وصب الخليط في وعاء الخبز.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the *basbousa* in the oven for 30 minutes.

يمكنك استخدام السكين لصنع أشكال المعين فوق البسبوسة. ضع لوزة على كل شكل. إنها تبدو حقًّا جميلة. اخبزها في الفرن لمدة ثلاثين دقيقة.

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes. Take it out of the oven. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. Cut the *basbousa* and share it with your family!

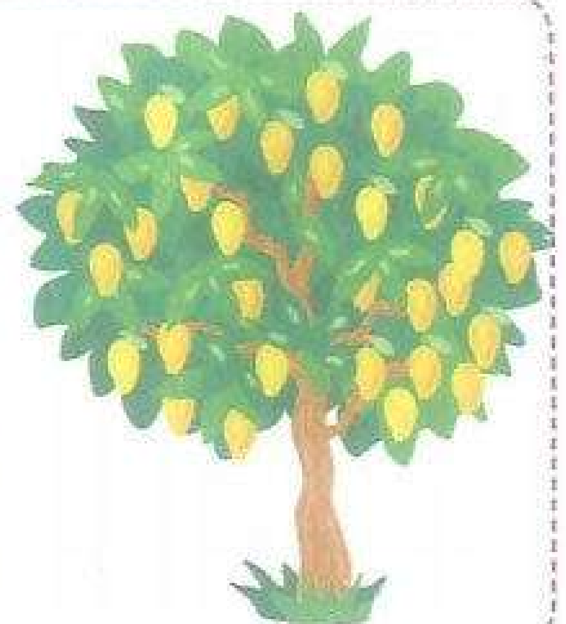
قم بعمل شراب السكر. ضع العسل والماء وعصير الليمون في قدر وقم بغلي المزيج لمدة ١٠ دقائق. أخرج البسبوسة من الفرن ثم قم بصب شراب السكر عليها. قم بتقطيعها وشاركها مع عائلتك.

Ingredients المكونات

- 2 cups semolina كوبان من السميد
- 1 cup yogurt كوب من الزبادي
- $\frac{1}{3}$ cup sugar ثلث كوب من السكر
- $\frac{1}{2}$ cup melted butter نصف كوب زبدة ذائبة
- 1 tsp baking powder ملعقة صغيرة من مسحوق الخبز
- 1 cup coconut كوب من جوز الهند
- almonds لوز
- syrup شراب السكر
- $\frac{3}{4}$ cup water ثلاثة أرباع كوب مياه
- 2 tbsp honey ملعقتان كبيرتان من العسل

Mangoes grow in Egypt. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. We can make delicious mango juice or cocktail juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake.

تنمو ثمار المانجو في مصر. يمكننا عمل العديد من المشروبات والأطباق باستخدامها. يمكننا عمل عصير المانجو اللذيذ أو عصير الكوكتيل. يمكننا أيضًا عمل سلطة الفواكه وكيك المانجو.





Practice Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 .... the syrup over the basbousa. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر 2024
a) Bake b) Pour c) Boil d) Cut

2 We use .... to make basbousa.
a) flour b) salt c) semolina d) cheese

3 "........................" is a kind of nuts.
a) Sugar b) Honey c) Yogurt d) Almond

4 To "........................" is to know how heavy is something.
a) pour b) share c) weigh out d) bake

5 Bake basbousa in the .... for 30 minutes.
a) oven b) bowl c) saucepan d) dish

6 .... all the ingredients in a big bowl by hand. الشرقية - إدارة الحسينية 2024
a) Tidy b) Mix c) Read d) Write

7 My favorite thing to .... is basbousa.
a) drink b) bake c) draw d) listen

8 To make a cup of tea, you need to .... the water.
a) bake b) boil c) eat d) chop

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

oven – delicious – ingredients – spicy – hand

الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

My favorite recipe is basbousa. Mom buys the ....(1).......... from the supermarket. She mixes these ingredients by ....(2).......... . Then, she bakes the basbousa in the ....(3).......... for 30 minutes. She makes the syrup for 10 minutes. Finally, she pours the syrup over the basbousa. It's very ....(4).......... .

3 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Sally loves to make cakes. Her mother helps her bake the cakes. Sally likes to make chocolate cakes. Her sister likes vanilla cakes. She mixes the butter and the sugar. Then she pours the milk, the flour, and the baking powder. Her mother puts the cakes in the oven. When the cakes are done, Sally lets the cakes cool. Then she shares the cakes with her family. Sally loves her family.

الإسماعيلية - إدارة الإسماعيلية 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Sally likes to make ....

a) cakes b) basbousa c) tea d) rice

2 Sally's sister likes .... cakes.

a) vanilla b) chocolate c) banana d) mango

B Answer the following questions:

3 Who helps Sally?

....

4 How does Sally make cakes?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جمل:

1 basbousa – What – the – are – of – ingredients? دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة 2024

....

2 to get – Turn on – oven – the – hot – it.

....

3 mixture – the – Pour – a baking – into – dish.

....

4 recipe – for – What – the – is – basbousa? البحيرة - إدارة إيتاى البارود 2024

....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم الآتى:

1 mangoes grow in egypt. ....

2 what is the recipe for basbousa ....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب نصًا من ٣٠ كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه صفحة 307 الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق 2024

"My favorite recipe"

What is your favorite food? – How do you make it? – What are the ingredients?

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 1 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

lemons	ليمون	eggs	بيض
carrots	جزر	chocolate	شيكولاتة
coconuts	جوز الهند	beans	فول
limes	ليمون حامض	onions	بصل
pineapples	أناناس	chicken	دجاجة
healthy	صحى	unhealthy	غير صحى
market	سوق	favorite	مفضل

Lesson (2)

shopping list	قائمة المشتريات	tomatoes	طماطم
mahalabia	مهلبية	boiled eggs	بيض مسلوق
koshari	كشرى	trader	تاجر
price	سعر	lucky	محظوظ
fridge	ثلاجة	dessert	تحلية
grapes	عنب	delicious	لذيذ
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن	nuts	مكسرات

Lesson (3)

beanstalk	ساق الفاصولياء	castle	قلعة
giant	عملاق	cage	قفص
golden egg	بيضة ذهبية	magic hen	دجاجة سحرية
poor	فقير	special	مميز
rich	غنى	axe	فأس
terrible	فظيع	free	حر

Lessons (4 & 5)

bake	يخبز	boil	يغلى
weigh out	يزن	cut	يقطع
mix	يخلط	pour	يصب
recipe	وصفة	ingredients	مكونات
oven	فرن	saucepan	قدر / إناء
instructions	تعليمات	baking dish	وعاء الخبز

Language Focus

some/ any with countable and uncountable nouns

some + اسم يُعد جمع / اسم لا يعد

Affirmative

e.g. - Hana has some orange juice.
- The children ate some candies after lunch.

Offer/ Request

e.g. - A: Would you like some pineapples? (عرض)
B: Yes, please.
- A: Can I have some rice, please? (طلب)
B: Sure.

any + اسم يُعد جمع / اسم لا يعد

Negative sentence

e.g. - There isn't any water.
- We don't have any onions.

Question

e.g. - Are there any books on the table?
- Is there any butter in the fridge?

Unit 1 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

بيض	....	بطاطس	....
جوز هند	....	مانجو	....
بصل	....	جزر	....
ليمون	....	فول	....
دجاجة	....	ليمون حامض	....
حديقة	....	أناناس	....
طازج	....	شوكولاتة	....

Lesson 2

قائمة مشتريات	....	طماطم	....
سوق	....	سعر	....
تحلية	....	ثلاجة	....
تاجر	....	مهلبية	....
جنيهات	....	بيض مقلى	....

Lesson 3

لبن	....	قلعة	....
فول	....	عنب	....
أرز	....	كيك	....
عملاق	....	فقير	....
بيضة ذهبية	....	دجاجة سحرية	....
عملات ذهبية	....	فأس	....
غنى	....	قفص	....
ساق الفاصوليا	....	حر	....

Lessons 4 & 5

يزن	....	شوربة عدس	....
يصب	....	يخبز	....
يقطع	....	يخلط	....
وصفة طعام	....	يغلى	....
مكونات	....	فرن	....
خليط	....	شراب السكر	....

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about your favorite food:

- My favorite food is (الاسم) ....
- It is (صفة) ....
- (اسم شخص) grow(s) (الطعام المفضل) ..... .
- We can make (أكلة) with (الطعام المفضل) .... .
- We can use (الطعام المفضل) to make (اسم الأكلة) ..... .

"My favorite food"

My favorite food is mango. It is healthy and delicious. My father grows mango trees in the garden. We can make delicious mango juice with mango.
We can use mangoes to make fruit salad, too. If we add sugar and milk, we can turn it into delicious mahalabia.

How to write about healthy food:

- Why is it important to eat healthy food?
- Is unhealthy food good for our bodies?
- How much unhealthy food do you eat?

"Healthy food"

It's very important to have healthy food. Healthy food helps our bodies grow. Unhealthy food is not good for our bodies. It can make you ill. I like to eat healthy food, but sometimes I want to eat chocolate or fries. I know they are unhealthy, but I think it's OK to eat a little.

How to write about your favorite recipe:

- My favorite recipe to cook is + (اسم الوصفة التى تحب) ... .
- First, you need to + (أول خطوة من الوصفة) ... .
- Then you mix (اذكر المكونات) ... .
- Then you add (باقى المكونات) ... .
- Share it with your family.

"My favorite recipe"

My favorite recipe to cook is basbousa. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes. Share it with your family.

Unit 1 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Look and circle the correct words:

انظر وضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

1 Are there any tomato / tomatoes?

2 I would like some / any eggs, please.

3 Please, can I have a / an apple?

4 I would like a / an pineapple and a / an orange.

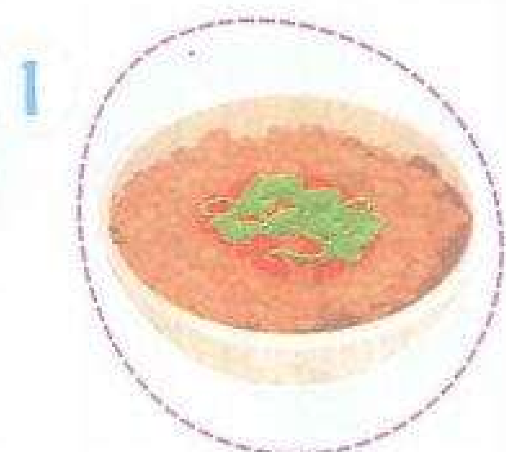
5 Do you have a / any carrots, please?

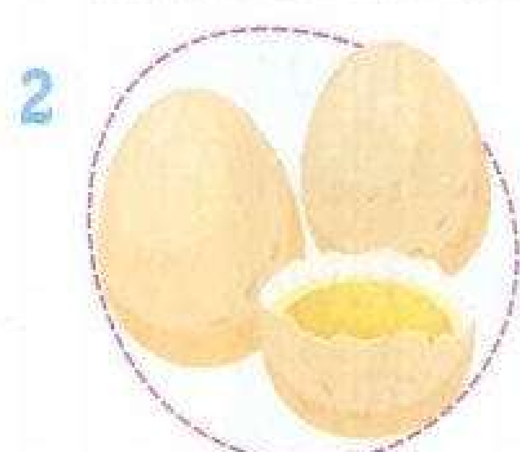
6 How about buy / buying an apple, Mom?

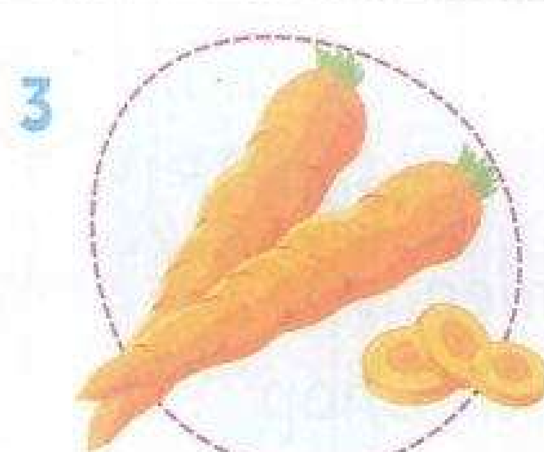
7 How about buying some grapes / grape?

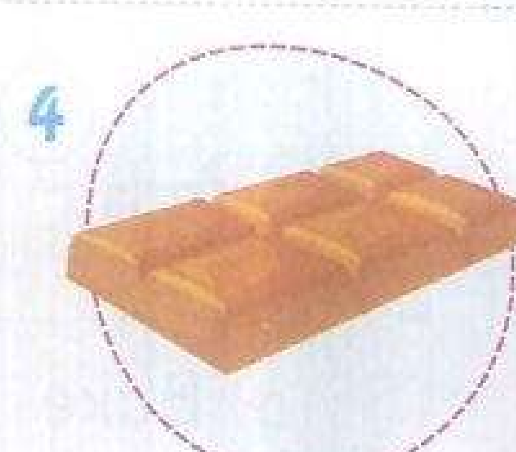
2 Look and write:

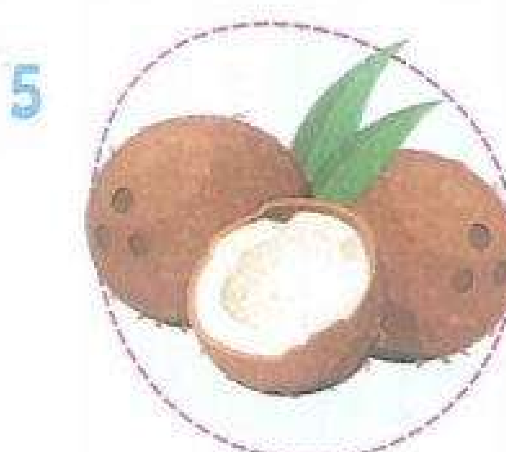
انظر واكتب:

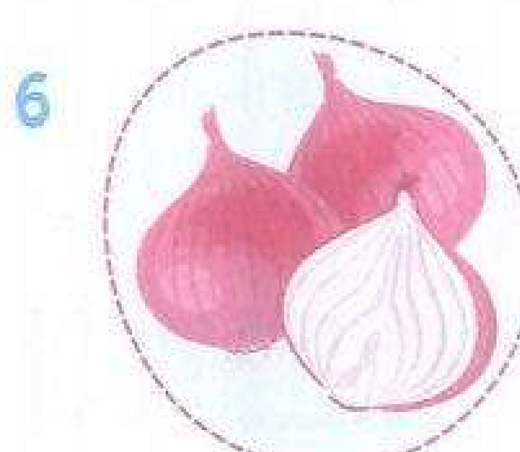
1 
....

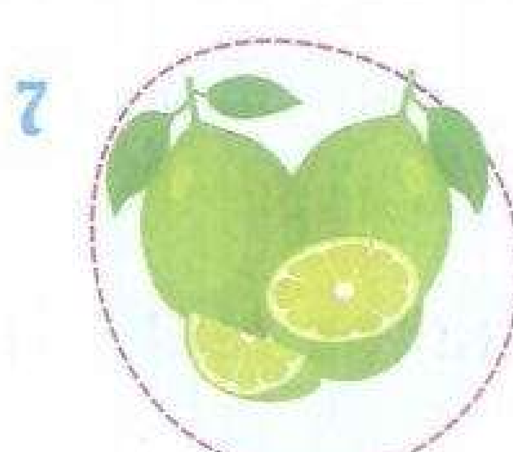
2 
....

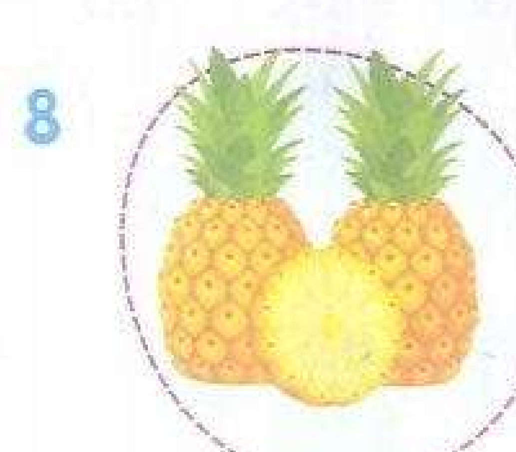
3 
....

4 
....

5 
....

6 
....

7 
....

8 
....

3 Look at the words in bold. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات بالخط العريض. صل الكلمات مع معانيها:

1 giant	a) a very large building built a long time ago
2 grab	b) to cut something down
3 castle	c) a box in which we keep animals
4 chop	d) a very, very big person
5 cage	e) to pick something up quickly

Test Yourself 30 UNIT 1



Listening





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Marwan eats too much .... food.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) perfect
2 He always has cheese, jam, and bread for ....
a) snack b) lunch c) breakfast d) dinner
3 He has .... for lunch.
a) bread b) rice c) meat d) candy
4 He has .... for dinner.
a) yogurt b) snack c) chocolate d) pizza

Reading



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

1 Fish is .... food. It is good for your body. الشرقية - أولاد صقر 2024
a) easy b) healthy c) unhealthy d) fast
2 "........................" means to cut something down.
a) Bake b) Chop c) Grab d) Help
3 I always like .... food. محافظة القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
a) bad b) healthy c) ugly d) dirty
4 "........................" is a box in which we keep animals.
a) Grab b) Giant c) Castle d) Cage

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: 4

chocolate – little – chicken – grow – healthy

الشرقية - شرق الزقازيق 2024

I love chocolate, but it's unhealthy. We should eat a ....(1).............. . My brother likes healthy food. He likes ....(2).................... and fish. Fruits and vegetables are very ....(3).............. . I love mango. We can ....(4).............. a mango tree in our garden.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

الأقصر - إدارة الأقصر 2024

I'm Laila. I'm in grade five. I always get up at six. I have my breakfast with my family. I have yogurt and fruit salad. My sister likes to have fried eggs and bread. My parents like to have ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables, and hummus for lunch. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) mother b) sister c) family d) school

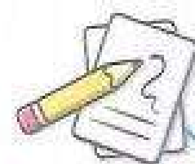
2 Laila is in grade ....

a) five b) one c) four d) six

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 Where does Laila go in the afternoon? ....

4 What do Laila and her mom buy? ....



Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** ضع الكلمات فى الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا: 2

1 would – like – I – carrots, – some – please. الإسماعيلية - إدارة أبوصوير 2024

....

2 water, – I – some – Can – have – please? الإسكندرية - إدارة العجمى 2024

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:**
اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس: 2

1 We haven't got .... (some) sugar. الإسماعيلية 2024

2 Would you like .... (any) juice? الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب 2024

7 **Punctuate the following:** ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 1

where do mangoes grow الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024

....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:**
اكتب نصًا من (٣٠) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الآتية: 5

"My shopping list" الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه ثان 2024

مجاب عنه صفحة 307

supermarket – milk

....

....

....

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue: اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

any – aren't – garden – trees

Lama : What do you grow in your ...., Walaa?

Walaa : We grow lime and mango ....

Lama : Are there .... lemon trees?

Walaa : No, there ....

2 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Sami. I'm in grade five. I love healthy food. I have my breakfast with my family at seven am. I have eggs, cheese, and orange juice. My sister Salma likes to have ful medames and bread for breakfast. In the afternoon, I help my mom in the kitchen. I set the table for lunch. Today, I'll have chicken and vegetables for lunch. After lunch, I'll have some fruit salad. I love being healthy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Sami is in grade ....

a) one b) two c) three d) five

2 Sami loves .... food.

a) healthy b) unhealthy c) fresh d) sweet

3 They have .... at seven am.

a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) snack

B Answer the following questions:

4 What does Sami have for breakfast? ....

5 How does Sami help his mom? ....

3 Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Can I have (some – an – any) water, please?

2 Are there (some – any – an) tomatoes left?

3 Candies and chocolate are (healthy – fresh – unhealthy).

4 When you (grab – grow – plant) something, you pick it up quickly.

5 We use (salt – semolina – cheese) to make basbousa.

Unit 2

I want to be healthy!

أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة!



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about sports.
  - talk about sports he/she is good or bad at.
  - read and listen to a science fiction story.
  - learn how to say single-syllable words.
  - write a biography about a famous Egyptian sportsperson.
  - give a presentation about how to help his/her local environment.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن الألعاب الرياضية.
  - يتحدث عن الألعاب الرياضية التى يجيدها أو لا يجيدها.
  - يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة خيال علمي.
  - يتعلم كيف يقول كلمات ذات مقطع واحد.
  - يكتب سيرة ذاتية عن رياضي مصرى شهير.
  - يقدم عرضًا عن كيفية المساعدة فى بيئته المحلية.

Did you know?

- There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy! One of these games is bubble football.

Find out!

- There are many unusual sports. In the sepak takraw game, you can't use your hands. You must use your feet, head, and knees only.



Lesson 1





A Sports الألعاب الرياضية





1.Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary



kung fu
كونغ فو



tennis
تنس



sailing
إبحار



swimming
سباحة



squash
اسكواش



karate
كاراتيه



football
كرة القدم



handball
كرة اليد

Extra vocabulary

sports	ألعاب رياضية	match	مباراة	game	لعبة
club	النادى	favorites	المفضلات	awesome (adj.)	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
watch	يشاهد	watched	love	يحب	loved
try	يحاول	tried	agree	يوافق	agreed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
win	يفوز	won	know	يعرف	knew



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (k) فى كلمة (know) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (e) فى (karate) ينطق /i/.

Expressions and Phrases

talk about	يتحدث عن	Me too!	وأنا أيضًا!	Who's winning?	من الفائز؟
good at ...	جيد فى ...	bad at ...	سيئ فى ...	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟
So do I.	وأنا كذلك.	better than ...	أفضل من ...	Let's + (inf.)	هيا بنا (للاقتراح)
on TV	على شاشة التلفزيون	worse than	أسوأ من	look fun	يبدو ممتعًا
See you later!	أراك لاحقًا!	agree to	يوافق أن	the most popular	الأكثر شعبية

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Wael and Seleem love squash. وائل وسليم يحبان الإسكواش.
* Wael is very good at playing tennis, but he is bad at playing handball.
وائل جيد جدًا فى لعب التنس، لكنه سيئ فى لعب كرة اليد.
* Seleem is good at playing squash, but he is bad at playing tennis.
سليم جيد فى لعب الإسكواش ولكنه سيئ فى لعب التنس.
* Wael loves watching swimming and sailing on TV. وائل يحب مشاهدة السباحة والإبحار على التلفزيون.
* Seleem loves watching karate and kung fu on TV.
سليم يحب مشاهدة الكاراتيه والكونغ فو على شاشة التلفزيون.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 (Football – Swimming – Squash – Karate) is a game of 11 players.
2 She likes water sports. She is very good at (handball – karate – tennis – swimming).
3 You need a ball for (swimming – karate – sailing – tennis).
4 A: What (sports – colors – subjects – matches) are you good at?
B: I'm good at playing squash.
5 We do sports at the (office – station – club – library).
6 (Math – Orange – Karate – Books) is my favorite sport.



Find out!

The most popular sport in Egypt is football. Everyone loves to watch the game, and they also like playing the game..

الرياضة الأكثر شعبية فى مصر هى كرة القدم. يحب الجميع مشاهدة اللعبة، كما يحبون لعبها.





2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Seleem

What are you watching?

ماذا تشاهد؟





Wael

An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini - it's great. I love squash!

مباراة قديمة بين رنيم الوليلى ونور الشربينى - إنها رائعة، أحب الإسكواش!



Seleem

Me too! Who's winning?

أنا أيضًا! من الفائز؟



Wael

Raneem - she's very good at playing squash.

رنيم - هى جيدة جدًّا فى لعب الإسكواش.



Seleem

I know. What sport are you good at?

أنا أعرف. ما هى الرياضة التى تجيدها؟



Wael

I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball. What about you?

أنا جيد جدًّا فى لعب التنس، لكنى لا أجيد لعب كرة اليد. وماذا عنك؟



Seleem

I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too.

أنا جيد فى لعب الإسكواش، لكنى لا أجيد لعب التنس. أنا أحب كرة القدم أيضًا.



Wael

So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football.

وأنا كذلك، لكنى أفضل فى التنس من كرة القدم. دعنا نذهب ونلعب مباراة كرة القدم.



Seleem

Yes, let's go to the club later.

حسنًا، دعنا نذهب إلى النادى لاحقًا.



Wael
Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV?
نعم! وما هى الألعاب الرياضية الأخرى التى تشاهدها على التلفزيون؟



Seleem
I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?
أحب مشاهدة الكاراتيه والكونغ فو. وأنت؟



Wael
My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun!
مفضلاتى هى السباحة والإبحار. الإبحار يبدو ممتعًا!



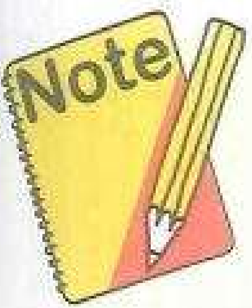
Seleem
Great! So what time do you want to play football?
رائع! إذن ما هو الوقت الذى تريد أن تلعب فيه كرة القدم؟



Wael
About five?
فى حوالى الساعة الخامسة؟



Seleem
Awesome - see you in the club later!
رائع - أراك فى النادى لاحقًا!



Irregular comparative adjectives: صفات المقارنة غير المنتظمة:

Adjective الصفة	Comparative adjective صفة المقارنة
good at جيد فى	better at ... than أفضل فى ... من
e.g. I'm good at squash.	e.g. I'm better at tennis than I am at football.
bad at سيئ فى	worse at ... than أسوأ فى ... من
e.g. I'm bad at playing football.	e.g. I'm worse at playing handball than I am at tennis.



Story



3. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main Vocabulary

awful (adj.)	مريع / فظيع	nightmare	كابوس	toxic (adj.)	سام
emissions	عوادم	shade	ظل	greenhouse	صوبة زراعية

Extra vocabulary

dangerous (adj.)	خطير	lungs	رئتان	problems	مشاكل
breathing	عملية التنفس	any more	بعد الآن	plastic	بلاستيك
dirty (adj.)	متسخ	outside	بالخارج	dream	حلم
planet	كوكب	gases	غازات	factories	مصانع
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	asleep (adj.)	نائم	horrible (adj.)	مريع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	stay	يمكث	stayed
remember	يتذكر	remembered	wait	ينتظر	waited

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew	go	يذهب	went
swim	يسبح	swam	sit	يجلس	sat
drive	يقود	drove	keep	يبقى/يحافظ على	kept

Expressions and Phrases

dangerous for	خطير على	have to	يضطر إلى	because of ...	بسبب ...
go on a holiday	يذهب في إجازة	too much	كثيرٌ جدًا	cut down	يقطع
it's time to ...	حان الوقت لـ ...	get ready for ...	يستعد لـ ...	look after	يعتني بـ
work hard	يعمل بجد	out of	بعيدٌ عن	glass building	مبنى زجاجي
(be) used for	يُستخدم من أجل	dream about	يحلم بـ	wake up	يستيقظ

Definitions

toxic	سام	very bad to eat or breathe	سيئ جدًا للأكل أو التنفس
emissions	عوادم	gases from cars or factories	الغازات الناتجة من السيارات أو المصانع
shade	ظل	an area which the light of the sun can't reach	منطقة لا يصلها ضوء الشمس
nightmare	كابوس	a bad dream	حلم مزعج
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	a glass building used for growing plants	بناء زجاجي يستخدم لزراعة النباتات
breathe	يتنفس	to move air into and out of your lungs	أن يتحرك الهواء إلى داخل وخارج رئتيك

Take care!

بعض الأسماء يتم تكوينها بإضافة (اسم + اسم).

e.g. night + mare = nightmare
green + house = greenhouse

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 We plant fruit in (shade – dream – greenhouses – sea).

2 I have a problem with (eyes – knees – breathing – arms). I can't breathe.

3 I like sitting in the (air – shade – factories – nightmare) away from the sun.

4 It's a very bad dream, it's a (shade – nightmare – breathing – plastic).

5 When we breathe, we move air into and out of our (ears – lungs – eyes – hearts).

6 Cars and factories produce (air – emissions – shade – greenhouse).



An Awful Nightmare! كابوس فظيع!

4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

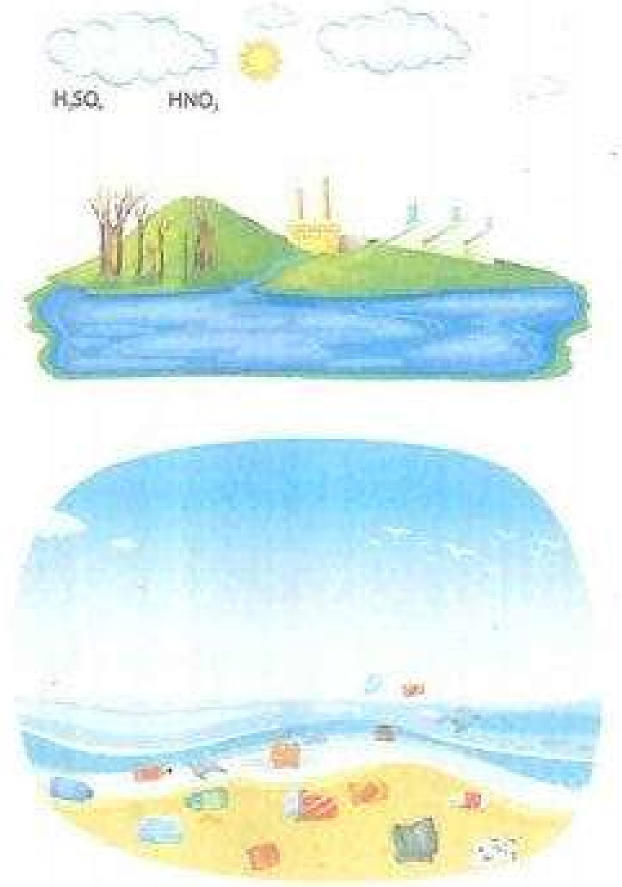
The beginning



I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and toxic. There are too many emissions from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his breathing.

لا أستطيع التنفس، أعرف ذلك. الهواء أسود وسام. هناك الكثير من عوادم السيارات. إنه خطر على رئتي الأطفال وعلينا البقاء في المنزل. هناك عدة أيام لا يمكننا فيها الذهاب إلى المدرسة لأن الهواء سيئ للغاية. اضطر أخي الصغير للذهاب إلى المستشفى بسبب مشاكل في التنفس.

The middle



I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends - the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now, we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black. I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much plastic in it and it is dirty.

أتذكر عندما كان بإمكاننا الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائنا - كان العشب أخضر والسماء زرقاء. أمكننا حتى رؤية الشمس. الآن لا يمكننا رؤية الشمس لأن السماء يكون لونها رماديًا أو أسود. أتذكر الذهاب في عطلة واللعب على الشاطئ مع عائلتي. سبحنا في البحر، لكننا الآن لا نستطيع السباحة في البحر لأن هناك الكثير من البلاستيك فيه وهو متسخ.



Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their shade on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from greenhouses and we can't sit outside any more.

أشياء أخرى أتذكرها هي أكل الفاكهة من الأشجار والجلوس في ظلها في الأيام الحارة. لكنهم الآن يقطعون كل الأشجار بحيث لا نمتلك سوى الفاكهة من الصوبات ولا يمكننا الجلوس في الخارج بعد الآن.

The end



But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to get ready for school! It was all an awful nightmare! I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun. We're going to the park today. But I remember my dream and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet.

لكن مهلًا، ما هذا؟ إنها والدتى تنادى وحان وقت الاستعداد للمدرسة! كان كل ذلك كابوسًا مخيفًا! أنظر إلى الخارج والسماء زرقاء وأستطيع رؤية الشمس. سنذهب إلى الحديقة اليوم. لكنى أتذكر حلمى وأعلم فى قلبى أننا بحاجة إلى الاعتناء بكوكبنا.



We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!

يمكننا أن نقود سياراتنا أقل، ونستخدم دراجاتنا أكثر، ونزرع الأشجار، ونحافظ على نظافة بحرنا، لكن يجب أن نعمل بجد فى ذلك.

Check

1 Why did the little brother go to the hospital?

....

2 How can we help protect our planet?

....

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 This story is mainly about a/an (school – nightmare – trees – family).

2 The word "dirty" means not (happy – ready – helpful – clean).

3 They remember sitting in the trees (leaves – branches – shade – fruits).

4 The girl's mom is calling her because it's time to go to the (hospital – supermarket – forest – school).

Practice



Lesson 1



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analyzing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Wael is very good at playing ....
a) football b) tennis c) squash d) handball

2 Seleem is bad at playing ....
a) karate b) squash c) tennis d) football

3 Seleem is watching an old .... match.
a) squash b) kung fu c) volleyball d) karate

4 Raneem El Weleily is .... the match.
a) losing b) watching c) hearing d) winning

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They are .... at tennis. They can't play it at all.
a) good b) bad c) great d) best

2 .... is important for us to breathe and live. الشرقية - إدارة صان الحجر 2024
a) Air b) Gas c) Sea d) Pollution

3 "......................................" is an area which the light of the sun can't reach.
a) Acid b) Toxic c) Shade d) Emissions

4 The air is black and .... الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية 2024
a) delicious b) clear c) toxic d) beautiful

5 .... means a bad dream.
a) Nightmare b) Shade c) Greenhouse d) Shopping

6 I'm sad, I have a/an .... day.
a) good b) happy c) awesome d) awful

7 "......................................" are gases from cars or factories.
a) Toxic b) Shade c) Air d) Emissions

8 "......................................" is a glass building used for growing plants.
a) Emissions b) Shade c) Greenhouse d) Toxic

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

emissions – cutting – problem – toxic – planting

الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024

People in Cairo want to live in clean air and in a healthy environment, but the air is black and ....(1)............ . There's too much traffic. There are too many ....(2)............ from cars and factories, so we should solve the ....(3)............ by using more bikes and ....(4)............ more trees.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Seleem and Wael are friends. They both like sports. Wael is very good at playing tennis, but he is bad at playing handball. Seleem is good at playing squash, but he is bad at playing tennis. Seleem is watching an old squash match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini. Raneem is winning the match. Raneem is an Egyptian player, and she is one of the most famous squash players in the world. Seleem likes to watch karate and kung fu, too.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) food b) books c) subjects d) sports

2 .... is bad at playing handball.

a) Seleem b) Wael c) Nour d) Raneem

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is Seleem watching?

....

4 Who is Raneem El Weleily?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 watching – match – a football – is – He. الشرقية - إدارة صان الحجر 2024

....

2 sports – Egypt – do – What – have – we – in? المنيا - إدارة سمالوط 2024

....

3 many – cars – There – emissions – too – are – from.

....

4 look – our planet – We – to – need – after.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 nader and maher are playing football. القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس 2024

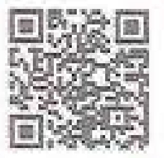
....

2 we can't go outside any more

....



Lesson 2
I'm good at ...
أنا جيد فى ...





1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary


climb trees
يتسلق الأشجار


cook
يطبخ

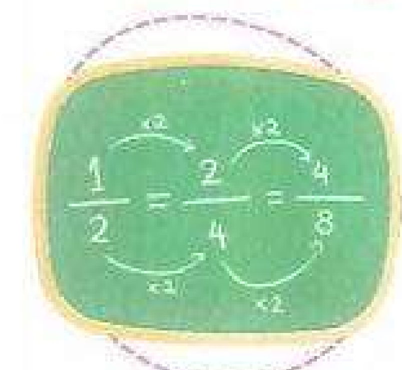

do jigsaws
يحل الصور المتقطعة


walk across the desert
يمشى عبر الصحراء


write poems
يكتب قصائد


help in the kitchen
يساعد فى المطبخ


make cakes
يُعِد (يصنع) الكعك


do math
يحل المسائل الحسابية

Extra vocabulary

French	اللغة الفرنسية	Arabic	اللغة العربية
taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو	table tennis	تنس الطاولة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
tidy	يرتب	tidied	climb	يتسلق	climbed
practice	يتدرب	practiced	help	يساعد	helped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
speak	يتحدث	spoke	read	يقرأ	read
sing	يغنى	sang	draw	يرسم	drew

Expressions and Phrases

make dinner	يعد وجبة الغداء	play the piano	يلعب على البيانو
on your own	بمفردك	in a team	فى فريق

Take care!

do		play		go	
do karate	يلعب كاراتيه	play football	يلعب كرة القدم	go swimming	يسبح
do kung fu	يلعب كونغ فو	play chess	يلعب الشطرنج	go sailing	يبحر
do taekwondo	يلعب تايكوندو	play tennis	يلعب التنس	go windsurfing	يتزلج على المياه
do jigsaws	يلعب الصور المتقطعة	play handball	يلعب كرة اليد	go skiing	يتزلج على الجليد



Language Focus

great/ good/ bad + at

We use "good, great, bad + at" to talk about things we do or don't do well.

نستخدم (good, great, bad + at) للتحدث عن الأشياء التى نفعلها أو لا نفعلها بشكل جيد.

Form

Subject (الفاعل) + (am/is/are) + great at/ good at/ bad at + inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing

Subject (الفاعل) + (am/is/are) + great at/ good at/ bad at + noun اسم



I'm very good at drawing.



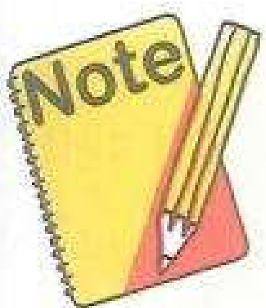
I'm great at handball.



He is very bad at making cakes.



She is very bad at football.



لاحظ عند إضافة (ing) للفعل:

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e)، فإنها تُحذف عند إضافة الـ (ing):

make ⟶ making   write ⟶ writing

٢. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك، فإن الحرف الساكن الأخير يتم مضاعفته عند إضافة الـ (ing):

swim ⟶ swimming   clap ⟶ clapping

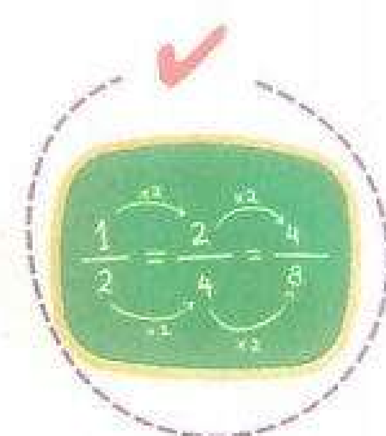




Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm good at playing football and making cakes. I'm bad at playing handball.




Asser is my brother. He's good at playing tennis, but he's bad at helping me in the kitchen!

My sister's name is Salma. She's good at doing math. She's bad at tidying her room!



We use (Why) to ask about reasons, and we use (because) to answer and give reasons.

نستخدم (لماذا) لنسأل عن الأسباب، ونستخدم (لأن) للإجابة وإعطاء الأسباب.

e.g. A: Why are you good at table tennis?

B: I'm good at table tennis because I move fast.



Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 She is great at (do – does – did – doing) math.
2 They are bad at (play – do – tennis – go).
3 A: Why are you good at swimming? B: (For – So – And – Because) I practice a lot.
4 I'm (good – great – bad – better) at speaking French, but I can speak English well.
5 My sister is bad (at – on – for – off) writing poems.
6 They are (badly – bad – worst – a bad) at sailing.
7 She (has – does – is – be) good at doing jigsaws.
8 What sport are you good (in – on – at – of)?



CLIL: Math



2. Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Adding and subtracting decimals:

جمع وطرح الكسور العشرية:

- When you add or subtract decimals, treat them like whole numbers, but move the decimal point at the end so the position matches the numbers.

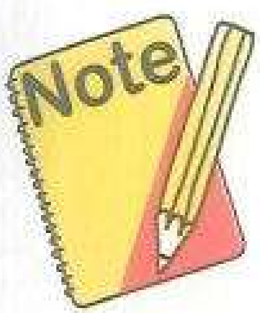
عندما تجمع الكسور العشرية أو تطرحها، تعامل معها كأرقام صحيحة، لكن حرك الفاصلة العشرية فى النهاية بحيث يتطابق الموضع مع الأرقام.

e.g.

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 \\ +\ 8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array} \qquad \begin{array}{r} 10.512 \\ -\ 8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

- The position of the decimal point has to match the position in the original numbers.

يجب أن يتطابق موضع الفاصلة العشرية مع موضع الأرقام الأصلية.



- To get the total number, we "**Add**":

- للحصول على العدد الإجمالى، فإننا "نجمع":

e.g. Jihan ran 3.567 km on Sunday and 5.258 km on Tuesday.

What is the total distance that Jihan ran? SB

3.567 + 5.258 = 8.8.825 km

- To get the difference, we "**Subtract**":

- للحصول على الفرق، فإننا "نطرح":

e.g. If one tree is 3.459 meters tall and another tree is 2.753 meters tall, what is the difference in height between both trees? SB

3.459 – 2.753 = 0.0.706 meter

Practice



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hala went to the kitchen to .... a cake. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024
a) buy b) make c) do d) write

2 They are .... at tennis. They can't play it at all. الدقهلية - إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024
a) good b) bad c) great d) best

3 I like .... kung fu.
a) doing b) playing c) swimming d) going

4 .... are good at climbing trees. الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024
a) Lions b) Elephants c) Monkeys d) Tigers

5 I'm great at .... poems.
a) doing b) playing c) climbing d) writing

6 She is bad at doing ....
a) book b) pen c) math d) nice

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

poems – math – trees – doing – making

I'm Hana. This is my family. These are my mother, my father, and my sister. My father is very good at cooking and ....(1)............ jigsaws. My mother is very good at making cakes and writing ....(2)............ . My sister is very good at doing ....(3)............ and helping in the kitchen. I'm very good at climbing ....(4)............ and doing taekwondo.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 football – playing – good – I'm – at – very. الجيزة - إدارة كرداسة 2024

....

2 at – jumping – very – Cats – good – are. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024

....

3 good – football – Ali – playing – at – is. المنيا - إدارة سمالوط 2024

....

4 at – What – you – bad – are – sports?

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 They are bad at .... (run). الشرقية - أولاد صقر 2024
2 Ali is good .... (in) Arabic. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024
3 She .... (be) good at tidying her room.
4 I'm good at table tennis .... (but) I can run fast.
5 Reem is very good at .... (write) poems. الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس 2024
6 Hazem is great at .... (do) karate. الشرقية - إدارة العاشر 2024
7 I am bad at .... (spoke) French.
8 She is very good at .... (play) handball. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024
9 My brother is great at .... (does) jigsaws. الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين 2024
10 I am good at .... (draw) pictures. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024
11 She is bad .... (in) singing.

5 Punctuate the following:

1 what are you good at

....

2 she's good at reading english. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024



"My favorite sport"

practice – good at – club

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





A Sports places and equipment الأماكن والمعدات الرياضية



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:





Definitions

Places أماكن	football pitch ملعب كرة القدم	This is where I play football. هذا هو المكان الذى ألعب فيه كرة القدم.
	tennis court ملعب تنس	This is where I play tennis. هذا هو المكان الذى ألعب فيه التنس.
	swimming pool حمام السباحة	This is where I go swimming. هذا هو المكان حيث أذهب للسباحة.
Equipment معدات وأدوات	karate suit بدلة الكاراتيه	This is what I wear to do karate. هذا ما أرتديه لممارسة الكاراتيه.
	football boots أحذية كرة القدم	This is what I wear to play football. هذا ما أرتديه لألعب كرة القدم.
	squash rackets مضارب الإسكواش	This is what I use to play squash. هذا ما أستخدمه لألعب الإسكواش.
	swimming goggles نظارات السباحة	This is what I wear to go swimming. هذا ما أرتديه لممارسة السباحة.
Sport رياضة	kung fu كونغ فـو	This is when I do high kicks. It rhymes with "you" and "two". هذا عندما أقوم بالركلات العالية. إنها تتناغم مع «you» و«two».

Extra vocabulary

pitch	ملعب	moves	حركات	high (adj.)	عالٍ
kicks	ركلات	court	فناء (ملعب)	awesome (adj.)	رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
kick	يركل	kicked	practice	يتدرب	practiced
rhyme	يتناغم	rhymed	use	يستخدم	used



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





I love my sport - kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

أحب رياضتى - إن ركل الكرة فى الملعب هو الشىء المفضل لدى.



Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me. I feel like a different person.

التواجد فى حوض السباحة وممارسة هذه الرياضة هو أفضل شىء بالنسبة لى. أشعر وكأننى شخص مختلف.



I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best. My suit for this sport is white.

أحب الطريقة التى يمكننى بها القيام بالعديد من الحركات المختلفة. أنا أفضل الركلات العالية. البدلة التى أرتديها لممارسة تلك الرياضة بيضاء اللون.



I love this sport because I'm very good at it. You play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast. You get really hot too.

أنا أحب تلك الرياضة لأننى جيد جدًا بها. أنت تلعب هذه الرياضة فى ملعب صغير محاط بالحوائط. يكون لديك مضرب صغير وتتحرك بسرعة كبيرة وتشعر بالحرارة أيضًا.



I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

أعتقد أنها رياضة رائعة وأتدرب عليها كثيرًا فى الصيف. لديهم ملاعب تنس فى الحديقة وأنا أذهب إلى هناك مع أصدقائى.

Take care!

لاحظ أن كلمة equipment لا تجمع.



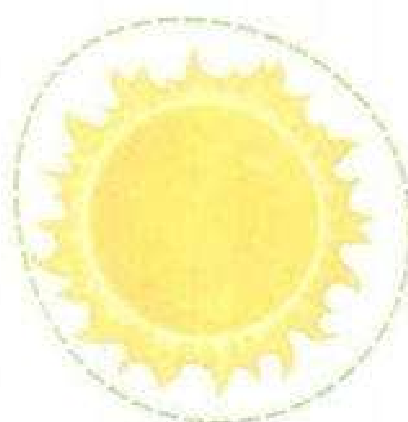
Pronunciation



3. Listen, say, and notice: استمع، قل ولاحظ:

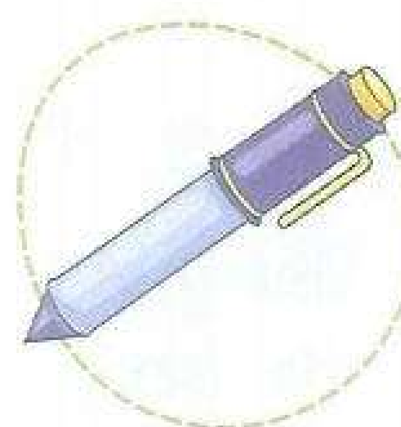


Short vowels

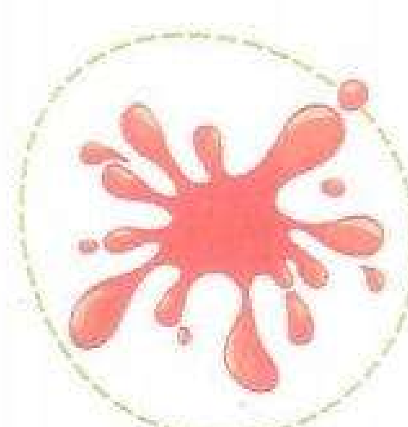

sun
شمس


man
رجل


sock
فردة جورب (شراب)


pen
قلم جاف


cat
قطة


red
أحمر

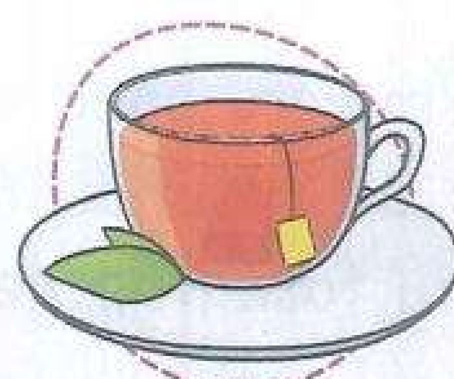
Long vowels

/eɪ/


pain ألم

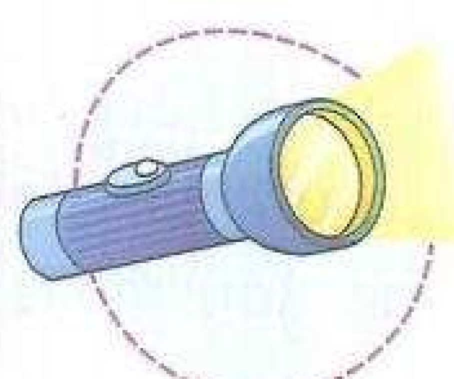

make يصنع

/iː/


tea شاي


feet أقدام

/aɪ/


light ضوء


cry يبكي

/əʊ/


rose وردة

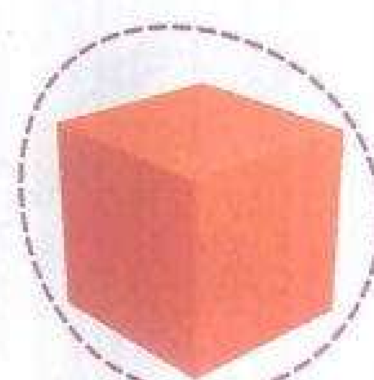

cone مخروط

/uː/


two اثنان



fuel وقود


cube مكعب

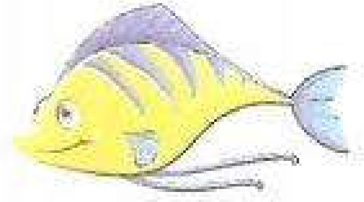
Blending sounds in one-syllable word: دمج الأصوات فى كلمة ذات مقطع لفظى واحد:

When we pronounce a word, we don't say the letters, but we say the sounds.

عندما نلفظ كلمة، لا نقول الحروف، لكننا نقول الأصوات.

e.g.

1 f+i+sh ⟶ fish has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (f – ɪ – ʃ).



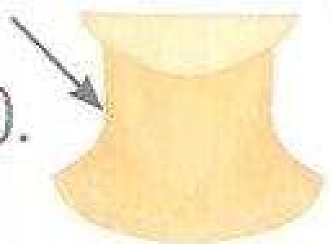
2 d+o+ll ⟶ doll has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (d – ɒ – l).



3 f+u+ll ⟶ full has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (f – ʊ – l).



4 n+e+ck ⟶ neck has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (n – e – k).



Syllable: المقطع اللفظى:

A syllable is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

المقطع اللفظى هو جزء من كلمة تحتوى على صوت واحد متحرك.

Blending sounds in two-syllable words: دمج الأصوات فى كلمات ذات مقطعين:

spi + der = spider عنكبوت	tea + cher = teacher معلم	ro + bot = robot إنسان آلى	pa + per = paper ورقة	ba + by = baby طفل رضيع
de + lete = delete يمسح	win + dow = window نافذة	ra + cket = racket مضرب	hu + man = human إنسان	ti + ger = tiger نمر
fi + nal = final نهائى	ho + tel = hotel فندق	mu + sic = music موسيقى	E + gypt = Egypt مصر	pol + lute = pollute يلوث

Practice



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Rami likes .... as he can do a lot of moves.
a) kung fu b) karate c) squash d) tennis

2 Hana goes to the swimming pool .... a week.
a) once b) twice c) three times d) four times

3 Ahmed plays football on the ....
a) pitch b) court c) ground d) floor

4 Amira's .... is white and blue.
a) suit b) ball c) skirt d) racket

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We wear football .... to play football. (الإسماعيلية 2024)
a) goggles b) sandals c) boots d) rackets

2 Let's go to the .... pitch. (الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا 2024)
a) court b) sailing c) swimming d) football

3 I use my .... when I play squash. (الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية 2024)
a) pitches b) goggles c) boots d) racket

4 We wear swimming .... to go swimming. (الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024)
a) glass b) pool c) rackets d) goggles

5 I love swimming, I go to the swimming .... on Friday. (الشرقية - إدارة صان الحجر 2024)
a) pitch b) court c) pool d) bank

6 We play tennis in the ....
a) pool b) pitch c) court d) class

7 When we play ...., we do high kicks.
a) swimming b) tennis c) kung fu d) squash

8 The karate .... is always white. (الجيزة - 2024)
a) belt b) suit c) sock d) shirt

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

racket – court – suit – shorts – moves

Mahmoud plays squash. He loves this sport because he's very good at it. He plays on a small ....(1)........... with walls all around. He has a small ....(2)........... and he moves very fast. Farida does karate. She likes the way she can do lots of different ....(3)........... . She likes high kicks best. Her ....(4)........... for this sport is white.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

البحيرة - إدارة إيتاي البارود 2024

Ali, Aya, and Marwa like sports. Ali likes football. He plays it with his friends on Friday. They play football on the pitch. His team always wins. Marwa likes swimming. She goes to the swimming pool every day. She wears goggles when she swims. Marwa's friends like her because she is kind and clever. She helps her friends all the time. Aya is a good squash player. Her racket is red and white. They are good players. They advise people to practice sports.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ali and his friends play football on a ....

a) court b) pool c) pitch d) street

2 Aya's racket is ....

a) red b) white c) red and black d) red and white

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why do Marwa's friends like her?

....

4 What sport does Aya like?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 court – I – the tennis – play – on – tennis.

....

2 goggles – He – goes – wears – when – he – swimming.

....

3 am – at – good – tennis – I – playing.

الجيزة - إدارة الوراق 2024

....

4 football boots – I – to – football – wear – play.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 they have tennis courts in the park

....

2 why are you good at kung fu

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

biography	السيرة الذاتية	taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو	medal	ميدالية
athlete	لاعب رياضى	competitor	منافس	organisms	الكائنات الحية

Extra vocabulary

flag	علم	amazing (adj.)	مذهل	prize	جائزة
bronze (adj.)	برونزية	Moroccan (adj.)	مغربى	therefore	لذلك
gold (adj.)	ذهبى	future	مستقبل	sportsperson	شخص رياضى
success	نجاح	career	الحياة المهنية	successful (adj.)	ناجح
training	تدريب	pollution	تلوث	harmful (adj.)	ضار
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	water bodies	مجارى مائية	crabs	كابوريا
habitats	أماكن المعيشة	causes	أسباب	wastewater	مياه الصرف
sink	حوض	toilet	دورة المياه (الحمام)	shower	الاستحمام
factories	مصانع	agricultural (adj.)	زراعى	effects	نتائج / آثار
wildlife	الحياة البرية	solutions	حلول	garbage	قمامة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
carry	يحمل	carried	practice	يتدرب	practiced
compete	ينافس	competed	cause	يسبب	caused
harm	يؤذى	harmed	save	يوفر	saved
avoid	يتجنب	avoided	destroy	يدمر	destroyed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
begin	يبدأ	began	win	يفوز	won
become	يصبح	became	lose	يخسر	lost
throw	يرمى	threw	take	يأخذ	took

Expressions and Phrases

Tokyo Olympic Games	دورة الألعاب الأولمبية فى طوكيو	was born on (day) ...	وُلد فى (اليوم)...
at the age of ...	فى عمر الـ ...	Rio Olympics	أولمبياد ريو
special needs	احتياجات خاصة	compete against	ينافس ضد
special moment	لحظة خاصة	famous for	مشهور بـ ....
Moreover / As well as this ...	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	old people	كبار السن
as much as possible	بقدر المستطاع	Paralympic champion	بطل بطولة دورة ألعاب ذوى الهمم والمعاقين

Take care!

(Olympics) هى دورة الألعاب الأولمبية للرياضيين العاديين

(Paralympics) هى دورة الألعاب الأولمبية للرياضيين المعاقين ومن ذوى الهمم

(home) قد تأتى بمعنى موطن/بيئة

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. هداية ملاك لاعبة تايكوندو مصرية مشهورة.
* She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. بدأت ممارسة التايكوندو فى سن السابعة.
* She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics. حصلت على الميدالية البرونزية فى أولمبياد ريو.
* Hedaya is also a very kind person. هداية هى أيضًا شخص لطيف جدًا.
* She wants to win a gold medal. تريد الفوز بميدالية ذهبية.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 He likes sports, he is a/an (student – athlete – worker – teacher).

2 I put the (chemicals – crabs – garbage – wastewater) in the bin.

3 One of the (causes – effects – solutions – prizes) of dirty water is making people ill.

4 Wastewater (causes – competes – destroys – avoids) water pollution.

5 (Garbage – Wastewater – Chemicals – Organisms) are all the living things in the water.

6 (Successful – Harmful – Amazing – Agricultural) means to make someone hurt.



Writing

A Sports Biography سيرة ذاتية رياضية



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Who is she? من هى؟

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is amazing.

هداية ملاك لاعبة تايكوندو مصرية مشهورة. هى واحدة من الاثنين اللذين رفعا العلم المصرى فى الألعاب الأوليمبية بطوكيو فى عام ٢٠٢١ . هذا رائع.

Why is she important? لماذا هى مهمة؟

Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

ولدت هداية فى الحادى والعشرين من شهر إبريل لسنة ١٩٩٣. بدأت فى ممارسة لعبة التايكوندو فى السابعة من عمرها وحصلت على العديد من الجوائز فى الرابعة عشرة من عمرها. فازت بالميدالية البرونزية فى أولمبياد ريو فى عام ٢٠١٦. وفازت أيضًا بالميدالية البرونزية فى طوكيو لعام ٢٠٢١.

Who did she help in 2016? من الذى ساعدته فى عام 2016؟

Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.

هداية شخصية طيبة للغاية . فى عام ٢٠١٦ ساعدت لاعبة مغربية ذات قدرات خاصة تدعى راجا جارماش. لا يوجد أى شخص للمنافسة ضد راجاء فأصبحت هداية المنافس ضدها وخسرت. لذلك فازت راجا بميدالية ذهبية وكانت بالنسبة لها لحظة خاصة جدًّا .

What does she want for her future? ماذا تريد لمستقبلها؟

What does Hedaya do now? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

ماذا تفعل هداية الآن؟ هى تتدرب بجد وتريد فعلًا أن تفوز بميدالية ذهبية!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian (karate – kung fu – taekwondo – judo) player.
2 Hedaya is a very (bad – kind – sad – unlucky) person.
3 Hedaya won the (gold – plastic – bronze – silver) medal in Tokyo in 2021.
4 Hedaya helped a/an (French – English – American – Moroccan) athlete to win a gold medal.



3. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

How to write a sports biography

A Introduce the person, giving their name.
قدّم الشخص مع ذكر اسمه/ اسمها.

B Say why they are famous and give details about their sport.
قل سبب شهرتهم وقدم تفاصيل عن رياضتهم.

C Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important.
قدم مزيدًا من التفاصيل حول نجاحهم ولماذا هم مثيرون للاهتمام ومهمون.

D Say what you think could happen next for their career.
قل ما تعتقد أنه يمكن أن يحدث بعد ذلك في حياتهم المهنية.

Write notes for a sports biography. Use the following phrases to help you.

He/She was born on ...	He/She began ...	He/She was the first ...	He/She was/is successful because ...	He/She won ...	He/She is also ... / Moreover / As well as this, he/she is ...

e.g.

Write a biography of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"Mohamed Salah"

(Why is he important? - What does he do now?)



Project

A less polluted city مدينة أقل تلوثًا

Water pollution تلوث المياه



When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution.
Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish.
Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

عندما تتسرب المواد الكيميائية الضارة إلى المجارى المائية مثل: الأنهار والبحيرات والبحار، يطلق على هذه الظاهرة التلوث المائى.
التلوث المائى بإمكانه قتل الكائنات الحية التى تعيش فى الماء مثل: السمك والطيور والكابوريا. وبإمكانه أيضًا قتل الطيور التى تتغذى على السمك . التلوث المائى بإمكانه أن يجعل الحيوانات تغادر بيوتها وتغير أماكن معيشتها.

Causes الأسباب	Effects التأثيرات	Solutions الحلول
• Wastewater from sinks, toilets, and showers. مياه الصرف من الأحواض والمراحيض والاستحمام. • Wastewater and chemicals from factories. مياه الصرف والمواد الكيميائية من المصانع. • Wastewater from agricultural land and cities into rivers. مياه الصرف من الأراضى الزراعية والمدن فى الأنهار. 	• Dirty water can make children and old people ill. المياه القذرة يمكن أن تصيب الأطفال وكبار السن بالمرض. • Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers. المياه الملوثة تدمر الحياة البرية فى الأنهار. 	• Save as much water as possible. وفر أكبر قدر ممكن من الماء. • Take shorter showers. استحم لفترة أقصر. • Avoid running water. تجنب المياه الجارية. • Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach. لا تقم مطلقًا بإلقاء القمامة فى بحيرة أو شاطئ أو بالقرب منهما. 

Check

1 How can water pollution harm animals?

....

2 How can we make our cities less polluted?

....

Practice



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Water .... is a very dangerous problem. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024

a) pollution b) wheel c) sport d) sand

2 When harmful .... go into water, we call this water pollution.

a) birds b) animals c) chemicals d) insects

3 .... can kill organisms.

a) Fresh water b) Water pollution c) Fresh air d) Plants

4 Polluted water destroys wildlife in ....

a) rivers b) homes c) mountains d) deserts

5 .... throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

a) Never b) Always c) Sometimes d) Usually

6 .... as much water as possible.

a) Lose b) Save c) Throw d) Waste

7 My brother won a prize ....the age of 15. الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024

a) of b) at c) on d) in

8 She is good at sports. She's a famous .... الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق 2024

a) athlete b) doctor c) teacher d) vet

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: الجيزة - إدارة كرداسة 2024

famous – born – taekwondo – flag – medal

Hedaya Malak is a ....(1)............ taekwondo player. She was ....(2)............ on April 21,1993. She carried the Egyptian ....(3)............... at the Tokyo Games in 2021. She began practicing at the age of seven. She won a bronze ....(4)............... in 2016 and 2021.

3 Read the text and answer the questions: الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water such as fish, birds, and carbs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats. We should save as much water as possible. We shouldn't throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... pollution.
a) land b) water c) noise d) air

2 The underlined word "garbage" means ....
a) cities b) boxes c) paper d) trash

B Answer the following questions:

3 What are water bodies?

....

4 What can polluted water kill?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 a famous – player – Hedaya – Egyptian – taekwondo – is.

2 water – ill – Dirty – children – make – can.

3 work – to stop – We – hard – pollution – must. المنوفية - إدارة سرس الليان 2024

4 destroys – Polluted – wildlife – rivers – in – water. الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 What does hedaya do now ....

2 Hedaya was born on april 21, 1993 ....

6 Write a biography of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

المنوفية - إدارة سرس الليان 2024 مجاب عنه صفحة 307

"Hedaya Malak"

– Who is she? – Why is she important?
– What does she want for her future?

....

....

....

....

Unit 2 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

kung fu	كونغ فو	tennis	تنس
sailing	الإبحار	swimming	السباحة
squash	الإسكواش	karate	كاراتيه
football	كرة القدم	handball	كرة اليد
toxic	سام	emissions	عوادم
shade	ظل	nightmare	كابوس
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	breathe	يتنفس
awful	فظيع	dream	حلم

Lesson (2)

climb trees	يتسلق الأشجار	cook	يطبخ
do jigsaws	يحل الصور المتقطعة	walk across the desert	يمشى عبر الصحراء
write poems	يكتب قصائد	help in the kitchen	يساعد فى المطبخ
make cakes	يصنع الكعك	do math	يحل المسائل الحسابية
French	اللغة الفرنسية	Arabic	اللغة العربية

Lesson (3)

football pitch	ملعب كرة القدم	tennis court	ملعب التنس
swimming pool	حمام السباحة	karate suit	بدلة الكاراتيه
football boots	أحذية كرة القدم	squash rackets	مضارب الإسكواش
swimming goggles	نظارات السباحة	high kicks	ركلات عالية
moves	حركات	awesome	رائع
pain	ألم	light	ضوء
cone	مخروط	cube	مكعب

Lessons (4 & 5)

biography	السيرة الذاتية	taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو
athlete	لاعب رياضى	competitor	منافس
flag	علم	bronze	برونزية
medal	ميدالية	harmful	ضار
gold	ذهبى	organisms	الكائنات الحية
prize	جائزة	habitats	أماكن المعيشة
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	pollution	تلوث

Language Focus

great/ good/ bad + at

Form

Subject (الفاعل) + (am/is/are) + great at/ good at/ bad at + inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing

Subject (الفاعل) + (am/is/are) + great at/ good at/ bad at + noun اسم



I'm very good at drawing.



I'm great at handball.



He is very bad at making cakes.



She is very bad at football.

Unit 2 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

تنس	....	إسكواش	....
كاراتيه	....	رياضات	....
رائع	....	كرة القدم	....
كونغ فو	....	إبحـــار	....
كرة يد	....	مباراة	....

Lesson 2

يمشى عبر الصحراء	....	يحل الصور المتقطعة	....
يطبخ	....	يتسلق الأشجار	....
يحل المسائل الحسابية	....	يصنع الكعك	....
يساعد فى المطبخ	....	يكتب قصائد	....

Lesson 3

ملعب كرة القدم	....	مضارب الإسكواش	....
بدلة الكاراتيه	....	نظارات السباحة	....
ملعب تنس	....	حمام السباحة	....
ركلات	....	أحذية كرة القدم	....
رجل	....	فردة جورب (شراب)	....
ضوء	....	مخروط	....
قبعة	....	ألم	....

Lessons 4 & 5

رياضة التايكوندو	....	السيرة الذاتية	....
منافس	....	رياضى	....
ميدالية	....	عَلم	....
الكائنات الحية	....	ذهبى	....
برونزية	....	تلوث	....
مواد كيميائية	....	ضار	....
مياه الصرف	....	مجارٍ مائية	....
قمامة	....	بيئات	....

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about your favorite sport:

1 My favorite sport is (اللعبة) ... .
2 I play (اللعبة) + (عدد المرات) ... .
3 I play it in/on (المكان) ... .
4 I use (أداة) ... .
5 I am good at (اللعبة) because (السبب) ... .
6 My favorite player is (اسم اللاعب) ... .

My favorite sport

My favorite sport is squash. I play squash three times a week. I play it on a small court with walls all around. I use a small racket to hit the ball. I am good at squash because I can move fast. I love watching squash matches on TV. My favorite player is Nour El Sherbini.

How to write about sports places and equipment:

1 I like + (اسم الرياضة) ... .
2 I wear + (اسم الملابس المخصصة للرياضة) ... .
3 I play it in/on + (المكان المخصص للرياضة) ... .

"Sports places and equipment"

I like swimming. I wear swimming goggles to protect my eyes. I always go to the swimming pool on Saturdays. My brother is good at playing football. He wears his football boots to play with his team. He plays on the football pitch.

How to write a sports biography:

1 (اسم اللاعب) is (تفاصيل) ... .
2 He/She was born on (تاريخ الميلاد) ... .
3 He/She won (إنجازاته) ... .
4 He/She is (صفات اللاعب) ... .
5 He/She wants to (هدفه) ... .

A sports biography

Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian taekwondo player. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She won a bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. She is a very kind person. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs to win the gold medal. She really wants to win a gold medal!

Unit 2 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the sentences:

1 I'm good at .... (play) football.
2 My sister is very good at .... (write) poems.
3 Sami's bad at .... (speak) French!
4 They're great at .... (help) their mom in the kitchen.

2 Match the words to their meanings:

A

1 toxic
2 emissions
3 shade
4 nightmare
5 greenhouse
6 breathe

B

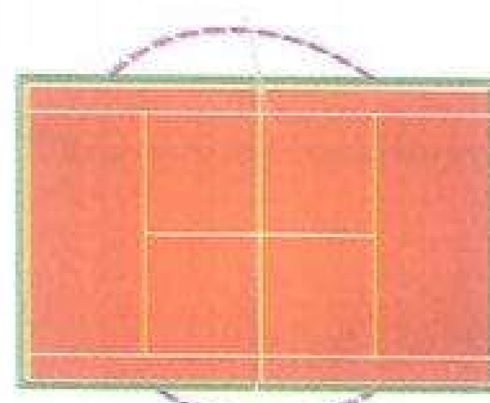
a. ( ) a bad dream
b. ( ) to move air into and out of your lungs
c. ( ) gases from cars or factories
d. ( ) an area which the light of the sun can't reach
e. ( ) very bad to eat or breathe
f. ( ) a glass building used for growing plants

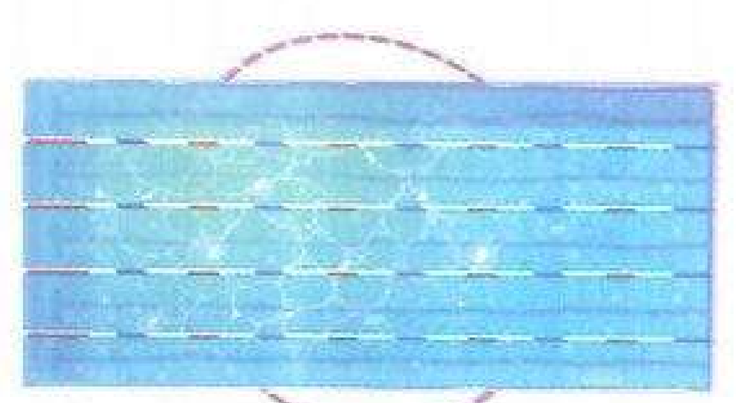
3 Look and write:

boots – court – tennis – goggles – karate – pitch – pool – rackets

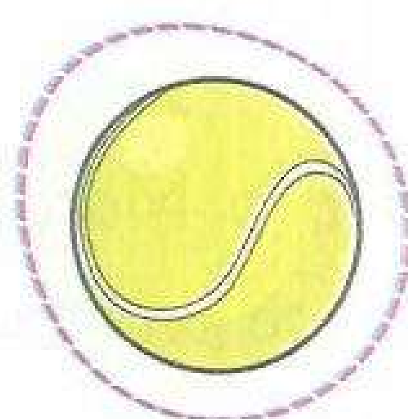

football ....


.... suit


tennis ....


swimming ......


football ....


.... ball


squash ....


swimming ......

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 2





Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

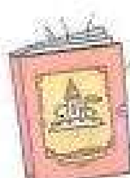
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Hedaya was born on .... 21, 1993.
a) March b) April c) May d) June

2 She began practicing taekwondo at the age of ....
a) 5 b) 6 c) 7 d) 8

3 She won many prizes at the age of ....
a) 4 b) 40 c) 44 d) 14

4 She won the .... medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.
a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) wood



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 The nightmare is a very bad .... الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية 2024
a) dream b) name c) person d) drink

2 Water pollution is very .... الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024
a) useful b) good c) harmful d) helpful

3 I'm so hot! Let's go and sit in the .... of that tree. الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس 2024
a) sun b) shade c) bed d) beach

4 I wear my goggles to go .... الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق 2024
a) swimming b) running c) squash d) kung fu

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

like – beach – strong – swimming – goggles

الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024

Doing sports is very useful to our bodies. Sports make us ....(1)............ and healthy. My favorite sport is ....(2)............. I began to learn swimming when I was seven. I love going to the ....(3)................. and swim in the sea. I wear my swimming ....(4)............ and train every day in the swimming pool near my house. Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس 2024

Hello, I'm Heba. I'm good at cooking and making cakes. I'm bad at playing sports. Ali is my brother. He is eleven years old. He is good at playing tennis, but he is bad at helping me in the kitchen. My sister's name is Soha, she is eight years old. She is good at doing math. She is bad at tidying her room. Mazin and Reem are my cousins. Reem is good at drawing. She likes cats. Mazin likes monkeys. Monkeys are good at climbing trees.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) Heba and her family b) playing sports
c) cats and monkeys d) cooking in the kitchen

2 .... is good at drawing.

a) Reem b) Mazin c) Heba d) Ali

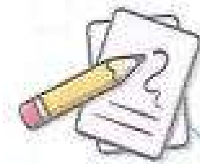
B Answer the following questions:

3 How old is Ali?

....

4 What animal does Mazin like?

....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 a gold – Hedaya – wants – medal – win – to. الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم 2024

....

2 do – time – you – to – What – want – play? الدقهلية - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 I'm very good at .... (play) tennis. الإسماعيلية 2024
2 What sport .... (be) you bad at?

7 Punctuate the following: 1

i practice tennis a lot in the summer الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5



"Water pollution"

- What causes water pollution? الشرقية - إدارة أبو كبير 2024
- Why is water pollution dangerous?

....
....
....
....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Marwan is (bad – worse – good) at tennis.

2 Marwan goes to the (school – park – club) to play tennis.

3 Marwan is bad at (football – handball – tennis).

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 I'm good at playing table tennis (and – but – because) I can run fast.
2 When you play squash, you hit the ball with a small (pitch – boot – racket).
3 Reem is (good – bad – great) at drawing. She doesn't like it.
4 She's good at (write – wrote – writing) poems.
5 In (tennis – handball – kung fu), we do high kicks.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 are – sailing – My – and – swimming – favorites.

....

2 at – What – you – sport – are – good?

....

3 good – Monkeys – trees – climbing – are – at.

....

4 writing – is – great – He – poems – at.

....

5 do – moves – lots of – I – different – can.

....

OCTOBER REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر أكتوبر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We buy fresh vegetables at the .... (الإسكندرية - إدارة الجمرك 2024)
a) garden b) bank c) beach d) market

2 Ali is very .... He has a lot of money. (الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه أول 2024)
a) poor b) clever c) rich d) bad

3 Lions are kept in a .... at the zoo. (الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024)
a) cage b) page c) bag d) coin

4 My mother .... the vegetables with the knife to make salad. (القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024)
a) ships b) grabs c) chops d) buys

5 My uncle planted an apple tree in his .... (القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2024)
a) office b) library c) room d) garden

6 I like eating chocolate, but it is .... (الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه أول 2024)
a) fruits b) unhealthy c) sugar d) healthy

7 A: What's your favorite ....? B: I like chicken. (البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024)
a) food b) drink c) juice d) sport

8 We would like to .... oranges. (القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2024)
a) eat b) sleep c) go d) play

9 Add rice to your .... to buy at the market.
a) shopping list b) school bag c) price d) fridge

10 My brother raises chickens. He .... fresh eggs every day. (المنوفية - إدارة شبين الكوم 2024)
a) chops b) collects c) grows d) were

11 Let's go to the .... pitch. (القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024)
a) sailing b) swimming c) football d) karate

12 We use a .... to play squash. (القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس 2024)
a) racket b) suit c) boot d) pool

13 She is good at sports. She's a famous .... (الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق 2024)
a) athlete b) doctor c) teacher d) vet

14 A .... is a very big person. (الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه ثان 2024)
a) little b) giant c) magic d) poor

15 Hedaya Malak won many important .... (السويس - إدارة السويس 2024)
a) words b) prizes c) courts d) suits

16 I love swimming. I always go to the swimming .... on Fridays.

الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024

a) pitch b) court c) classroom d) pool

17 .... water can make children and old people ill. القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024

a) Dirty b) Clean c) Healthy d) Nice

18 He's very good at doing .... القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

a) swimming b) football c) kung fu d) sailing

19 I wear football ....to play football. الإسماعيلية - مديرية التربية والتعليم 2024

a) goggles b) sandals c) boots d) rackets

20 A/An .... means all the animals, plants, and rocks in a place. البحيرة - إدارة إيتاي البارود 2024

a) river b) living c) ecosystem d) non-living

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

beans – man – market – poor – bought

Jack and his mother were very ....(1)............ . Jack went to the ....(2)............ to sell his cow. On his way, he met an old ....(3)............ who was selling beans. Jack wasn't interested in buying the beans, but Jack ....(4)............ the beans at last. الجيزة - إدارة الوراق 2024

B)

garden – family – grows – market – mango

Ahmed lives in a big house with his ....(1)............ . They have a big ....(2)............ where his grandpa ....(3)............ many fruits and vegetables. Ahmed's favorite fruit is mango. He likes chocolate, too. He collects fresh eggs and sells them at the ....(4)............ .

الشرقية - إدارة صان الحجر 2024

C)

fast – court – slow – healthy – racket

Squash is a fun and exciting sport. People play squash on a small ....(1)......... with walls all around. Squash players use a small ....(2)............ and a small ball. They move very ....(3)............... . They can get really hot. Squash can help you stay ....(4)............... . You can play it with a friend, too.

D)

flag – medal – famous – gold – kind

Hedaya Malak is a ....(1)............ Egyptian taekwondo player. She carried the Egyptian ....(2).................. at Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She won the bronze ....(3)...... at Rio Olympics in 2016. She is a very kind person. Now, she is practicing hard because she wants to win a ....(4)............ medal.

الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Do you have .... (some) carrots, please? القليوبية – إدارة شرق شبرا الخيمة 2024
2 Would you like............................ (a) apples? المنوفية – إدارة سرس الليان 2024
3 We haven't got .... (some) grapes. القاهرة – إدارة الشروق 2024
4 Would you like .... (any) tea? القليوبية – إدارة شرق غرب الخيمة 2024
5 I would like .... (some) orange, please. المنوفية – إدارة شبين الكوم 2024
6 There aren't .... (some) mangoes in the fridge. دمياط – إدارة الزرقا 2024
7 Have you got .... (some) cheese? القاهرة – إدارة الزيتون 2024
8 I don't have ....(some) book in my bag?
9 I would like ....(some) apple, please. الإسماعيلية – مديرية التربية والتعليم 2024
10 Are there .... (some) tomatoes? الدقهلية – إدارة السطرية 2024
11 She .... (be) good at writing poems.
12 They .... (be) great at swimming.
13 I'm very good .... (for) playing squash.
14 Samy is bad at .... (speak) French. القليوبية – إدارة الخانكة 2024
15 They are good at .... (play) squash. الإسكندرية – إدارة المنتزه أول 2024
16 How about .... (play) volleyball, Mona? المنوفية – إدارة شبين الكوم 2024
17 I am good at (draw) .... pictures. الجيزة – إدارة زايد 2024
18 I can't come with you .... (but) I'm sick.
19 He is good at............................(make) fruit salad. الجيزة – إدارة جنوب الجيزة 2024
20 Ali is good .... (in) Arabic. الإسكندرية – إدارة المنتزه أول 2024

4 Punctuate the following:

1 my favorite food is rice الشرقية – إدارة العاشر من رمضان 2024

....

2 mangoes grow in egypt. القاهرة – إدارة الجمالية 2024

....

3 what dishes can you make with apples القاهرة – إدارة الشروق 2024

....

4 is there any rice المنوفية – إدارة اشمون 2024

....

لمزيد من التدريبات ارجع إلى صفحه 239

Unit 3 How do I look?

كيف أبدو؟



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.
  - listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation.
  - practice using the infinitive of purpose.
  - read a traditional folktale.
  - learn how to say past simple endings /d/, /t/, and /ɪd/.
  - multiply multi-digit numbers.
  - write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives.
  - research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع، ويقرأ، ويبحث، ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الملابس.
  - يستمع إلى محادثة عن حزم الأمتعة لقضاء عطلة.
  - يتدرب على استخدام المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض.
  - يقرأ قصة خيالية من التراث التقليدى.
  - يتعلم كيف يقول الأفعال التى تنتهى بـ /d/ ، /t/ ، و /ɪd/ فى زمن الماضى البسيط.
  - يقوم بعملية الضرب للأرقام متعددة الخانات.
  - يكتب وصف الملابس المفضلة مستخدمًا الصفات.
  - يقوم بالبحث لعمل منشور عن الملابس التقليدية من جميع أنحاء العالم.

Did you know?

- Cotton grows in the Nile Delta. Many people believe that Egyptian cotton is the best cotton in the world.

Find out!

- Cotton grows so well in Egypt because of Egypt's *fertile soil and *moderate climate.

*fertile	خصبة	*moderate	معتدل



Lesson 1
Our trip to Al Fayoum
رحلتنا إلى الفيوم





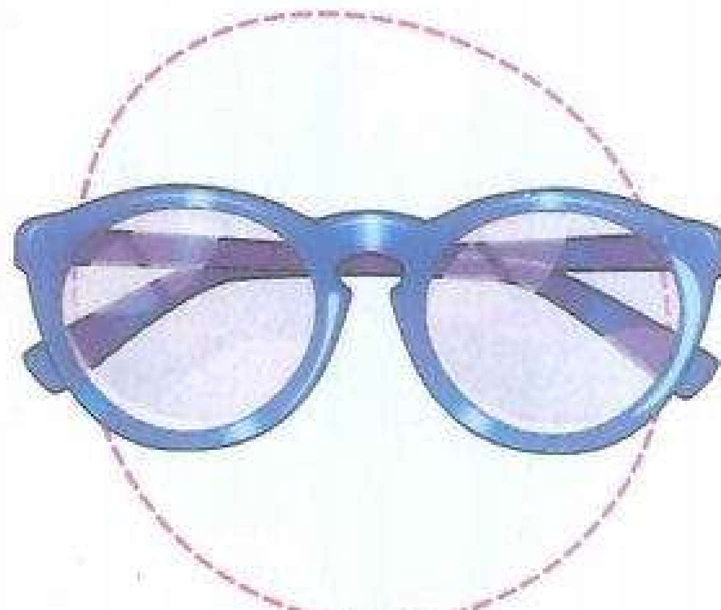
1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

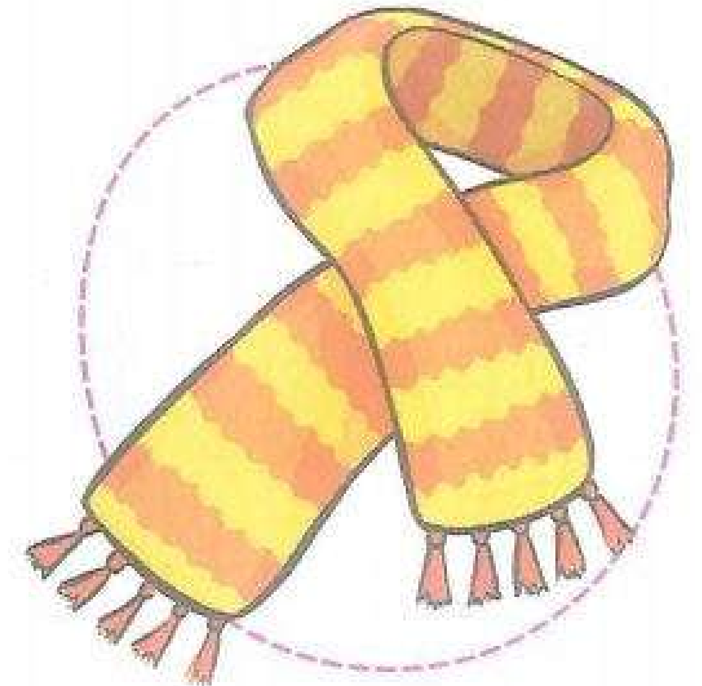


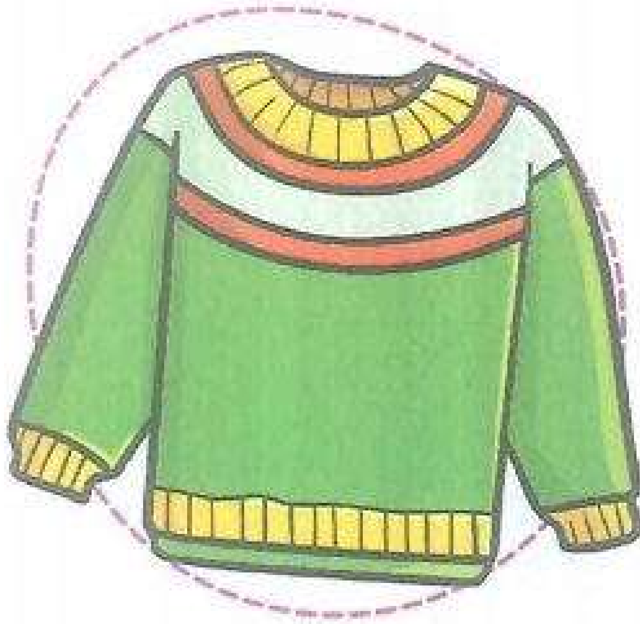
Main vocabulary


T-shirt
تيشرت

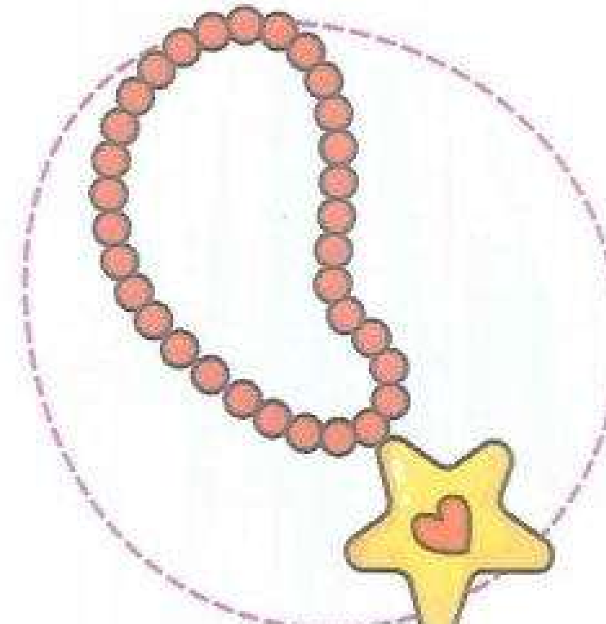

sunglasses
نظارة شمسية

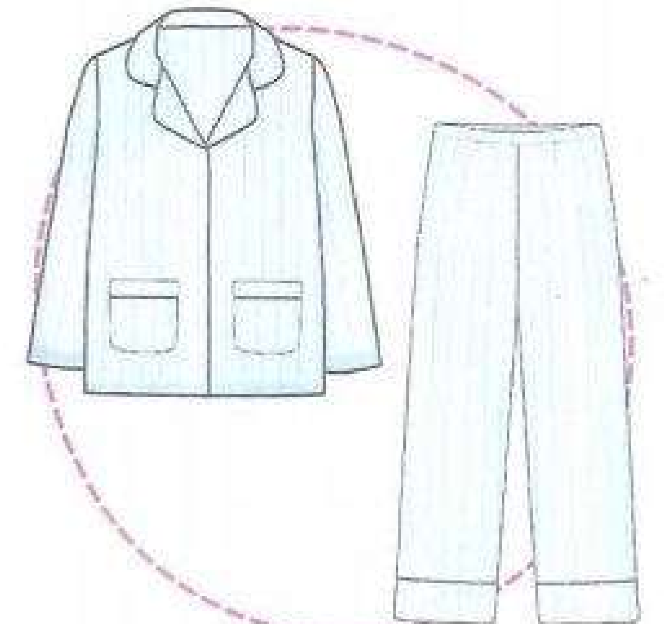

swimming shorts
شورت سباحة


scarf
وشاح (كوفية)


sweater
قميص صوفى


sneakers
حذاء رياضى


necklace
عقد

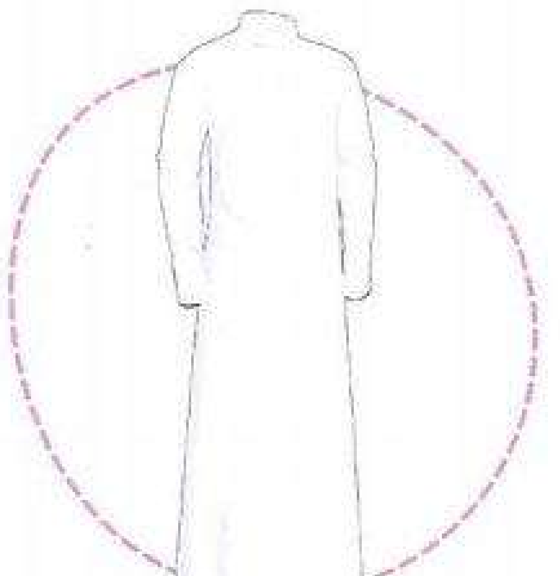

pajamas
بيجامة

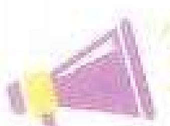

spotted
منقط


striped
مخطط


suitcase
حقيبة سفر


coat
معطف


galabeya
جلابية


Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (tt) فى كلمة (spotted) ينطقان كحرف واحد.
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e - i - y) كما فى (necklace).

Extra vocabulary

trip	رحلة	Al Fayoum	محافظة الفيوم	holiday	إجازة
exciting (adj.)	مثير / شيق	excited (adj.)	متشوق / متحمس	lovely (adj.)	رائع
sunny (adj.)	مشمس	cool (adj.)	بارد	pool	حمام سباحة
comfortable (adj.)	مريح	gold (adj.)	ذهبى (اللون)	stripes	خطوط
uniform	زى موحد	pearl	لؤلؤة	natural (adj.)	طبيعى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
pack	يحزم الحقائب أو الأمتعة	packed	remember	يتذكر	remembered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
know	يعرف	knew	wear	يرتدى	wore

Expressions and Phrases

I can't wait	لا أطيق (أتحمل) الانتظار	of course	بالتأكيد / بالطبع	for ages	منذ زمن طويل
come on	هيا بنا	in the evenings	فى أوقات المساء	walk around	يتجول
on your feet	فى قدميك	What else ...?	ماذا أيضا ...؟	man-made	من صنع الإنسان

Take care!

- تستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed) مثل كلمة "excited" لوصف ما يشعر به الشخص.

e.g. I'm excited to see them, too.

- تستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) مثل كلمة "exciting" لوصف الشخص أو الشىء الذى يسبب الشعور.

e.g. Our holiday to Al Fayoum is so exciting.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I wear my (scarf – galabeya – sunglasses – T-shirt) to protect my eyes from the sun.
2 I put on my blue (sweater – necklace – pajamas – swimming shorts) when I go to bed.
3 I always run in my comfortable (scarf – sneakers – coat – sunglasses).
4 I always wear a (coat – swimming shorts – T-shirt – necklace) in winter.
5 I bought a new (galabeya – pajamas – necklace – sweater) to wear around my neck.
6 It's cold in the evenings. You should take your (shorts – shirt – necklace – sweater).



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



What are Mom and Asser doing? ماذا تفعل ماما وآسر؟



Mom

Asser, we need to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.

آسر، نحتاج إلى حزم حقائبنا من أجل إجازتنا غدًا.





Asser

It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.

هذا ممتع جدًّا! لا أطيق الانتظار للذهاب إلى الفيوم لرؤية العم حاتم والعمّة ملك. وبالطبع فارس ودينا.



Mom

I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!

أنا أعرف. أنا متحمسة لرؤيتهم أيضًا. لم نرهم منذ زمن طويل! لكن هيا بناء نحن بحاجة إلى حزم حقائبنا!



Asser

OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?

حسنًا ، أريد أن أحزم التيشيرت الأخضر الخاص بى وشورت السباحة لأن لديهم حمام سباحة جميلًا، أليس كذلك؟



Mom

Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

نعم ، وتذكر نظارتك الشمسية. سيكون الجو مشمسًا جدًّا.



Asser

Will I need a coat and a scarf?

هل سأحتاج إلى معطف ووشاح (كوفية)؟



Mom

No, Asser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

لا يا آسر. لكن يجب أن تحزم قميصًا صوفيًا. يمكن أن يكون الجو باردًا فى المساء.



Asser

OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

نعم. سأحزم قميصى الصوفى الأزرق .هذا هو المفضل لدى.



Mom

You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

ستحتاج إلى حذائك الرياضى لأننا سنتجول كثيرًا وتحتاج إلى أن ترتدى شيئًا مريحًا فى قدميك.



Asser

What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

ماذا عن أفضل جلابية لدى؟ هل سأحتاج إلى تلك الجلابية التى أعطتها لى الجدة؟



Mom

No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.

لا، لكننى سآخذ العقد الذهبى الخاص بى.



Asser

Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas!
I'll take the ones with the stripes. They're really cool!

همم. نعم. ماذا أحتاج أيضًا؟ آه، أنا أعرف! بيجامتى! سآخذ تلك التى بها خطوط. إنها حقًا رائعة!



Important sentences جمل هامة

* Asser and his mom are packing their suitcases for a holiday to Al Fayoum tomorrow.
آسر ووالدته يحزمان حقائبهما لقضاء عطلة فى الفيوم غدًا.
* Asser is packing his sunglasses because it will be very sunny.
يحزم آسر نظارته الشمسية لأن الجو سيكون مشمسًا جدًا.
* Asser is packing a sweater because it can be cool in the evenings.
يحزم آسر قميصًا صوفيًا لأن الطقس يمكن أن يكون باردا فى المساء.
* Asser is packing his sneakers because he will be walking around a lot.
يقوم آسر بتجهيز حذائه الرياضى لأنه سوف يتجول كثيراً.
* Mom is packing her gold necklace.
ماما تحزم عقدها الذهبى.



3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Listening script page 39 SB هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought some striped pajamas.
ذهب يوسف إلى مركز التسوق. اشترى بعض البيجامات المخططة.



Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella.
ذهبت نسمة إلى الحديقة. أخذت مظلة منقطة.



Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform.
ذهبت أميرة إلى المدرسة. ارتدت زيها المدرسي المخطط.



Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf.
لعب وائل تحت المطر. ارتدى معطفًا ووشاحًا (كوفية) منقطًا.

Language Functions

1 To express necessity: التعبير عن الضرورة:

I/ We/ They/ You + need to + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر … .

He/ She/ It + needs to + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر … .

e.g. We need to pack our suitcases. He needs to pack his sweater.

2 To give advice: إعطاء نصيحة:

Subject (الفاعل) + should + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر … … .

e.g. You should pack a sweater.



Find out!
Pearls come from a living sea creature called the oyster.
There're two general types of pearls: natural and man-made.
تأتي اللآلئ من كائن بحري حي يسمى المحار. هناك نوعان من اللآلئ: لآلئ طبيعية ولآلئ من صنع الإنسان.





Practice Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Mariam will travel to ....

a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Alexandria d) Al Fayoum

2 Mariam will pack her .... T-shirt.

a) blue b) green c) red d) black

3 Soha needs to pack her .... because it will be very sunny.

a) sweater b) hat c) sunglasses d) T-shirt

4 Mariam will pack a sweater because it can be .... in the evenings.

a) cool b) warm c) hot d) sunny

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I wear my swimming .... in the pool.

a) T-shirt b) sunglasses c) shorts d) hat

2 I walk around a lot. I need comfortable .... القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى 2024

a) scarfs b) necklaces c) sneakers d) coats

3 When you go on holiday, remember to .... your suitcases.

a) pick b) pack c) back d) peak

4 It's very sunny. I need my .... الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024

a) sunglasses b) scarf c) pajamas d) sweater

5 When it rains, I take my .... الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024

a) shorts b) umbrella c) sunglasses d) T-shirt

6 I wear a .... because it's hot.

a) shirt b) sweater c) coat d) jacket

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

back – pack – excited – shorts – sunglasses

I am Soha. I'm going to travel to Alexandria for a holiday with my family next week. We are very ....(1)............ . We need to ....(2)............ our suitcases. My brother Hany needs to pack his swimming ....(3)............ to swim in the sea. I will take my ....(4)............ because it will be sunny. It will be a nice holiday.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Youssef, Nesma, and Wael are friends. They are the same age. They will visit Al Fayoum next Friday. They are very excited to go there. They need to pack their suitcases for the holiday. Youssef will need his sneakers because they will walk around a lot, and he needs to wear something comfortable on his feet.
Nesma will pack her sunglasses because it will be very sunny there. Wael will pack his swimming shorts because he wants to go swimming there. الشرقية - إدارة الناشر 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The underlined word "excited" means ....

a) angry   b) sad   c) happy   d) hungry

2 It will be sunny in Al Fayoum, so Nesma will pack her ....

a) necklace   b) sunglasses   c) pajamas   d) skirt

B Answer the following questions:

3 When will the friends visit Al Fayoum?

....

4 Why does Youssef want to pack his sneakers?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 need – We – our suitcases – pack – to. الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب 2024

....

2 the stripes – take – with – I'll – the pajamas.

....

3 should – You – sneakers – comfortable – pack – your.

....

4 need – and – Will – a coat – I – a scarf?

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 i can't wait to go to cairo tomorrow.

....

2 I ll pack my blue sweater

....



Lesson 2





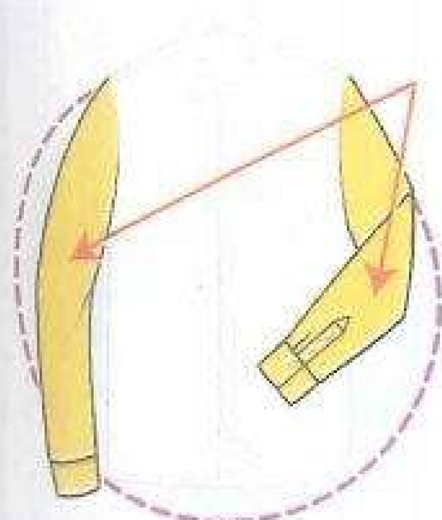
A My favorite clothes ملابسى المفضلة



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary


sleeves أكمام


pockets جيوب


belt حزام


crown تاج


gloves قفازات

Extra vocabulary

social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	Egyptian clothing	ملابس مصرية	information	معلومات
traditional (adj.)	تقليدى	robe	رداء (ثوب)	popular (adj.)	شعبى/ مشهور
cotton	قطن	sunburned (adj.)	مصاب بحروق الشمس	hidden (adj.)	مخفى
festival	مهرجان/ عيد	colorful (adj.)	ملون	patterns	أنماط (أشكال)
useful (adj.)	مفيد/ نافع	striped (adj.)	مخطط	spotted (adj.)	منقط
costume	زى	princess	أميرة	wedding	حفل زفاف
suit	بدلة	hall	صالة	essay	مقال
warm (adj.)	دافئ	grades	درجات	library	مكتبة
cardboard	ورق مقوى	poster	ملصق	internet	الإنترنت

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	borrow	يستعير	borrowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
wear	يرتدى	wore	hide	يختبئ	hid

Expressions and Phrases

do a school project	يقوم بمشروع مدرسى	made from	مصنوع من	get sunburned	يُصاب بحروق الشمس
from the outside	من الخارج	for example	على سبيل المثال	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة
look like	يبدو وكأنه	catch the train	يلحق بالقطار	correct homework	يصحح الواجبات



2. Listen, read, and role play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Thomas: Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Can you give me some information?

مرحبًا فارس. هل بإمكانك مساعدتى؟ أقوم بعمل مشروع مدرسى عن الملابس المصرية. هل تستطيع أن تعطينى بعض المعلومات؟



Fares: Hi, Thomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

مرحبًا توماس. نعم بالطبع. ماذا تريد أن تعرف؟



Thomas: Well, what do you usually wear?

حسنًا، ماذا ترتدى عادة؟



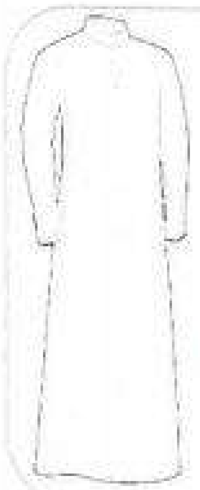
Fares: I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

أعيش فى سوهاج وعادة ما يكون الجو حارًا جدًا هنا. اليوم، أنا أرتدى شورتًا وتيشرتًا.



Thomas: Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?

رائع! هل يمكن أن تخبرنى عن بعض الملابس المصرية التقليدية؟





Fares: Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular.

بالطبع. حسنًا، يرتدى الكثير من الرجال الجلابية. هذا هو الرداء الأبيض الطويل وهو مشهور جدًا.


Thomas

Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

نعم، لقد رأيت ذلك. يبدو رائعًا حقًّا للارتداء.


Fares

Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned!

هذا صحيح، إنه رائع لأنه مصنوع من القطن. عادة ما يكون أبيض، لكن يمكنك الحصول عليه بألوان أخرى أيضًا. الأكمام طويلة كي لا نتعرض لحروق الشمس!


Thomas

Are there pockets?

هل يوجد بها جيوب؟


Fares

Yes! But they're hidden – you can't see them from the outside.

نعم! لكنها مخفية - لا يمكنك رؤيتها من الخارج.


Thomas

Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special festival?

هل ترتدون الجلابيات عند الاحتفال بمهرجان خاص؟


Fares

We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful patterns on them.

نعم نرتديها، والملابس التى نرتديها فى العيد على سبيل المثال جميلة جدًّا. يمكن أن تكون ملونة. فى بعض الأحيان هناك أشكال جميلة عليها.


Thomas

Thanks, Fares. That's really useful!

شكرًا فارس. هذا مفيد حقًّا!



3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Listening script page 43 

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



I went to town to buy a beautiful new dress for the party.

ذهبت إلى المدينة لشراء فستان جديد جميل للحفلة.



I bought a scarf and gloves to keep me warm.

اشتريت وشاحًا (كوفية) وقفازات لإبقائي دافئة.



I searched the internet to find information for my homework.

لقد بحثت على الإنترنت للعثور على المعلومات الخاصة بواجبي المنزلي.



I got some cardboard paper to make my poster.

حصلت على بعض الورق المقوى لصنع ملصق.



Marwa is wearing a spotted dress with a belt. There are two pockets.

مروة ترتدي فستاناً منقطاً وله حزام. هناك جيبان.



Reem is wearing a costume. She looks like a princess! She has a crown on her head. She has white gloves on her hands.

ريم ترتدي زيًا. إنهما تبدو وكأنها أميرة! لديها تاج على رأسها. لديها قفازات بيضاء على يديها.



Language Focus

1. Infinitive of purpose صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

We use "to + infinitive" to express purpose, and to say why someone does something:
نستخدم الفعل فى المصدر "to + infinitive" للتعبير عن الغرض، ولتوضيح سبب قيام شخص ما بشيء ما.

Form

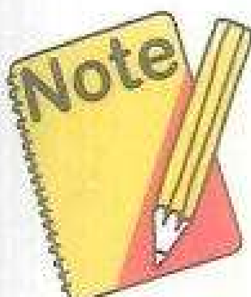
to + infinitive (الفعل فى المصدر) + ...



She went to town to buy a dress.
ذهبت إلى المدينة لشراء فستان.



He bought new sneakers to wear for playing football.
اشترى حذاءً رياضيًا جديدًا لارتدائه للعب كرة القدم.



We use "Why" to ask about purpose.
نستخدم «لماذا» لنسأل عن الغرض.



A: Why did Nesma go to the kitchen?
B: Nesma went to the kitchen to make a cake.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. I went to the library (borrow – borrowed – to borrow – borrowing) a book. SB
2. He wore swimming shorts (to – by – on – of) go swimming.
3. Injy used a pen (to write – writing – write – wrote) her essay. SB
4. She went to the bakery to (buy – bought – buying – buys) some bread.
5. I bought sunglasses to (wears – wear – wore – wearing) on holiday.
6. I bought a scarf (as – for – to – at) keep me warm.

2. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express actions that started and ended in the past.

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التى بدأت وانتهت فى الماضى.

e.g. I visited my grandpa yesterday.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed): travel → traveled
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d): use → used
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y)، يحذف حرف الـ (y) ويضاف (ied)، study → studied
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن، يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن. stop → stopped

e.g. My dad traveled to London by plane last week.

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
buy	bought	make	made	wear	wore
go	went	get	got	write	wrote
take	took	sleep	slept	leave	left
catch	caught	do	did	hide	hid

e.g. Eman bought a new dress yesterday.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) + تكملة الجملة ... .

e.g. Ola didn't finish her homework yesterday.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ(هل):

فى حالة السؤال بـ«هل» فى الماضى، نستخدم:

Question السؤال: A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ...?

للإجابة نستخدم:

Answer الإجابة:

B: Yes,	Subject (الفاعل)	did.
B: No,	Subject (الفاعل)	didn't.

e.g. A: Did Tarek buy a racket? → B: Yes, he did. or B: No, he didn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question السؤال | A: Wh- word (كلمة الاستفهام) | did | subject | (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ...?

Answer الإجابة | B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل + ...

e.g. A: Why did the teacher use a red pen?
B: The teacher used a red pen to correct homework.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday	last	ago	in the past
أمس	الماضى	منذ	فى الماضى

Verb to "be" in the past simple فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط

I/He/She/It/اسم مفرد + was/wasn't ... → e.g. - She was ill yesterday.
- It wasn't a sunny day yesterday.

We/They/You /اسم جمع + were/weren't ... → e.g. - We were at the supermarket last week.
- Ramy and Rana weren't happy yesterday.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 They (go – going – is going – went) to the library yesterday.
2 Asmaa (didn't – don't – isn't – doesn't) sleep early last night.
3 They (are – was – were – do) at the park two hours ago.
4 A: Did Injy (write – writes – wrote – writing) her essay? B: No, she didn't.
5 They (travel – traveled – traveling – travels) to London last year.
6 My father woke up at 7 and (catch – catches – caught – catching) the bus to work.
7 How (do – did – does – are) you get to the train station last night?
8 I went shopping two days (last – ago – next – soon).
9 The boy (is – was – are – be) in the garden two minutes ago.
10 I didn't (take – takes – took – taking) any photos at the park.

Practice 

Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I've got a .... sweater. It's lined white and pink. بورسعيد - 2024

a) striped b) spotted c) dark d) sunburned

2 The galabeya is cool because it's made from .... الشرقية - إدارة حسان الحجر 2024

a) cotton b) paper c) plastic d) metal

3 The galabeya is a very long ....

a) robe b) shorts c) sweater d) T-shirt

4 The .... of galabeya are long. بورسعيد - 2024

a) sleeves b) belts c) boots d) buttons

5 .... are traditional Egyptian clothes.

a) Coats b) Galabeyas c) T-shirts d) Sweaters

6 She is a princess. She has a .... on her head.

a) dress b) gloves c) crown d) pocket

7 Rana is wearing .... on her hands. الشرقية - إدارة أولاد صقر - 2024

a) glasses b) belts c) gloves d) skirts

8 Galabeyas have ...., but they are hidden. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط - 2024

a) gloves b) crowns c) pockets d) belts

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

women – cotton – hidden – men – sunburned

I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Many ....(1)........... wear the galabeya. It's made from ....(2)........... . It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The sleeves are long, so we don't get ....(3)...........! The pockets are ....(4)........... – you can't see them from the outside. We wear galabeya when we celebrate Eid.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 a racket – Tarek – play – to – tennis – bought. الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس - 2024

....

2 got – with – dress – I've – a striped – a belt.

....

3 usually – you – wear – do – What? الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس - 2024

....

4 you – Did – play – video – games – yesterday? الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر - 2024

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I .... (play) football yesterday. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه - 2024
2 I .... (go) to the cinema last week. الشرقية - إدارة القنايات - 2024
3 I go to the library to .... (reading) stories. محافظة الشرقية - إدارة العاشر - 2024
4 A: .... (What) did Tarek make a suit? B: To wear for a wedding.
5 She .... (doesn't) buy a dress yesterday.
6 Nayra left the party to .... (caught) the train.
7 Mayar made a cake to .... (celebrated).
8 She .... (isn't) at school yesterday.
9 We didn't .... (had) a vacation this year. بورسعيد - 2024
10 What did they .... (bought) at the supermarket? القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس - 2024
11 She .... (doesn't) do her homework yesterday.
12 I went to the market to .... (got) some rice.
13 We didn't .... (watched) the match yesterday. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه - 2024
14 My father .... (is) at the park yesterday. الإسكندرية - إدارة الإبراهيمية - 2024
15 Did Ahmed .... (saw) a film yesterday? الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر - 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 The clothes we wear for eid are very beautiful

....

2 are there any pockets

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:



"My favorite clothes" الجيزة - إدارة الهرم - 2024

- What do you like to wear? - Why do you like these clothes?
- How is it?

....
....
....
....



Lesson 3



A Story



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

kind (adj.)	طيب / عطوف	honest (adj.)	صادق / أمين	poor (adj.)	فقير
happy (adj.)	سعيد	tired (adj.)	متعب	beautiful (adj.)	جميل
amazing (adj.)	مذهل	delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	new (adj.)	جديد

Extra vocabulary

elves	أقزام	shoemaker	صانع الأحذية	kindness	الطيبة
money	مال	workshop	ورشة	wife	زوجة
enough (adj.)	كافٍ	leather	جلد	dear	عزيزى/عزيزتى
surprised (adj.)	متفاجئ	dear (adj.)	عزيزى / عزيزتى	the following (adj.)	التالى
meal	وجبة	around	حول	perfect (adj.)	مثالى
again	مرة أخرى	amazed (adj.)	مندهش/مذهول	little (adj.)	صغير الحجم

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
believe	يصدق	believed	call	ينادى	called
thank	يشكر	thanked	dance	يرقص	danced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
pay	يدفع	paid	leave	يغادر	left
hide	يختبئ	hid	sit	يجلس	sat

Expressions and Phrases

once upon a time	ذات مرة / كان يا ما كان	work hard	يعمل بجد
one night	ذات ليلة	pair of	زوج من
walk into	يدخل	try on	يجرب (ملابس / حذاء)
for the night	لهذه الليلة	find out	يكتشف
all over the land	من جميع أنحاء البلاد	ever after	للأبد

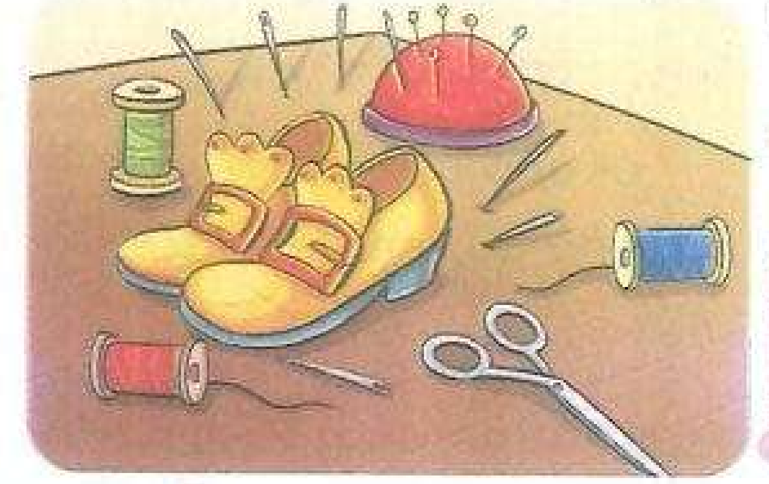
The elves and the shoemaker الأقزام وصانع الأحذية



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Once upon a time, a kind and honest shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.



ذات مرة، عاش صانع أحذية طيب وصادق فى المدينة مع زوجته. كانا فقيرين جدًّا، لكنهما كانا سعيدين. عمل صانع الأحذية بجد، لكن لم يكن لديه مال.

The middle

One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.



ذات ليلة، كان صانع الأحذية فى ورشته. «يا عزيزتى، لدى من الجلد ما يكفى فقط لزوج واحد من الأحذية. لكننى متعب جدًّا لأصنعهما الليلة. سأقطع الجلد الآن وأصنع الأحذية فى الصباح». قطع صانع الأحذية الجلد وذهب إلى الفراش.

The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are beautiful. Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.

فى صباح اليوم التالى، لم يستطع صانع الأحذية أن يصدق عينيه. دعا زوجته للحضور بسرعة إلى الورشة. قال صانع الأحذية: «انظرى إلى هذه الأحذية!». هناك، على المنضدة كان يوجد زوج رائع من الأحذية. «إنهما جميلان. هل صنعتهما؟ بدت زوجته مندهشة. قال: «لا، يا عزيزتى، أنا لم أصنعهما».

Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such amazing shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He tried on the shoes. "They're perfect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife, "go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather.

ثم دخل رجل إلى المتجر. قال «لم أر أبدا مثل هذه الأحذية الرائعة». «هل يمكننى تجربتهما؟» جرب الرجل الحذاء. وقال«إنهما مثاليان،»، ودفع لصانع الأحذية. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: «بسرعة، اذهب واشتر المزيد من الجلود». وذهب صانع الأحذية لشراء المزيد من الجلود.

The end

When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a delicious meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.
The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us."

عندما وصل إلى المنزل، كانت زوجة صانع الأحذية قد أعدت له وجبة لذيذة. «سأقطع الجلد فقط، ثم آتى وآكل». قطع صانع الأحذية الجلد لزوجين من الأحذية، وغادر الورشة لهذه الليلة. فى صباح اليوم التالى، اندهش صانع الأحذية وزوجته لرؤية زوجين جميلين من الأحذية فى الورشة. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: «يجب أن نعرف من يصنع هذه الأحذية». «دعنا نختبئ الليلة ونرى من يساعدنا».

That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little elves! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

فى تلك الليلة، قطع صانع الأحذية الجلد ثم اختبأ. لقد فوجئا جدًا برؤية اثنين من الأقزام الصغار! بدأ القزمان فى صنع الأحذية. وسرعان ما صنعا زوجين آخرين من الأحذية الجميلة. قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: «يجب أن نشكر القزمين، دعنا نصنع لهما ملابس جديدة».

The next night, the elves found their new clothes. They were so happy that they danced around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes.
Soon, people came from all over the land to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

فى الليلة التالية، عثر القزمان على ملابسهما الجديدة. كانا سعيدين للغاية لدرجة أنهما رقصا حول ورشة العمل قبل الجلوس لصنع المزيد من الأحذية.
سرعان ما جاء الناس من جميع أنحاء البلاد لشراء أحذية صانع الأحذية. لم يعد هو وزوجته فقيرين مرة أخرى وعاشا فى سعادة للأبد.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 The shoemaker works in a (supermarket – mall – farm – workshop).
2 The shoemaker's wife made him a (beautiful – new – delicious – honest) meal.
3 The shoemaker was very surprised to see two little (leather – elves – meals – books).
4 He cut the (paper – wood – leather – cloth) to make shoes.



الصفات هى كلمات تصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء:
- قد تأتى قبل الاسم:

e.g. I've never seen such amazing shoes.

- قد تأتى بعد (Verb to be):

e.g. The shoemaker was very poor.



Pronunciation

(-ed) endings الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ed)




3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:

/d/	/t/	/ɪd/
ننطق(ed) /d/ إذا أتى آخر الفعل أحد الأصوات الآتية: /v/ , /r/ , /n/ , /m/ , /l/ , vowel sound	ننطق(ed) /t/ إذا أتى آخر الفعل أحد الأصوات الآتية: /f/, /s/, /k/, /p/, /tʃ/ , / ʃ/	ننطق(ed) /ɪd/ إذا أتى آخر الفعل أحد الأصوات الآتية: /d/ , /t/
played لعب	walked مشى	tidied رتب
cleaned نظف	washed غسل	needed احتاج
lived عاش	worked عمل	studied ذاكر
delivered وصل	asked سأل	counted عد
enjoyed استمتع	dressed لبس	tasted تذوق
slowed أبطأ	fixed أصلح	waited انتظر
carried حمل	promised وعد	wanted أراد



CLIL: Math

Multiply multi-digit numbers ضرب الأعداد متعددة الأرقام



4. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ، ولاحظ:

A multi-digit number is a number that consists of two or more digits.
العدد متعدد الأرقام هو عدد يتكون من رقمين أو أكثر.

e.g.

10 34 433

$10 \times 10 = 100$

$30 \times 20 = 600$

$50 \times 50 = 2500$

$38 \times 24 = 912$

e.g. For sports day, Mrs Amal ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts.

How many T-shirts did Mrs Amal order?

The answer: $12 \times 18 = 216$ T-shirts



Did you know?

If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!

إذا ضربت أى رقم فى صفر، فإن الإجابة هى صفر!



Practice Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 The shoemaker was .... and honest.
a) bad b) kind c) unkind d) amazing

2 The shoemaker cut out the .... to make shoes.
a) glass b) clothes c) leather d) plastic

3 .... little elves helped the shoemaker.
a) Two b) Three c) Four d) Five

4 The shoemaker gave new .... to the elves.
a) shoes b) bags c) clothes d) sweets

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 She worked hard today. She feels ....
a) poor b) tired c) honest d) amazing

2 People like Ali because he never tells lies. He is ....
a) beautiful b) new c) delicious d) honest

3 He is .... He has no money. الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر 2024
a) poor b) rich c) tall d) healthy

4 Breakfast, lunch, and dinner are ....
a) colors b) meals c) subjects d) sports

5 Yesterday, I .... my room.
a) tidied b) played c) walked d) lived

6 She .... a beautiful skirt at the party.
a) waited b) tasted c) counted d) dressed

7 He .... the flowers to the houses yesterday.
a) delivered b) studied c) wanted d) promised

8 There was a cat on the road, so we .... down the car.
a) slowed b) promised c) dressed d) needed

9 I .... to the park.
a) needed b) lived c) walked d) delivered

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

leather – shoes – workshop – elves – buy

الإسماعيلية - إدارة الاسماعيلية 2024

My grandfather was a shoemaker. He had a ....(1)........... in the city. He made beautiful ....(2)........... . A lot of people went to ....(3)........... their shoes from him. He was honest and he made shoes from the best ....(4)........... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

A shoemaker and his wife were poor and only had one piece of leather to make one pair of shoes. The next morning, they found out that the pair of shoes were made. They sold them and bought more leather to make more shoes. He woke up again to find that more shoes were made. He and his wife hid to see who was making the shoes. They were very surprised to see two little elves. He and his wife weren't ever poor again, and they lived happily ever after.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The shoemaker needs .... to make shoes.

a) wood b) leather c) cloth d) glass

2 The underlined word "pair" means ....

a) one b) three c) two d) four

B Answer the following questions:

3 How did the elves help the shoemaker?

....

4 Summarize the passage in two sentences.

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 I – my – Yesterday, – room – tidied.

....

2 every – shoes – Who – made – the – night?

....

3 buy – and – Go – more – leather – some.

....

4 clothes – made – for – They – new – the elves.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 we must thank the elves

....

2 did you make the shoes

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project

Watch a video 



A Writing



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

uniform	زى موحد	short-sleeved (adj.)	قصير الأكمام	trousers	بنطلون
pale (adj.)	فاتح	tie	كرافتة (رابطة العنق)	stripes	خطوط
checked (adj.)	كاروهات (ذو مربعات)	smart (adj.)	أنيق	vest	سترة (صديرى)
Mexico	المكسيك	sombrero	قبعة مكسيكية	styles	أشكال

Extra vocabulary

really	حقًا	shirt	قميص	skirt	جيبة
socks	جوارب	leather (adj.)	جلدى	sweater	قميص صوف
dark (adj.)	غامق	light (adj.)	فاتح	different (adj.)	مختلف
shorts	شورت	T-shirt	تيشرت	linen	كِتّان
colorful (adj.)	ملون	feasts	أعياد	celebrations	احتفالات
bright (adj.)	لامع	gold	ذهب	silver	فضة

Expressions and Phrases

have to	يضطر إلى	for when	عندما
for the party	من أجل الحفلة	traditional Mexican dresses	الفساتين المكسيكية التقليدية

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Boys and girls have different uniforms at school. الأولاد والبنات لديهم زى مختلف فى المدرسة.
* Boys have to wear a tie every day. يجب على الأولاد ارتداء ربطة عنق كل يوم.
* Girls don't wear trousers but they wear a blue and white checked skirt.
لا ترتدى الفتيات بناطيل ولكن يرتدين جيبة بها كاروهات أبيض وأزرق.
* We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes.
علينا جميعاً أن نرتدى جوارب بيضاء وأحذية جلدية سوداء.
* When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets.
عندما يكون الجو باردًا، نرتدى سترات أو جواكت زرقاء داكنة.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Student A

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.





أنا حقًّا أحب زى مدرستنا. يرتدى الجميع قميصًا أبيض بأكمام قصيرة. ترتدى الفتيات جيبة زرقاء والأولاد يرتدون بناطيل زرقاء. علينا جميعًا ارتداء جوارب بيضاء وأحذية جلدية سوداء. لا يكون الجو شديد البرودة هنا، ولكن عندما يحدث، يمكننا أن نلبسستراتنا الزرقاء.

Student B

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.





فى المدرسة ، أرتدى قميصًا أزرق فاتحًا وبنطلونًا أزرق غامقًا. علينا أن نرتدى رابطة عنق كل يوم. لونها أزرق غامق وعليها خطوط زرقاء فاتحة. ترتدى الفتيات فى مدرستى أيضًا قميصًا أزرق فاتحًا، لكنهن لا يرتدين البناطيل. يرتدين جيبة بها مربعات زرقاء وبيضاء. لا تضطر الفتيات إلى ارتداء رابطة عنق.

Student C

Our school uniform is really smart. We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.



زى مدرستنا أنيق حقًّا، يجب أن نرتدى قميصًا أبيض برابطة عنق حمراء. نحن نرتدى جيبة رمادية داكنة وجاكت أزرق.

Student D

The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.





الأولاد والبنات فى مدرستى يرتدون زيًّا مختلفًا. يرتدى الأولاد شورتات خضراء فاتحة وجوارب خضراء طويلة. نحن نرتدى قميصًا أبيض ولدينا سترة حمراء داكنة اللون نرتديها عندما يبرد الجو. الزى المدرسى لأختى مختلف. ترتدى جيبة زرقاء وقميصًا أصفر.

Student E

Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. I like my uniform!

الزى الرسمى لدينا هو جيبة زرقاء داكنة للفتيات أو شورت أزرق غامق للأولاد، وقميص قطنى أزرق فاتح، وجوارب بيضاء، وحذاء أسود. عندما يكون الجو باردًا، نرتدى جواكت أو سترات زرقاء داكنة. أنا أحب الزى الرسمى الخاص بى!



Language Focus

When we use adjectives, we put them into this order:
عندما نستخدم الصفات، نضعها فى هذا الترتيب:

Adjective is a word that describes a noun. الصفة هى كلمة تصف اسمًا.

1 size الحجم	2 age العمر	3 color اللون	4 material المادة الخام
big	new	black	cotton
small	old	white	linen
tall		green	leather
short			

e.g. - She is wearing a green cotton dress.
- The boys wear long green socks.

Check

Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct order:

1 The playroom has .... tables. (plastic, small)

2 I bought a .... ring. (silver, new)

3 The shoemaker made .... shoes. (small, leather) SB

4 He had to wear an .... hat. (old, orange) SB



Project

What is the Mexican hat called? ماذا تسمى القبعة المكسيكية؟

Clothes in Mexico



These girls are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these during feasts and celebrations.

ترتدى هؤلاء الفتيات الأزياء التقليدية. إن تلك الأزياء ملونة جدًّا وبها العديد من الشرائط. ترتدى الفتيات فى المكسيك فساتين مثل هذه فى الأعياد والاحتفالات.



Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

تحب الفتيات فى المكسيك الألوان الزاهية. حتى وإن كن لا يحتفلن، يقمن بارتداء الملابس الملونة.

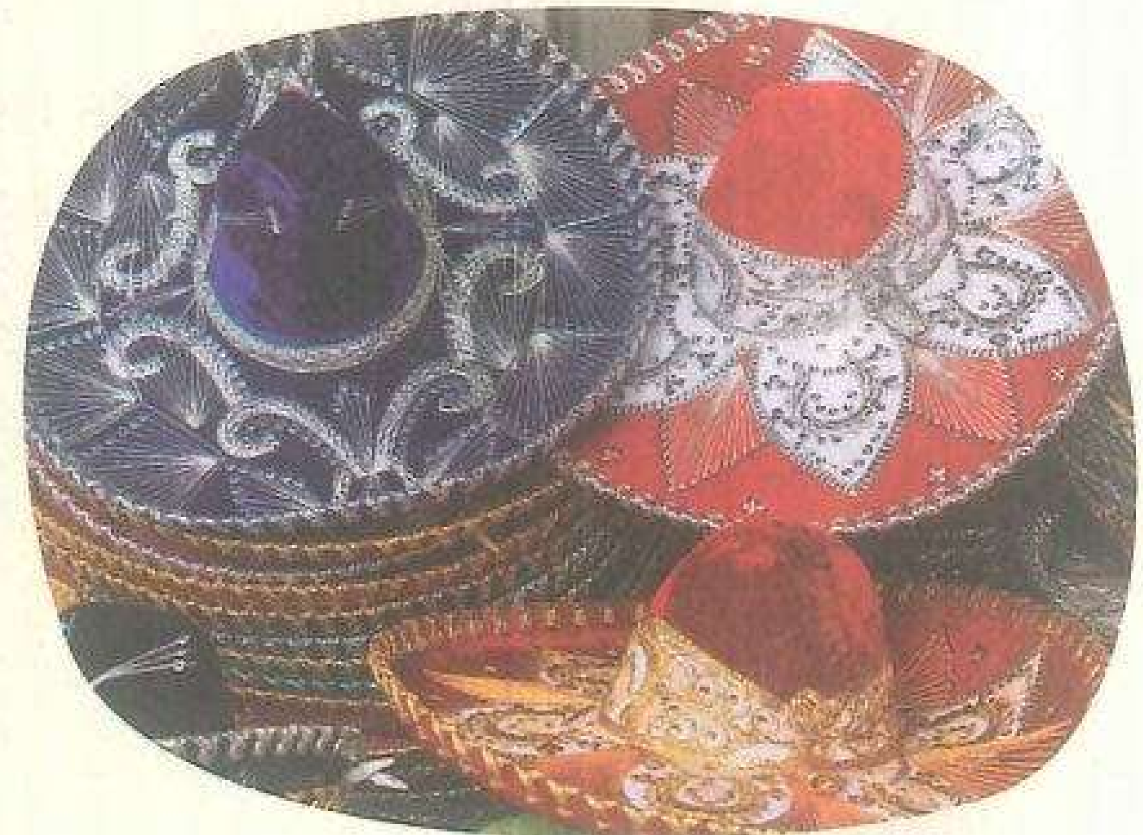
People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero – it's a traditional Mexican hat.

الناس فى المكسيك يرتدون القبعات لحماية وجوههم من الشمس. هذه قبعة (سومبريرو) - إنها قبعة مكسيكية تقليدية.



There are lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.

يوجد العديد من قبعات (سومبريرو). بعضها تحتوى على خطوط، والأخرى ملونة، والبعض منها عليه ذهب وفضة.



Practice



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My bag is made of .... القاهرة – إدارة حدائق القبة – 2024

a) wood b) glass c) leather d) metal

2 At school, boys wear blue ....

a) dresses b) skirts c) trousers d) necklaces

3 Girls in Mexico wear traditional .... dresses.

a) Egyptian b) Mexican c) British d) French

4 The sombrero is a traditional Mexican .... الشرقية – إدارة كفر صقر – 2024

a) hat b) bag c) mat d) cat

5 My school .... is really smart to wear.

a) playground b) uniform c) classroom d) books

6 My shoes are made of .... القاهرة – إدارة هليوبوليس – 2024

a) gold b) leather c) glass d) cotton

7 The girls wear a gray tie with pink ....

a) spotted b) trousers c) striped d) stripes

8 Girls in Mexico wear traditional dresses during ....

a) feasts b) work c) jobs d) classrooms

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

celebrations – faces – dresses – gold – colorful

الدقهلية – إدارة طلخا – 2024

Girls in Mexico are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. They're very ....(1)............ . There are lots of colorful stripes on the ....(2)............ . They wear these dresses during feasts and ....(3)............ . Mexican girls love bright colors. People in Mexico wear hats to protect their ....(4)............ from the sun. It's a traditional Mexican hat.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

بورسعيد – 2024

My school uniform is very special and smart. The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The girls wear a long, dark blue skirt. They wear a pale green T-shirt. It is a short-sleeved cotton one. They don't wear a tie. The boys wear dark blue trousers and a green T-shirt. They have to wear a tie every day. It is striped green and blue. When it's cold, we wear a dark green jacket with pockets.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 My school uniform is special and ....

a) smart b) tight c) small d) big

2 The boys wear dark .... trousers.

a) yellow b) green c) red d) blue

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What do boys wear when it's cold?

....

4 What do the girls wear?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 dress – got – I – a – have – striped. القليوبية – إدارة الخانكة – 2024

....

2 favorite – What's – thing – your – wear – to?

....

3 wearing – These – Mexican – dresses – are – girls. الدقهلية – غرب المنصورة – 2024

....

4 are – There – styles – sombrero – of – different.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The shoemaker made .... (leather, small) shoes. الدقهلية – غرب المنصورة 2024

2 I have a .... (leather, black) bag. الشرقية – إدارة ديرب نجم 2024

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:



"My school uniform"

- When do you wear it? - What do you wear?
- How do you look in your uniform?

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 3 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

T-shirt	تيشرت	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
swimming shorts	شورت سباحة	scarf	وشاح (كوفية)
sweater	قميص صوفى	sneakers	حذاء رياضى
necklace	عقد	pajamas	بيجامة
spotted	منقط	striped	مخطط
suitcase	حقيبة سفر	coat	معطف
galabeya	جلابية	trip	رحلة
comfortable	مريح	stripes	خطوط
excited	متشوق/ متحمس	exciting	مثير/ شيق

Lesson (2)

sleeves	أكمام	pocket	جيوب
belt	حزام	crown	تاج
gloves	قفازات	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
Egyptian clothing	ملابس مصرية	traditional	تقليدى
robe	رداء	popular	شعبى
festival	احتفال	sunburned	مصاب بحروق الشمس
hidden	مخفى	colorful	ملون
information	معلومات	wedding	مهرجان/عيد
costume	زى	cotton	قطن

Lesson (3)

kind	طيب	honest	مخلص
poor	فقير	happy	سعيد
tired	متعب	beautiful	جميل
amazing	مذهل	delicious	لذيذ
new	جديد	elves	أقزام
shoemaker	صانع الأحذية	wife	زوجة
workshop	ورشة	leather	جلد
little	صغير الحجم	surprised	متفاجئ

Lessons (4 & 5)

uniform	زى موحد	short-sleeved	قصير الأكمام
trousers	بنطلون	tie	كرافتة (رابطة عنق)
pale	فاتح	checked	كاروهات (ذو مربعات)
smart	أنيق	vest	سترة (صديرى)
Mexico	المكسيك	sombrero	قبعة مكسيكية
linen	كِتّان	celebrations	احتفالات

Language Focus

Infinitive of purpose

Form

to + infinitive ... .



She went to town **to buy** a dress.



He bought new sneakers **to wear** for playing football.

Unit 3 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

شورت سباحة	....	تيشرت	....
نظارة شمسية	....	حذاء رياضى	....
منقط	....	وشاح (كوفية)	....
بيجامة	....	قميص صوفى	....
عقد	....	مخطط	....
جلابية	....	زى موحد	....

Lesson 2

معلومات	....	قفازات	....
أكمام	....	مخفى	....
بدلة	....	أنماط / أشكال	....
حزام	....	تاج	....
جيوب	....	مهرجان	....
قطن	....	تقليدى	....

Lesson 3

فقير	....	احتفالات	....
صادق/ أمين	....	كافٍ	....
متفاجئ	....	وجبة	....
أصلح	....	صانع أحذية	....
انتظر	....	جلد	....

Lessons 4 & 5

قصير الأكمام	....	ذهب	....
كرافتة (رابطة العنق)	....	جوارب	....
أنيق	....	كاروهات (ذو مربعات)	....
قبعة مكسيكية	....	ملون	....
بنطلون	....	سترة (صديرى)	....
خطوط	....	أعياد	....

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a trip:

- I am traveling to (المكان) ... .
- I am traveling with (أشخاص) ... .
- I am packing (أشياء) because (السبب) ... .
- Mom is packing (أشياء) because (السبب) ... .
- My sister is packing (أشياء) because (السبب) ... .

Our trip to Al Fayoum

I am traveling to Al Fayoum tomorrow. I am traveling with my family. I need to pack our suitcases. I am packing my sneakers because I'll be walking around. Mom is packing her sweater because it can be cool in the evenings. My sister is packing her sunglasses because it will be very sunny.

How to write about your favorite clothes:

- My favorite clothes are (الملابس) ... .
- This is (شكل اللبس) ... .
- It is (صفة) because (السبب) ... .
- It has (خصائص فى اللبس) ... .
- I wear it for (مناسبة خاصة) ... .

My favorite clothes

My favorite clothes are the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular. It is cool because it's made of cotton. It has pockets, but they're hidden. It has long sleeves, so we don't get sunburned. I wear it in Eid festivals.

How to write about your school uniform:

- My school uniform is (صفة) ... .
- Girls wear (اللبس الخاص بالبنات) ... .
- Boys wear (اللبس الخاص بالأولاد) ... .
- Boys have to wear (ملابس إجبارى للأولاد فقط) ... .
- The boys and girls wear/ We all wear (ملابس مشتركة للبنات والأولاد) ... .
- I like my school uniform so much.

My school uniform

My school uniform is very beautiful. Girls wear yellow shirts and blue skirts. Boys wear white shirts and gray trousers. Boys have to wear a dark red tie every day. The boys and girls wear black shoes and white socks. We all wear red sweaters in winter. I like my school uniform so much.

Unit 3 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Circle the correct words:

1 I went to the library borrow/ to borrow a book.

2 Injy used a pen to write/ write her essay.

3 Sherif bought a new suitcase take/ to take on holiday.

4 Malak wears her sunglasses to protect/ protect her eyes.

2 Look and make sentences in the past simple to express purpose:

1 I / go / to my bedroom / sleep

....

2 Nayera / leave / the party / catch / her train

....

3 Adam / call / Younis / ask for help with his project

....

4 Tarek / buy / a racket / play tennis

....

5 My teacher/use/a red pen/correct homework

....

3 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct order:

1 She wore a .... dress. (cotton, green)

2 He had to wear an .... hat. (old, orange)

3 Dad bought me a .... galabeya. (white, new)

4 The shoemaker made .... shoes. (small, leather)

5 I bought a .... jacket for the party. (green, new)

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 3





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. Boys wear a dark .... shirt.
   a) green b) yellow c) red d) blue
2. Boys have to wear a .... every day.
   a) sweater b) tie c) jacket d) bag
3. The girls wear a dark gray ....
   a) shoes b) skirt c) socks d) tie
4. In winter, boys and girls wear a dark red ....
   a) shirt b) skirt c) jacket d) T-shirt



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. Dresses are types of .... الأسماعيلية - إدارة الأسماعيلية - 2024
   a) food b) clothes c) meals d) team
2. People wear sweaters and .... in cold weather. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه - 2024
   a) goggles b) shorts c) coats d) rings
3. She wears a .... around her neck. الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب - 2024
   a) dress b) necklace c) shoes d) skirt
4. She wears a crown on her .... بورسعيد - 2024
   a) leg b) hand c) arm d) head

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

sweaters – trousers – socks – stripes – short-sleeved

دمياط - إدارة دمياط الجديدة 2024

I really liked our school uniform. Everyone wears a ....(1)............ white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue ....(2)............ . We all have to wear white ....(3)............ and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue ....(4)............ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس - 2024

I'm Fares. I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors, too. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned! There are pockets, but they're hidden - you can't see them from the outside. We wear galabeya when we are celebrating Eid, they are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes, there are beautiful patterns on them.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) pockets b) sleeves c) galabeya d) Eid

2 Fares is doing a school project about Egyptian ....

a) sports b) clothing c) food d) teachers

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is galabeya made from?

....

4 When do we wear galabeya?

....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 usually – What – you – wear – do?

....

2 are – My scarfs – made – cotton – from.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 I bought a .... (green, new) jacket. الدقهلية - إدارة وسط المنصورة - 2024

2 Jack .... (sees) a very big giant last night. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط - 2024

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

omar is wearing a coat and scarf الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط - 2024

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Clothes" الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب 2024



galabeya – made from cotton

....

....

....



Assess your progress



< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 3 AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

excited – sneakers – holiday – pack

A : Are you going on a ....?
B : Yes. I am so ....!
A : What will you ....?
B : I will need my ....

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

My favorite clothes are my cotton shirt and linen trousers. They are very comfortable. My new white linen trousers are very beautiful. I bought them last week. I also like the new spotted jacket. It is my favorite because it is comfortable and bright. When I wear that jacket, I usually put on my black tie. They look smart together.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My favorite clothes are my .... shirt and linen trousers.
a) cotton b) linen c) wool d) wood

2 My linen trousers are very ....
a) tight b) pale c) light d) comfortable

3 I usually put on my .... when I wear my jacket.
a) tie b) trousers c) jeans d) socks

B Answer the following questions:

4 Why is the new jacket your favorite? ....

5 When did you buy the new trousers? ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

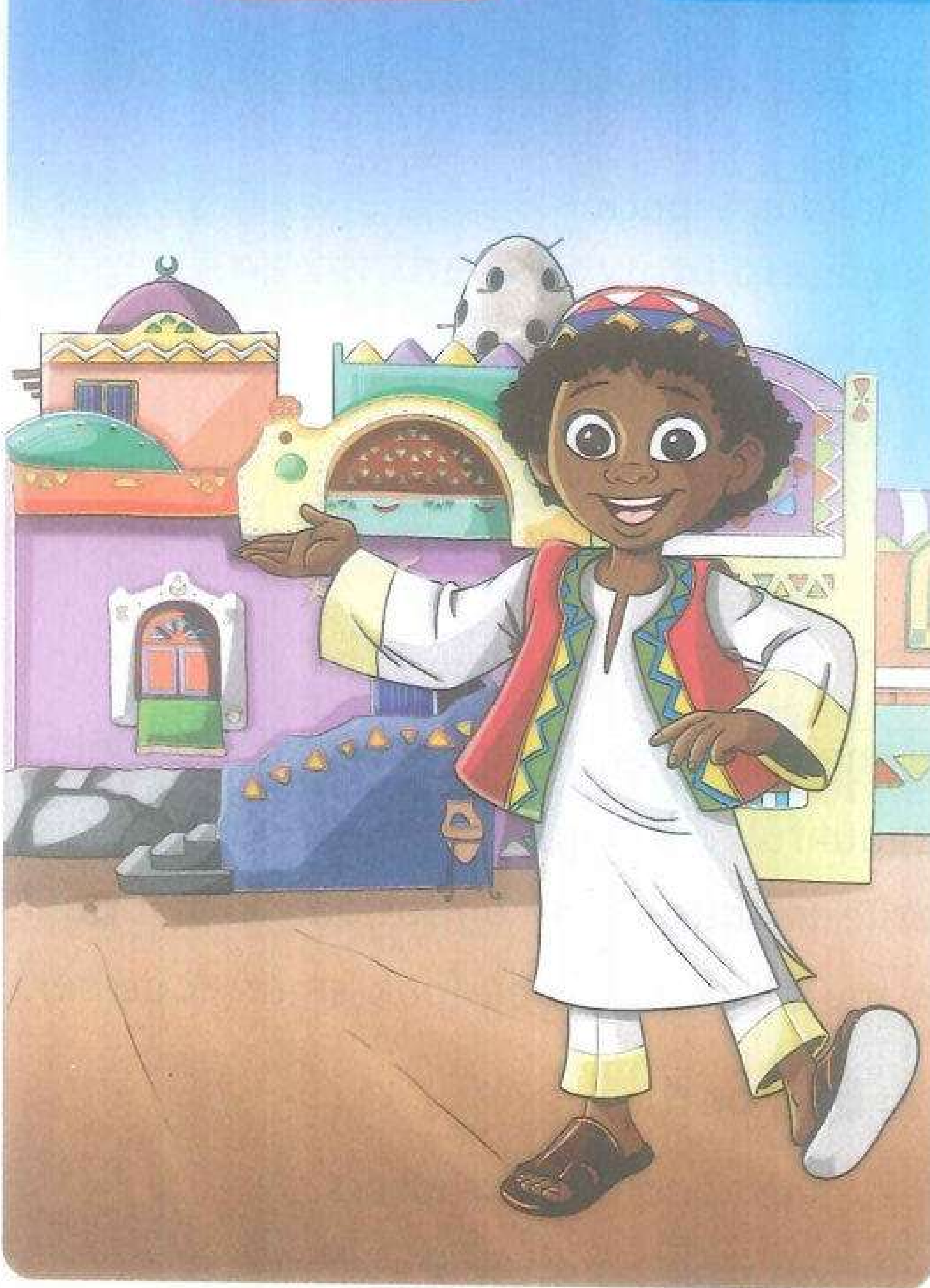
1 Girls in Mexico love bright (food – colors – juice).
2 I wear (sunglasses – gloves – crown) to protect my eyes.
3 Nadia is wearing a (spotted – striped – costume) dress. It has red and black dots all over it.
4 Marwa went to town to (buy – bought – buying) a new dress.
5 Adel (packs – packed – packing) his black trousers yesterday.

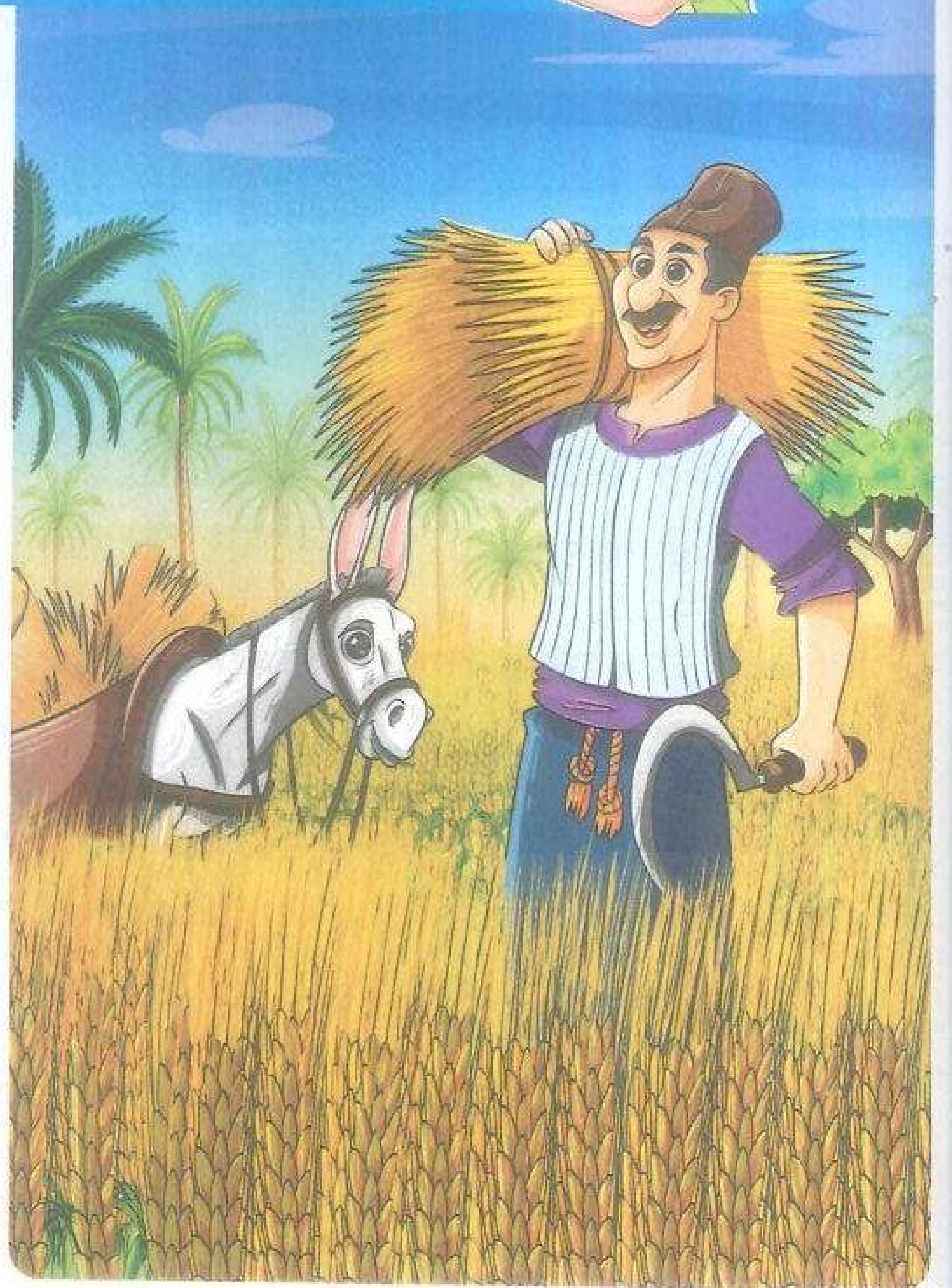
Theme 2

Myself and others

نفسى والآخرون

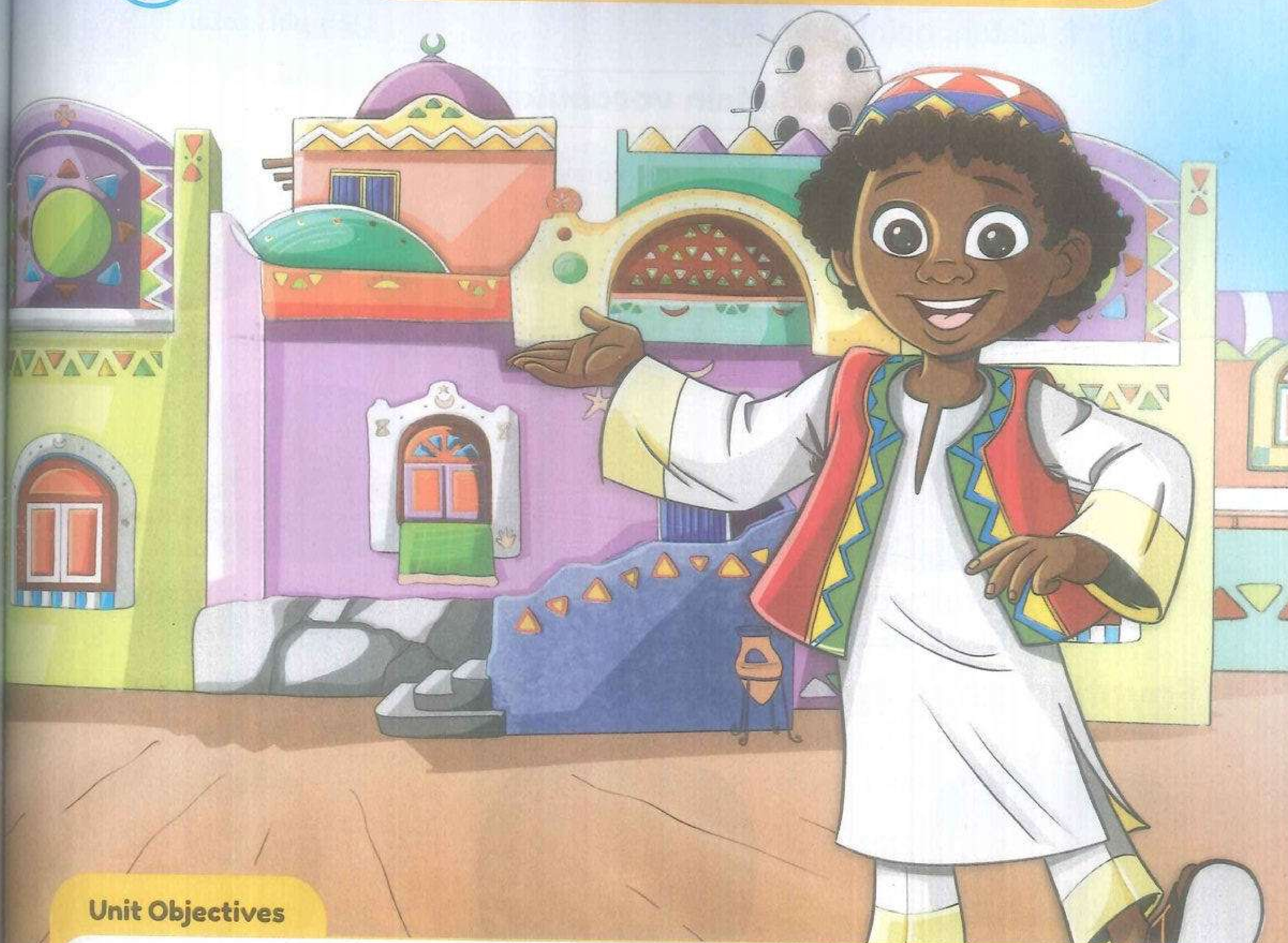






Unit 4 Looking after our world

الاعتناء بعالمنا



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.
  - learn about Elephantine Island.
  - use sentences in the past continuous.
  - learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.
  - learn how to say three consonants together.
  - learn to correct spelling mistakes.
  - write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث ويكتب عن مناظر طبيعية مختلفة.
  - يتعلم عن «جزيرة إلفنتين».
  - يستخدم جملًا فى زمن الماضى المستمر.
  - يتعلم ويتحدث عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.
  - يتعلم كيف ينطق ثلاثة حروف ساكنة معًا.
  - يتعلم أن يصحح الأخطاء الإملائية.
  - يكتب نشرة إعلانية عن السياحة البيئية فى مصر.

Did you know?

- There are lots of amazing natural *chalk landscapes in the White Desert. The rocks are *shaped like chickens, mushrooms, tents, and ice cream cones.

Find out!

- There are lots of unusual places to visit in Egypt, like the Temples of Abu Simbel. The queen and the king are *carved into the mountain. People who live near unusual places can *benefit from tourists, but tourists can sometimes damage historical places.

* chalk	جيرى	* shaped like	على شكل	* carved into	منحوتة فى	* benefit from	يستفيد من



Lesson 1
My visit to Elephantine Island
زيارتى لجزيرة إلفنتين





1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary


mountain
جبل


lake
بحيرة

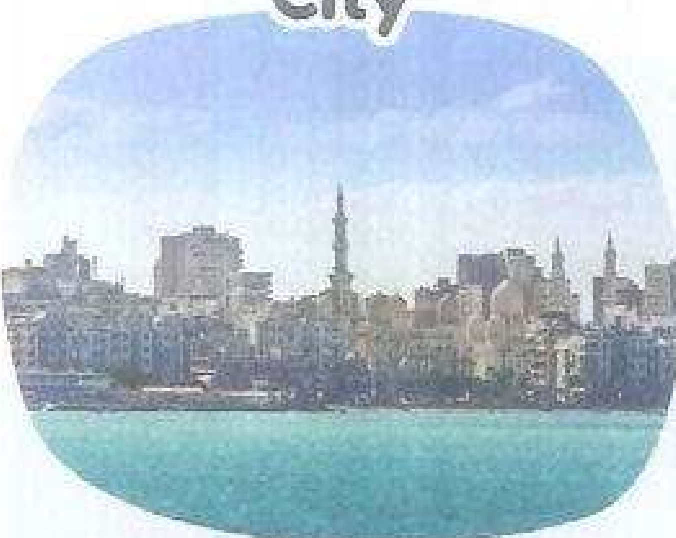

waterfall
شلال

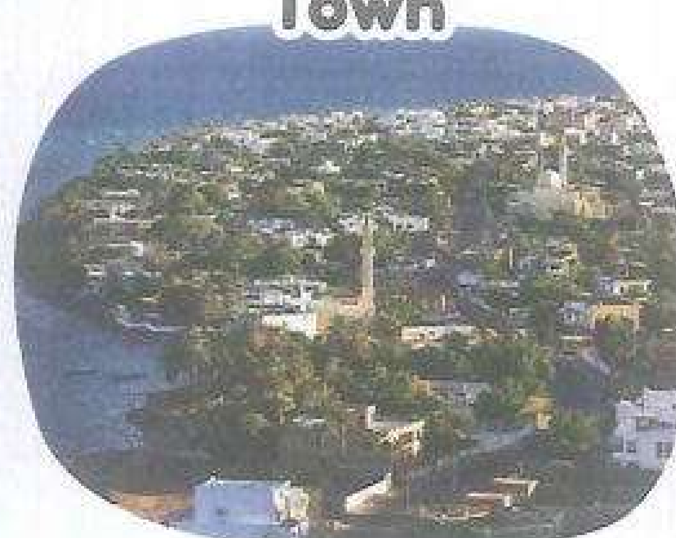

forest
غابة

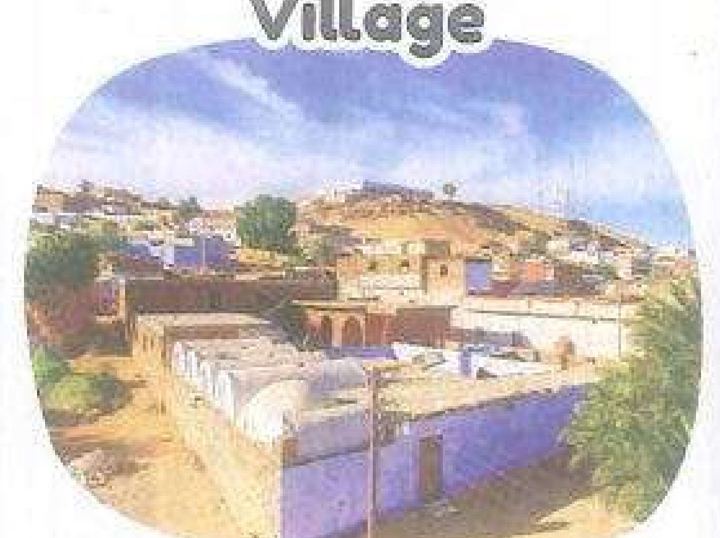

coral reefs
الشعاب المرجانية


island
جزيرة

Egyptian cities, towns, and villages
مدن، بلدات، وقرى مصرية

City

Alexandria
مدينة الإسكندرية

Town

Dahab
دهب

Village

Nubian village
القرية النوبية

Famous tourist places in Egypt
أماكن سياحية شهيرة فى مصر


Aswan Botanical Garden
حديقة أسوان النباتية


Temple of Philae
معبد فيلة


Tombs of the Nobles
مقابر النبلاء



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) فى كلمة (island) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (b) فى كلمة (tomb) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.

Extra vocabulary

postcard	بطاقة بريدية	fantastic (adj.)	رائع	shape	شكل
part	جزء	history	تاريخ	rare (adj.)	نادر
calendar	تقويم	reign	فترة الحكم	Thutmose III	تحتمس الثالث
calm (adj.)	هادئ	traffic	ازدحام مرورى	quiet (adj.)	هادئ
desert	صحراء	sunset	غروب الشمس	particularly	خصوصًا
felucca	فلوكة (قارب صغير)	decorated (adj.)	مزينة	trip	رحلة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
miss	يشتاق	missed	travel	يسافر	traveled
try	يحاول	tried	decorate	يزين	decorated

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
understand	يفهم	understood	leave	يغادر	left

Expressions and Phrases

I'm missing you!	أنا مفتقدك!	there's lots to see	هناك الكثير لتراه
the oldest part of	أقدم جزءًا من	in fact	فى الواقع / فى الحقيقة
full of	ملىء بـ	after that	بعد ذلك
It's not only about	الأمر لا يتعلق فقط بـ ...	go for long walks	المشى لمسافات طويلة
from the reign of ...	من فترة حكم (اسم الحاكم) ...	brightly decorated houses	منازل مزينة بألوان زاهية
through the desert	عبر الصحراء	Can't wait to see you soon!	لا أطيق (أتحمل) الانتظار لرؤيتك قريبًا!

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. جزيرة إلفنتين هى أقدم مناطق أسوان.
* We found a very rare calendar. وجدنا تقويمًا نادرًا جدًا.
* There's no traffic, so it's very quiet. لا يوجد ازدحام مرورى لذا فالمكان هادئ جدًا.
* The sunsets are fantastic from a felucca. غروب الشمس رائع من الفلوكة.
* They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. لديهم منازل جميلة مزينة بألوان زاهية.

Take care!

بعض الكلمات لها نفس النطق ولكن تختلف فى التهجئة والمعنى.

e.g. quiet هادئ – quite إلى حد ما

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 We could climb up the high (lake – mountain – forest – island) yesterday.
2 In a (coral reef – waterfall – desert – forest), you can see a lot of trees.
3 There are different shapes and colors of (coral reefs – forests – waterfalls – mountains) in the Red Sea.
4 Alexandria is a (village – city – town – country).



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Where did Nagwa go? أين ذهبت نجوى؟

Hi Dalia!
How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. – we think it's the shape!

أهلاً داليا!
كيف حالك؟ أنا أشتاق لكِ! أنا على جزيرة إلفنتين وهى المكان الأكثر روعة! إنها فى أسوان وهناك الكثير لرؤيته. سافرت بالقارب إلى الجزيرة مع أصدقائى. كنا نحاول فهم اسم «إلفنتين» نحن نعتقد أنه شكل الجزيرة!

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. In fact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III.

جزيرة إلفنتين هى أقدم جزء فى أسوان. فى الواقع، الجزيرة كلها مليئة بالتاريخ. بعد ذلك، ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان. وكنا ننظر لكل الأشياء القديمة على الجزيرة عندما عثرنا على تقويم نادر جدًّا من فترة حكم تحتمس الثالث.

But it's not only about history – it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long walks. There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. We were walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning.
They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave.
Can't wait to see you soon!
Nagwa

لكن الأمر لا يتعلق فقط بالتاريخ - لكنه مكان جميل وهادئ. لا يوجد ازدحام مرورى، ولذا فهو هادئ جدًّا، والهواء نقى. يمكننا المشى لمسافات طويلة. لا توجد غابات ولكن يوجد الكثير من الأشجار، لذلك فهى خضراء إلى حد ما. غروب الشمس رائع, خاصة من الفلوكة. هذا الصباح كنا نسير فى قرية من القرى النوبية. فهى تحتوى على منازل جميلة مزينة بألوان مشرقة. تناولنا الغداء هناك ونحن ننظر إلى النيل. غدًا آخر صباح لنا لذلك سنسير إلى مقابر النبلاء عبر الصحراء. سوف أكون حزينة جدًّا للمغادرة.
لا أطيق الانتظار لرؤيتك قريبًا!
نجوى



"Elephantine Island" might have received its name from the shape of the rounded rocks along the banks of the island, which look like elephants.

ربما تلقت جزيرة إلفنتين اسمها من شكل الصخور المستديرة على طول ضفاف الجزيرة، والتى تشبه الأفيال.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Elephantine Island is in (Dahab – Alexandria – Aswan – Cairo).
2 Elephantine Island is full of (history – flowers – forests – waterfalls).
3 The sunsets are very fantastic from a (bike – car – bus – felucca).

Practice



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Elephantine Island is the .... part of Aswan.
a) newest b) farthest c) smallest d) oldest

2 The island is full of ....
a) rivers b) people c) history d) kings

3 There is a rare .... on the island.
a) stone b) calendar c) museum d) temple

4 The island is also a beautiful, ... place.
a) noisy b) calm c) boring d) far

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I was traveling by boat to the .... الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024
a) street b) road c) desert d) island

2 Elephantine .... is in Aswan. الشرقية - الصالحية الجديدة 2024
a) River b) Island c) Lake d) Oasis

3 That bird is very .... in our country. There aren't many of it.
a) exciting b) rare c) fantastic d) beautiful

4 There is no ...., so the island is very quiet. الشرقية - إدارة أبو حماد 2024
a) farms b) traffic c) rivers d) buildings

5 There are lots of.................................., so the place is quite green.
a) cars b) trees c) birds d) people

6 They enjoyed the .... at 6 pm in Luxor. الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024
a) sunset b) sunrise c) sunburn d) sunny

7 .... is a town.
a) Cairo b) Dahab c) Aswan d) Egypt

8 This calendar is from the .... of Thutmose III. الشرقية - إدارة القنايات 2024
a) home b) reign c) class d) island

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

family – oldest – rare – Island – lake

الشرقية - إدارة العاشر 2024

I went to Aswan with my ....(1)............... last week. We traveled there by train. We visited the Elephantine ....(2)........... . We went by boat. It is the ....(3)........... part of Aswan. We found a very ....(4)........... calendar.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Eman visited Elephantine Island last month. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is full of history and amazing sights. You can visit the Aswan Museum. There is a rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III. It's also a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, and it's very quiet. There aren't any forests there, but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. Amira says it's better to go there in the winter because it can get really hot in the summer.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The word "rare" means ....

a) a lot b) many c) much d) very few

2 There are a lot of .... on the island.

a) forests b) trees c) traffic d) corals

B Answer the following questions:

3 When did Eman visit the Elephantine Island?

....

4 Why is it better to go there in the winter?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 am – I – Island – Elephantine – on. الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق 2024

....

2 were – the island – We – to – traveling – by – boat. الدقهلية - ميت غمر 2024

....

3 are – The – from – fantastic – a felucca – sunsets.

....

4 a – Island – place – fantastic – Elephantine – is.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 We went to the aswan museum.

....

2 where did Nagwa go

....



Lesson 2
What were you doing?
ماذا كنت تفعل؟



Language Focus

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

We use the past continuous tense for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتحدث عن شيء حدث واستمر لفترة من الوقت فى الماضى.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات

I/ He / She / It	was	(inf.) + ing ....
You / We / They	were	

e.g. She was cooking yesterday at 6 o'clock.
We were playing football yesterday at 2 o'clock.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى

I / He / She / It	was not (wasn't)	(inf.) + ing ....
You / We / They	were not (weren't)	

e.g. Judy wasn't sleeping yesterday at 8 pm.
The tigers weren't drinking water yesterday morning.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال	Was	I / he / she / it	(inf.) + ing .... ?
	Were	you / we / they	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject	was/were.
	No,		wasn't/weren't.

e.g. A: Was Amira writing in her book? B: Yes, she was.
A: Were the boys eating lunch? B: No, they weren't.



تتحول (Were you) فى السؤال إلى (I was / We were) فى الإجابة.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

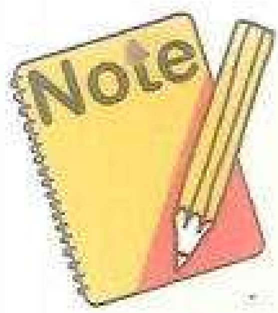
Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	was	I / he / she / it	(inf.) + ing .... ?
	were	you / we / they	

e.g. A: What was the girl doing at 6 am yesterday?
B: She was having breakfast.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

all (day / morning / evening / night / yesterday)
at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock / am / pm / yesterday)

e.g. The children were playing football all morning yesterday.
Ali was studying Arabic at 7 pm yesterday.



انتبه كيف تضيف (ing) للفعل:

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) صامت يسبقه حرف ساكن، فإننا نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

make → making　　take → taking

٢. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، فإننا نضاعف الحرف الأخير عند إضافة الـ (ing):

swim → swimming　　shop → shopping

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 They (are – were – is – was) studying English yesterday at 10 am.
2 He (played – was playing – are playing – is playing) at 3 pm yesterday.
3 What were the children (do – does – doing – did) at 8 am yesterday?
4 Was (he – they – you – we) having a great time?
5 I (were – is – was – are) traveling by boat to the island.
6 I (slept – was sleeping – sleep – sleeps) at 6 am yesterday.
7 A: (Does – Was – Has – Is) she making fatta? B: Yes, she was.
8 Were they (swimming – swim – swims – swam) in the sea?
9 A: Were you studying English? B: No, we (were – are – do – weren't).
10 (Was – Were – Do – Have) you listening to music?

Practice



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Sara was studying .... at 10 yesterday.

a) math b) English c) science d) computer

2 They were having .... at 8 in the morning.

a) school b) lunch c) dinner d) breakfast

3 They were .... the radio yesterday evening.

a) watching b) swimming c) making d) listening to

4 The .... were swimming in the lake.

a) cat b) fish c) fox d) tiger

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sleeping – drinking – walking – swimming – studying

I'm Adam. I was at the zoo yesterday at 10 o'clock. The fox was ....(1).......... under a tree. The fish were ....(2).......... in the lake. The tiger was ....(3).......... water. The cat wasn't running. It was sitting. The people were ....(4).......... around. I was watching everyone. I was having a great time.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 having – We – great – a – time – were.

....

2 6 pm – What – doing – at – you – were?

....

3 they – lake – in – Were – a – swimming?

....

4 sleeping – at – 8 pm – He – yesterday – wasn't.

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 The tiger was .... (drink) water.

2 What .... (were) he doing at 5 pm yesterday? الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس 2024

3 What were you .... (do) last night? الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024

4 .... (you were) making fatta at 4 o'clock yesterday?

5 A: Was she watching TV? B: Yes, she .... (wasn't).

6 .... (He) were having a good time.

7 Was the cat .... (run)?

8 She was studying English at 10 pm .... (today).

9 What .... (are) the children doing at 5 o'clock yesterday? الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024

10 They .... (is) sleeping at 10 yesterday. الشرقية - إدارة صان الحجر 2024

11 Were you .... (make) a cake? الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2024

12 .... (Are) they reading at 2 pm yesterday? الشرقية - إدارة الصالحية الجديدة 2024

13 I .... (am) studying from 6 to 8 yesterday. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024

14 He was .... (travel) to Cairo yesterday evening. الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر 2024

15 What .... (is) she cooking at 3 o'clock yesterday? الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 i was studying english.

....

2 What was ahmed doing at 3 pm yesterday الشرقية - إدارة القنايات 2024

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"What were you doing?"

مجاب عنه آخر الكتاب صفحة 308

Yesterday at 6 am, ... – I was having ... – yesterday at 10 pm

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





A ECO-TOURISM السياحة البيئية



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	carbon dioxide	ثانى أكسيد الكربون	environment	البيئة
eco-tourists	السياح البيئيين	pollution	تلوث	hotel	فندق
wildlife	حياة برية	coral reefs	شعب مرجانية	normal tourism	السياحة العادية

Extra vocabulary

tour guide	مرشد سياحى	Hurghada	الغردقة	exciting (adj.)	شيق - ممتع
local people	السكان المحليون	local (adj.)	محلى	project	مشروع
culture	ثقافة	plane journeys	رحلات طيران	natural (adj.)	طبيعى
historical (adj.)	تاريخى	monuments	آثار تاريخية	comfortable (adj.)	مريح
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو	eco-village	قرية بيئية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
cause	يسبب	caused	travel	يسافر	traveled
stay	يبقى / يمكث	stayed	preserve	يحافظ على	preserved
create	ينتج	created	damage	يدمر	damaged
support	يدعم / يساعد	supported	introduce	يقدم	introduced

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
tell	يخبر	told	pay	يدفع	paid
come	يأتى	came	dive	يغطس	dove

Expressions and Phrases

Thank you for	شكرا على	look after	يعتنى بـ	because of	بسبب
on foot	سيراً على الأقدام	I see.	أفهمك	learn about	يتعلم عن
Of course.	بالطبع	That sounds very good.	هذا يبدو جيدا جدا.	give jobs	توفر فرص العمل



Definitions

Eco-	متعلق بالبيئة	means relating to the environment تعنى الارتباط بالبيئة e.g. eco-tourism
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people السياحة التى تهتم بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.



Listening script page 64 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Presenter: Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada. Tell us about eco-tourism, please. What is it?

أهلًا شريف. نشكرك على مجيئك للتحدث إلينا. شريف مرشد سياحى فى الغردقة. أخبرنا عن السياحة البيئية من فضلك، ما هى؟



Sherif: Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

أهلا داليا. السياحة البيئية ممتعة جدًّا. هى ذلك النوع من السياحة الذى يهتم بالبيئة ويساعد السكان المحليين.



Presenter: How does it help the environment and people?

كيف تساعد البيئة والناس؟



Sherif: Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.

السياح البيئيون لا يحبون السفر بالطائرة بسبب التلوث الذى تسببه الطائرات. هم يسافرون بالقطار، سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.



Presenter: I see. Where do they stay?

أفهم ذلك. أين يمكثون؟



Sherif: They don't like big hotels. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

هم لا يفضلون الفنادق الكبيرة. يمكثون فى الفنادق الصغيرة المحلية أو يدفعون مقابل البقاء فى منازل السكان.



Presenter: What do they do when they travel?

ماذا يفعلون عندما يسافرون؟



Sherif: They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

يحبون أن يتعلموا عن مشروعات الحياة البيئية والثقافة المحلية.



Presenter: Can you give me an example?

هل يمكنك أن تعطنى مثالًا؟



Sherif

Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive and how they can be with the animals.

بالطبع. هنا فى مصر، لدينا بعض المشاريع الجيدة فى منطقة البحر الأحمر لحماية الشعاب المرجانية والحيوانات البحرية. يأتى السياح إلى البحر الأحمر ويخبرهم المرشدون أين يمكنهم الغطس وكيف يمكنهم أن يكونوا مع الحيوانات.



Presenter

That sounds very good! Thank you for your time, Sherif.

يبدو هذا جيدًا جدًّا. شكرا على وقتك يا شريف.



A tourist diving in the Red Sea near a coral reef

سائح يغوص فى البحر الأحمر بالقرب من الشعاب المرجانية



Siwa Oasis Tourism UNESCO Eco Village

واحة سيوة للسياحة والقرية البيئية التابعة لليونسكو



Important sentences جمل هامة

* Eco-tourism looks after the environment and helps local people.

السياحة البيئية تهتم بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.

* Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution that planes cause.

لا يحب السياح البيئيون السفر بالطائرة بسبب التلوث الذى تسببه الطائرات.

* Eco-tourists stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

يقيم السياح البيئيون فى فنادق محلية صغيرة أو يدفعون مقابل الإقامة فى منازل الناس.

* Eco-tourists like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

يحب السياح البيئيون التعرف على مشاريع الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.

* Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the coral reefs.

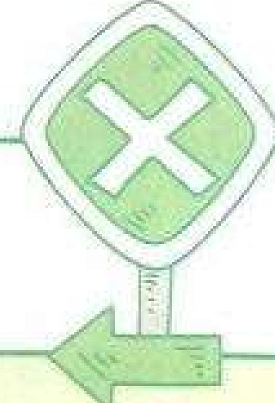
هنا فى مصر، لدينا بعض المشروعات الرائعة جدًا للعناية بالشعاب المرجانية.



3. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

TOURISM السياحة





Good things about tourism
أشياء جيدة عن السياحة

1 It gives jobs for local people.
توفر فرص عمل للسكان المحليين.

2 It helps people learn about new cultures.
تساعد الناس فى تعلم ثقافات جديدة.

Bad things about tourism
أشياء سيئة عن السياحة

1 It creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.
تنتج الكثير من غاز ثانى أكسيد الكربون من رحلات الطيران.

2 It damages the natural environment.
تدمر البيئة الطبيعية.

3 It damages historical places or monuments.
تدمر الأماكن التاريخية والمعالم الأثرية.

ECO-TOURISM السياحة البيئية

Pros
إيجابيات

1 It helps the environment.
تساعد البيئة.

2 It's unusual and exciting.
أنها غير تقليدية وشيقة.

3 It's educational.
أنها تعليمية.

4 It supports local businesses.
تدعم المشروعات المحلية.

Cons
سلبيات

1 It's not as comfortable as normal tourism.
ليست مريحة مثل السياحة التقليدية.

2 There are limited places you can reach without taking a plane.
هناك أماكن محدودة يمكنك الوصول إليها دون ركوب الطائرة.

3 It's less common and not as easy to find as normal tourism.
أنها أقل انتشاراً وليس من السهل العثور عليها مثل السياحة التقليدية .

4 It's sometimes more expensive.
فى بعض الأحيان تكون أكثر تكلفة.

B Pronunciation



4. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



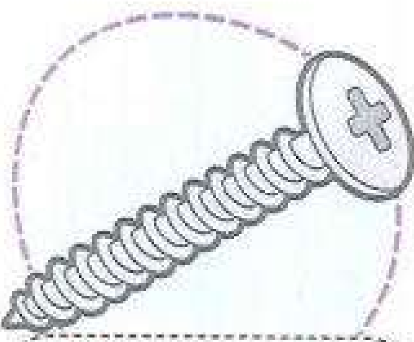
Three-consonant blends مجموعات من ثلاثة حروف ساكنة

scr /skr/

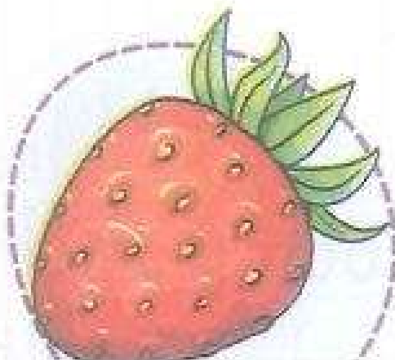

scream يصرخ

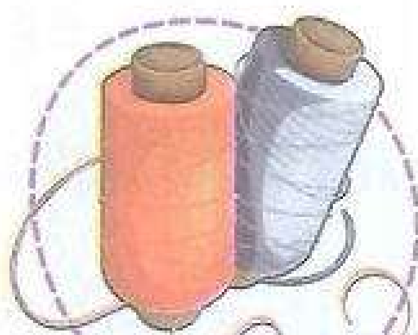

screen شاشة


scratch يخدش


screw مسمار

str /str/


strawberry فراولة


string خيط


street شارع


strong قوى

thr /θr/


throne عرش


throat حلق


throw يرمى


three ثلاثة


through عبر / خلال

The king sat on his throne eating strawberries on a string. He was scratching his throat. He heard a scream. A strong man came to help.

جلس الملك على عرشه يأكل الفراولة على الخيط. كان يحك حلقه. سمع صرخة. جاء رجل قوى للمساعدة.



Words that can be misspelled الكلمات التى يمكن أن تكون بها أخطاء إملائية

✓	✗	
milk	(milc)	لبن
chocolate	(chokolate)	شوكولاتة
ice skating	(ise skating)	تزلج على الجليد
lake	(lakke)	بحيرة
pearls	(perls)	لؤلؤ
sneakers	(sneekers)	حذاء رياضى



Practice Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Sherif is a ………………………………… .
a) teacher b) doctor c) tour guide d) builder

2 Tourism gives ………………………………… for local people.
a) clothes b) jobs c) presents d) food

3 Tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from …………………… journeys.
a) bus b) taxi c) plane d) boat

4 Tourism damages historical places or ………………………………… .
a) environment b) people c) monuments d) projects

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 "Eco" means relating to the ………………………………… . الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024
a) environment b) school c) culture d) home

2 Eco-tourism looks ………………………………… the environment. الدقهلية - ديرب نجم 2024
a) up b) at c) for d) after

3 ………………………………… don't travel by planes, they travel by bikes or on foot.
a) Local people b) Tour guides c) Eco-tourists d) Coral reefs

4 In Egypt, we have some nice projects looking after ……………………… reefs. الشرقية - بلبيس 2024
a) seeds b) weeds c) leaves d) coral

5 Eco-tourism isn't as ……………………… as normal tourism.
a) good b) comfortable c) expensive d) exciting

6 Tourism ………………………………… too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.
a) damages b) creates c) stays d) looks

7 The ……………………… tell the tourists where they can dive. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة 2024-
a) vets b) engineers c) teachers d) guides

8 Plane journeys can cause ………………………………… .
a) environment b) pollution c) wildlife d) project

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wildlife – pollution – hotels – coral – huts

Eco-tourism looks after the environment and helps local people. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the …………(1)………… that planes cause. They stay in small, local …………(2)………… or pay to stay in people's houses. They like to learn about local …………(3)………… projects and local culture. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the …………(4)………… reefs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:
الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة -2024

Tourism is very important to a lot of countries. On the one hand, it gives jobs to local people. It helps tourists learn about new cultures. On the other hand, it can damage the environment. Plane journeys cause a lot of pollution because they create too much carbon dioxide. Tourism can damage the natural environment and historical places. People should try eco-tourism. It looks after wildlife, monuments, and local people.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Plane journeys cause a lot of ....

a) pollution b) population c) natural d) station

2 Tourism gives local people ....

a) food b) drinks c) clothes d) jobs

B Answer the following questions:

3 What can tourism damage?

....

4 Why should people try eco-tourism?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 like – local – Tourists – learn – to – about – culture. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة -2024

....

2 reefs – near – like to – dive – Eco-tourists – coral. الجيزة - إدارة 6 أكتوبر -2024

....

3 the – looks – Eco-tourism – after – environment.

....

4 places – damages – or – historical – Tourism – monuments.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 How does eco-tourism help egypt

....

2 Tourists dive in the red Sea near the coral reefs الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة -2024

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

eco-resort	منتجع بيئى	excellent (adj.)	ممتاز	fantastic (adj.)	رائع
wildlife	الحياة البرية	fascinating (adj.)	جذاب / ساحر	hiking	جولة على الأقدام (التنزه)
eco-lodges	مساكن بيئية	eco-holiday	إجازة بيئية	hut	كوخ (منزل صغير)

Extra vocabulary

Taba	طابا	eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية
valley	وادى	mountain	جبل
like	مثل	Nubian ibex	الوعل النوبى
rare (adj.)	نادر	friendly (adj.)	ودود
environment	بيئة	history	تاريخ
Nawamis	قرية نواميس	village	قرية
round (adj.)	دائرى الشكل	buildings	مبانى
camps	معسكرات	activities	أنشطة
structure	بناء / هيكل	flyer	نشرة إعلانية
main heading	عنوان رئيسى	sub heading	عنوان فرعى
perfect (adj.)	ممتاز/ مثالى	wonderful (adj.)	رائع
local culture	الثقافة المحلية	eco-village	قرية بيئية
comfortable (adj.)	مريح	cool (adj.)	رائع
eco-destination	وجهة بيئية	eco-friendly (adj.)	صديق للبيئة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
camp	يخيم	camped	advertise	يعلن عن	advertised
dive	يغطس	dived	stay	يبقى	stayed

Expressions and Phrases

good for	جيد لـ	example of	مثال على
works well	تعمل جيدًا	have a meal with	يتناول وجبة مع
there is lots in	يوجد الكثير فى	for a great holiday	لإجازة رائعة
their way of life	طريقة معيشتهم	6,000-year-old	عمرها ٦٠٠٠ سنة
talk to them about	تكلم معهم عن	take part in	يشارك فى



Definitions

An eco-destination:

is a place you are going to which is good for the environment. This is because people there look after the environment.

الوجهة البيئية: هى المكان الذى ستذهب إليه وهو مفيد للبيئة. هذا لأن الناس هناك يعتنون بالبيئة.



Important sentences جمل هامة

* Taba is an excellent example of eco-tourism in Egypt. طابا مثال ممتاز للسياحة البيئية فى مصر.
* The local people are very friendly. السكان المحليون ودودون للغاية.
* There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings.
هناك النواميس، قرية ذات مبانٍ مستديرة قديمة جدًّا.
* Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping.
يمكن للسياح البيئيين فى طابا الاستمتاع بالغوص والمشى لمسافات طويلة والتخييم.
* Eco-tourists can stay in camps and eco-lodges. يمكن للسياح البيئيين الإقامة فى المعسكرات والمساكن البيئية.

REMEMBER

eco — بيئى
means relating to the environment — يعنى الارتباط بالبيئة

e.g.

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	eco-lodge	مسكن بيئى
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	eco-resort	منتجع بيئى
eco-village	قرية بيئية	eco-tourist	السائح البيئى
eco-destination	وجهة بيئية		



Writing

Taba: My favorite eco-resort طابا: المنتجع البيئى المفضل لدى



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Why is Taba good for eco-tourism? لماذا تعتبر طابا جيدة للسياحة البيئية؟

Eco-tourism in Egypt السياحة البيئية فى مصر



Camp in Sinai, Egypt
معسكر فى سيناء، مصر

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.

طابا هى مثال ممتاز لجزء من مصر حيث السياحة البيئية تعمل بشكل جيد. هناك يمكنك أن تجد الوديان، الجبال، الصحراء والبحر.



Nawamis Structure Sinai, Egypt
هيكل النواميس - سيناء، مصر

You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex, and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment.

يمكنك أن تجد حياة برية رائعة فى طابا، مثل: الوعل النوبى والطيور النادرة. هذا جيد جدًا للسياح البيئيين لأنه يمكنهم الذهاب والاستمتاع بالبيئة.

The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

السكان المحليون ودودين جدًا. لذلك يمكن للسياح البيئيين تناول وجبة معهم أو التحدث معهم عن ثقافتهم.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating!

إذا كنت تحب التاريخ، فهناك الكثير فى طابا. هناك النواميس، قرية ذات مبان دائرية قديمة جدًا! إنها مذهلة!

Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

فى طابا يمكن للسياح البيئيين الاستمتاع بالغوص، التنزه، والتخييم. يمكنهم البقاء فى المخيمات والمساكن البيئية. يمكنك أن تجد كل شىء فى طابا لقضاء عطلة رائعة!



Project



3. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

A flyer advertising the eco-holiday in Taba نشرة إعلانية عن عطلة بيئية فى طابا

Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

سياحة بيئية مثالية فى مصر



Meet the local people

Talk to them about their way of life.

قابل السكان المحليين

تحدث معهم عن أسلوب حياتهم.



Enjoy the wildlife

Come and see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! We have wonderful fish, birds, and animals.

استمتع بالحياة البرية

تعال وشاهد الحياة البرية الأكثر روعة فى مصر! لدينا أسماك وطيور وحيوانات رائعة.



Enjoy the local culture

Visit Nawamis, a 6,000-year-old village.

استمتع بالثقافة المحلية

قم بزيارة قرية النواميس التى يبلغ عمرها ٦٠٠٠ عام.

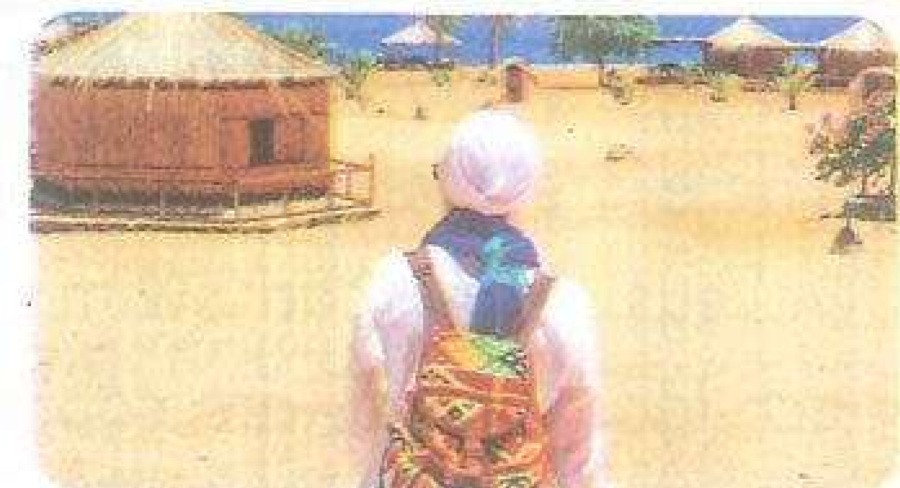


Stay in our comfortable huts

They are cool and eco-friendly.

ابق فى أكواخنا المريحة

إنها رائعة وصديقة للبيئة.



Take part in exciting activities

You can hike, swim, and dive.

شارك فى الأنشطة المثيرة

يمكنك التنزه والسباحة والغوص.



Practice Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Eco-tourists in Taba can stay in camps and .... الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا 2024
a) wildlife b) eco-lodges c) environment d) holiday

2 The local people in Taba are very ....
a) noisy b) active c) friendly d) lazy

3 There's Nawamis, a village of...................................., very old buildings.
a) triangular b) rectangular c) round d) square

4 .... helps people learn about new cultures. الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس 2024
a) Pollution b) Tourism c) Wildlife d) Doctor

5 I saw wildlife animals in Taba like the .... and rare birds.
a) Nubian ibex b) cat c) dog d) elephant

6 .... enjoy hiking and camping.
a) Local people b) Eco-tourists c) Tour guides d) Wildlife

7 There are many coral .... in the Red Sea. الشرقية - إدارة العاشر 2024
a) loaves b) leaves c) reefs d) seeds

8 You can .... part in exciting activities. الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا 2024
a) bake b) make c) take d) eat

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

birds – lodges – wildlife – culture – village

You can have perfect eco-tourism in Egypt. You can enjoy the local ....(1)............ and visit Nawamis. It is a 6,000-year-old ....(2)............ . You can meet the local people and talk to them about their way of life. Come and see the most fantastic ....(3)............ in Egypt. We have wonderful fish, ...(4)............, and animals.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. There are many activities to do in Taba. Tourists can hike in the mountains and valleys. They can swim and dive in the sea. They can also camp and stay in eco-lodges; they are cool and eco-friendly. The wildlife is fantastic in Taba.
There is the Nubian ibex and many rare birds that live there. If you like history, visit the Nawamis. It is a village of round, very old buildings.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... in Taba.
a) eco-tourism b) tourism c) running d) eco-lodges

2 Tourists can .... in the mountains and valleys.
a) dive b) swim c) hike d) play

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is Nawamis?

....

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 and – Eco-lodges – are – eco-friendly – cool.

....

2 enjoy – Taba – Tourists – environment – in – the.

....

3 can – in – Tourists – stay – eco-lodges. الإسكندرية - الإبراهيمية 2024

....

4 is – a historical – Nawamis – in – village – Taba.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 You can hike camp, swim, and dive

....

2 Why is taba good for eco-tourism

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"My favorite eco-resort"



Where:	Taba, Egypt
Wildlife:	Nubian ibex, rare birds
Activities for eco-tourists:	diving, hiking, and camping

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 4 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة

Lesson (1)

mountain	جبل	lake	بحيرة
waterfall	شلال	forest	غابة
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	island	جزيرة
postcard	بطاقة بريدية	fantastic	رائع
shape	شكل	history	تاريخ
rare	نادر	calendar	تقويم
reign	فترة الحكم	museum	متحف
traffic	ازدحام مرورى	sunset	غروب الشمس
felucca	فلوكة (قارب صغير)	decorated	مزينة

Lesson (3)

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	tourism	السياحة
local people	السكان المحليون	eco-tourists	السياح البيئين
wildlife	الحياة البرية	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
tour guide	مرشد سياحى	environment	البيئة
pollution	التلوث	hotel	فندق
culture	ثقافة	plane journeys	رحلات طيران
monuments	آثار تاريخية	comfortable	مريح
screw	مسمار	scratch	يخدش
string	خيط	throne	عرش
scream	يصرخ	throat	حلق
through	عبر / خلال	throw	يرمى

Lessons (4&5)

eco-resort	منتجع سياحى	excellent	ممتاز	fascinating	جذاب / ساحر
hiking	جولة على الأقدام (التنزه)	eco-lodges	مساكن بيئية	hut	كوخ (منزل صغير)
camps	معسكرات	structure	بناء (هيكل)	perfect	ممتاز / مثالى
local culture	الثقافة المحلية	eco-village	قرية بيئية	eco-destination	وجهة بيئية

Language Focus

The Past Continuous Tense

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات

I/ He / She / It	was	(inf.) + ing ....
You / We / They	were	

e.g. She was cooking yesterday at 6 o'clock.
We were playing football yesterday at 2 o'clock.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى

I / He / She / It	was not (wasn't)	(inf.) + ing ....
You / We / They	were not (weren't)	

e.g. Judy wasn't sleeping yesterday at 8 pm.
The tigers weren't drinking water yesterday morning.

Yes/No questions: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال	Was	I / he / she / it	(inf.) + ing ..... ?
	Were	you / we / they	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	was/were.
	No,		wasn't/weren't.

e.g. A: Was Amira writing in her book?
B: Yes, she was.
A: Were the boys eating lunch?
B: No, they weren't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question word كلمة الاستفهام	was	I / he / she / it	(inf.) + ing ..... ?
	were	you / we / they	

e.g. A: What was the girl doing at 6 am yesterday?
B: She was having breakfast.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

all (day / morning / evening / night / yesterday)

at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock / am / pm / yesterday)

Unit 4 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

شلال		جبل	....
غابة		بحيرة	....
نادر		شعاب مرجانية	....
هادئ		جزيرة	....
القرية النوبية		مقابر النبلاء	....

Lesson 3

السياحة البيئية	....	فندق	....
مريح	....	مسمار	....
السكان المحليون	....	يخدش	....
السياح البيئيين	....	شاشة	....
حياة برية	....	يصرخ	....
شعاب مرجانية	....	خيط	....
مرشد سياحى	....	عرش	....
البيئة	....	يرمى	....
التلوث	....	تاريخى	....

Lessons 4 & 5

منتجع بيئى	....	مساكن بيئية	....
ممتاز	....	إجازة بيئية	....
معسكرات	....	كوخ	....
جذاب / ساحر	....	وادى	....
جولة على الأقدام	....	ودود	....

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a trip to a city:

- I went to (اسم المدينة) ... .
- We visited (اسم المكان) ... .
- We went by (وسيلة التنقل) ... .
- It was (وصف للمكان) ... .
- It is (معلومات عن المكان) ... .
- We also went to (مكان مختلف) ... .
- We found (أشياء فى المكان) ... .
- After that, we went to (مكان مختلف) ... .
- It has (صفات فى المكان) ... .

My trip to Aswan

I went to Aswan with my family. We visited Elephantine Island. We went there by boat. It was so beautiful and calm. It is the oldest part of Aswan. We also went to the Aswan Museum. We found a very rare calendar. After that, we went to a Nubian village. It has beautiful brightly decorated houses.

How to write about your favorite resort:

- (المكان) is my favorite resort.
- (المكان) is an excellent example of eco-tourism.
- You can find (أماكن مختلفة) ... .
- The local people are (وصف) ... .
- There's (مكان مشهور), (وصف للمكان) ... .
- Eco-tourists can (أنشطة يقوم بها السياح)... .

Taba is my favorite resort

Taba is my favorite resort. Taba is an excellent example of eco-tourism. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. The local people are very friendly. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. Eco-tourists can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping.

How to write about eco-tourism:

- Eco-tourism is (معنى السياحة البيئية) ... .
- The pros of eco-tourism are that (مميزات) ... .
- The cons of eco-tourism are that (عيوب) ... .

Eco-tourism

Eco-tourism is tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people. The pros of eco-tourism are that it helps the environment, and it's unusual and exciting. The cons of eco-tourism are that it's not as comfortable as normal tourism, and it's sometimes more expensive.

Unit 4 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Change the sentences:

1 He was walking down the road. (–)
He wasn't walking down the road.

2 She wasn't eating an ice cream. (+) ....

3 They were looking at photos. (?) ....

4 We were watching TV. (–) ....

5 Was it raining? (–) ....

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

coral – dive – environment – hotels – wildlife – pollution

1 Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the .... and helps local people.

2 Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the .... that planes cause.

3 They stay in small, local .... or pay to stay in people's houses.

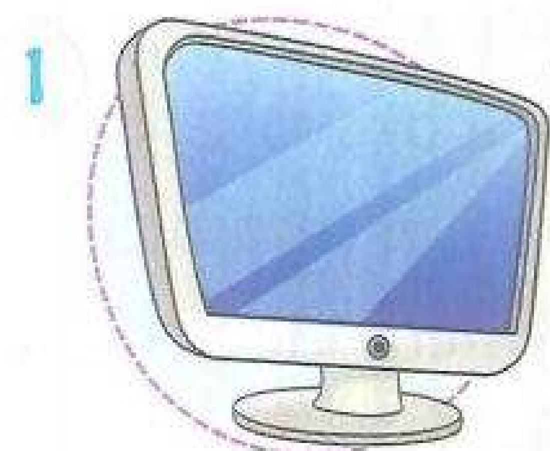
4 They like to learn about local .... projects and local culture.

5 Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the .... reefs.

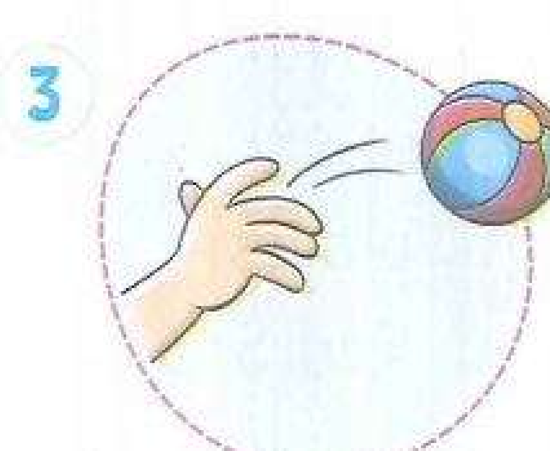
6 Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can ....

3 Look and complete the words with the letters in the box:

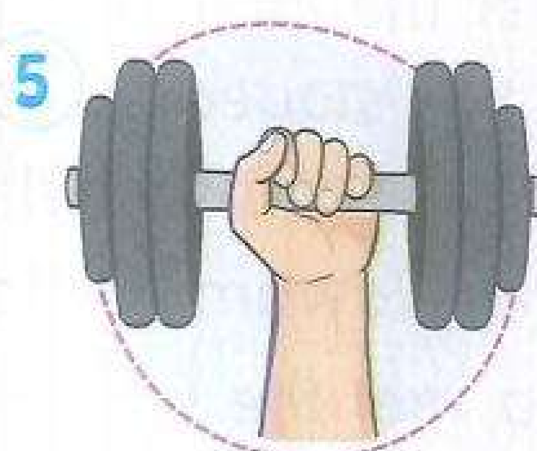
eam – ee – een – eet – ong – ow

1 
scr<u>een</u>

2 
str____

3 
thr____

4 
thr____

5 
str____

6 
scr____

Test Yourself 30 UNIT 4







Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

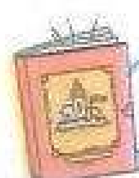
(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Elephantine .... is an amazing place.
a) Forest b) Desert c) Island d) Lake

2 Tourists can travel by ....to visit it.
a) taxi b) train c) plane d) boat

3 It is the oldest part of ....
a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Cairo d) Giza

4 There are no forests, but there are lots of ....
a) lakes b) ponds c) trees d) rivers



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Tourism gives .... for local people. البحيرة - إيتاى البارود - 2024
a) villages b) jobs c) farms d) homes

2 You can know today's date from the .... on the wall. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط - 2024
a) calendar b) waterfall c) lake d) island

3 We traveled by .... through the Nile. الإسكندرية - الإبراهيمية - 2024
a) train b) felucca c) bus d) car

4 Eco-tourism looks after the .... الإسماعيلية - 2024
a) hotels b) planes c) environment d) clubs

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

monuments – books – local – environment – coral

Eco-tourism is very exciting. There are many pros to it. Eco-tourism helps the ....(1).......... . Eco-tourism helps ....(2).......... people. Eco-tourism looks after historical places, ...(3).........., and natural wildlife. We have some very nice projects in the Red Sea preserving the ....(4).......... reefs. Guides tell tourists where they can dive.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

I'm Salma. I like to look after the environment. I went on an eco-holiday with my friends. We went to Taba. We stayed in an eco-lodge. We went diving, hiking, and camping. We also saw the fantastic wildlife of Taba. We saw rare birds and the Nubian ibex. We went to Nawamis village. It's an amazing village of round, very old buildings. We also met the local people. They were very friendly. We had a meal with them, and we talked to them about their culture.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Salma went to .... with her friends.

a) Taba b) Alexandria c) Luxor d) Cairo

2 The word "eco" means ....

a) house b) environment c) village d) tourism

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did they stay in Taba? ....

4 What activities did they do in Taba? ....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 the oldest – of Aswan – is – Elephantine – part – Island.

....

2 were – doing, – you – Judy – What? البحيرة - إيتاى البارود -2024

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 Were you .... (ride) your bike at 6 pm? البحيرة - إيتاى البارود -2024

2 She .... (is) watching TV at 7 o'clock yesterday. الإسكندرية - برج العرب -2024

7 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: (1)

was she cooking in the kitchen البحيرة - إيتاى البارود -2024

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"My trip to Aswan" الدقهلية - ميت غمر -2024



How to travel	boat
Places to visit	Aswan Museum

....

....

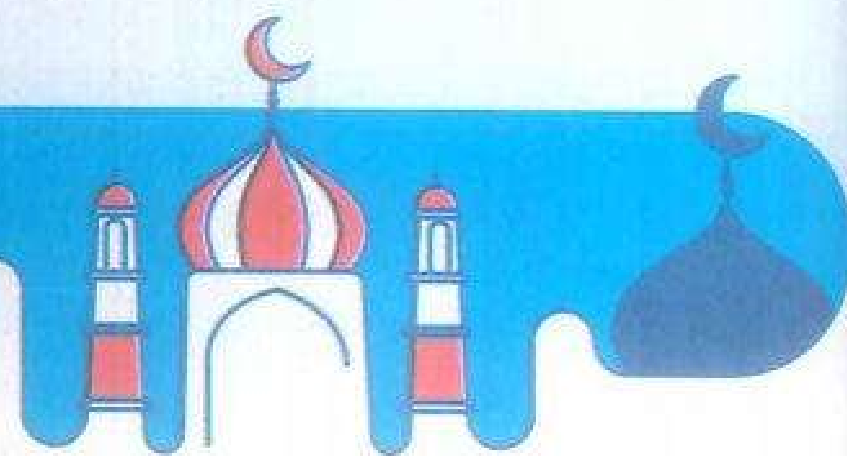
....

....

Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 4 AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

local – pollution – foot – eco-tourism

A : What is .... ?

B : It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps .... people.

A : How does it help the environment and people?

B : Eco-tourists don't like to travel by planes because they cause ....

A : How do eco-tourists travel?

B : They travel by train, on ...., or by bike.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 She (swim – swims – was swimming) in the sea yesterday at 6 am.

2 The name "Elephantine" means the (type – shape – color).

3 You can find fantastic (wildlife – supermarkets – country) in Taba.

4 When the sun goes down, it's the (sunrise – evening – sunset).

5 What (were – are – was) she cooking?

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 found – rare – We – calendar – very – a.

....

2 went – We – Museum – the – Aswan – to.

....

3 they – lake – in – Were – a – swimming?

....

4 sleeping – at – 8 pm – He – yesterday – wasn't.

....

5 like – travel – Eco-tourists – to – don't – plane – by.

....

NOVEMBER REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر نوفمبر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I wear a .... at school.
a) galabeya b) uniform c) pajamas d) necklace

2 I wear my goggles to go......................... . الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق 2024
a) swimming b) running c) squash d) kung fu

3 She has white .... on her hands.
a) crown b) gloves c) belt d) shoes

4 A galabeya has hidden ....
a) sleeves b) pockets c) belt d) robe

5 Sombrero is a traditional Mexican ....
a) dress b) hat c) trousers d) crown

6 She wears a .... around her neck. محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب 2024
a) dress b) necklace c) shoes d) skirt

7 I bought new swimming .... to swim in the pool. الدقهلية - إدارة السنبلاوين العرب 2024
a) jacket b) shorts c) umbrella d) coat

8 He packed his clothes in a small .... الجيزة 2024
a) kettle b) pot c) suitcase d) pencil case

9 My galabeya is made of .... الجيزة - إدارة الوراق 2024
a) cotton b) plastic c) wood d) food

10 I wear......................... on my feet. القاهرة - إدارة هليوبوليس 2024
a) sneakers b) jackets c) coats d) skirts

11 In Egypt, we have some nice projects looking after .... reefs. الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس 2024
a) seeds b) weeds c) leaves d) coral

12 Eco-tourism helps to .... the wildlife. الجيزة - إدارة 6 أكتوبر 2024
a) protect b) build c) buy d) ask

13 We enjoyed the .... at 6 pm in Luxor.
a) sun cream b) sunset c) sunrise d) sunburn

14 They went on a trip to climb the ....
a) island b) lake c) waterfall d) mountain

15 Tourists come to the Red Sea to .... القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2024
a) dive b) drink c) drive d) write

16 We stayed in an eco-friendly house in Taba. It's a/an ....
a) eco-resort b) eco-lodge c) eco-village d) eco-holiday

17 We don't travel by planes because they cause ....

a) pollution b) eco-resort c) wildlife d) tourism

18 "..........................." looks after the environment and helps local people.

a) Eco-tourism b) Eco-destination c) Tourism d) Wildlife

19 We have some very nice projects in the Red Sea .... the coral reefs.

a) damaging b) creating c) preserving d) causing

20 I went to Elephantine .... in Aswan.

a) Mountain b) Waterfall c) Museum d) Island

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

cotton – Eid – sunburned – wool – galabeya

I live in Aswan. Aswan is very beautiful, but also very hot. I always wear white ....(1)........... . It is a long robe. It is made of ....(2)........... . It makes me feel cool. The galabeya sleeves are long, so I don't get ....(3)........... . I wear it for ....(4)........... too, but with patterns on it.

B)

back – pack – excited – shorts – sunglasses

I'm Sara. I'm going to travel to Alexandria for a holiday with my family next week. We are very ....(1)........... . We need to ....(2)........... our suitcases. My brother Hema needs to pack his swimming ....(3)........... to swim in the sea. I will take my ....(4)........... because it will be sunny. It will be a nice holiday.

C)

history – oldest – smallest – Museum – calendar

Elephantine Island is the ....(1)........... part of Aswan. The island is full of .... (2)........... . You can visit the Aswan ....(3)........... where you can find very old things from the island like a rare ....(4)........... from the reign of Thutmose III. The island is also a beautiful, calm place.

D)

Tower – Museum – diving – Pyramids – beaches

Egypt is a wonderful country. There are lots to see in Egypt. In Cairo, you can visit the Egyptian ....(1)........... where you can learn about our ancient history. You can also see the Cairo ....(2)........... . In Aswan, you can see awesome temples. When you go to Sharm El-Sheikh, you can see beautiful ....(3)........... . You can go ....(4)........... and see the amazing coral reefs.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I wore a galabeya .... (as) stay cool.
2 I went to my bedroom .... (for) sleep.
3 Mayar made a cake to .... (celebrated).
4 Sameh went to a shopping center to .... (buys) new sneakers.
5 A: .... (What) did Tarek make a suit? B: To wear at a wedding party.
6 I went to the supermarket .... (in) buy milk. القاهرة - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر 2024
7 We didn't .... (had) a vacation this year. بورسعيد 2024
8 The shoemaker made ....(leather, small) shoes. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة 2024
9 We ....(go) to the zoo yesterday. الجيزة - البدرشين 2024
10 She wore a ....(cotton, green) dress. القاهرة - البساتين 2024
11 Mona ....(were) studying English when her father came. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
12 A: Were you baking a cake at 7 pm yesterday? B: No, I .... (weren't).
13 What .... (was) you doing at 3 pm yesterday? الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس 2024
14 He was .... (travel) to Cairo yesterday evening. الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر 2024
15 They .... (was) looking at photos. القاهرة - إدارة المطرية 2024
16 .... (Were) he swimming in the lake?
17 .... (You were) sleeping at 9 am yesterday?
18 She was listening to English songs at 10 pm .... (today).
19 A: Was Eslam reading a book? B: Yes, he .... (wasn't).
20 Was the boy .... (drank) milk?

4 Punctuate the following:

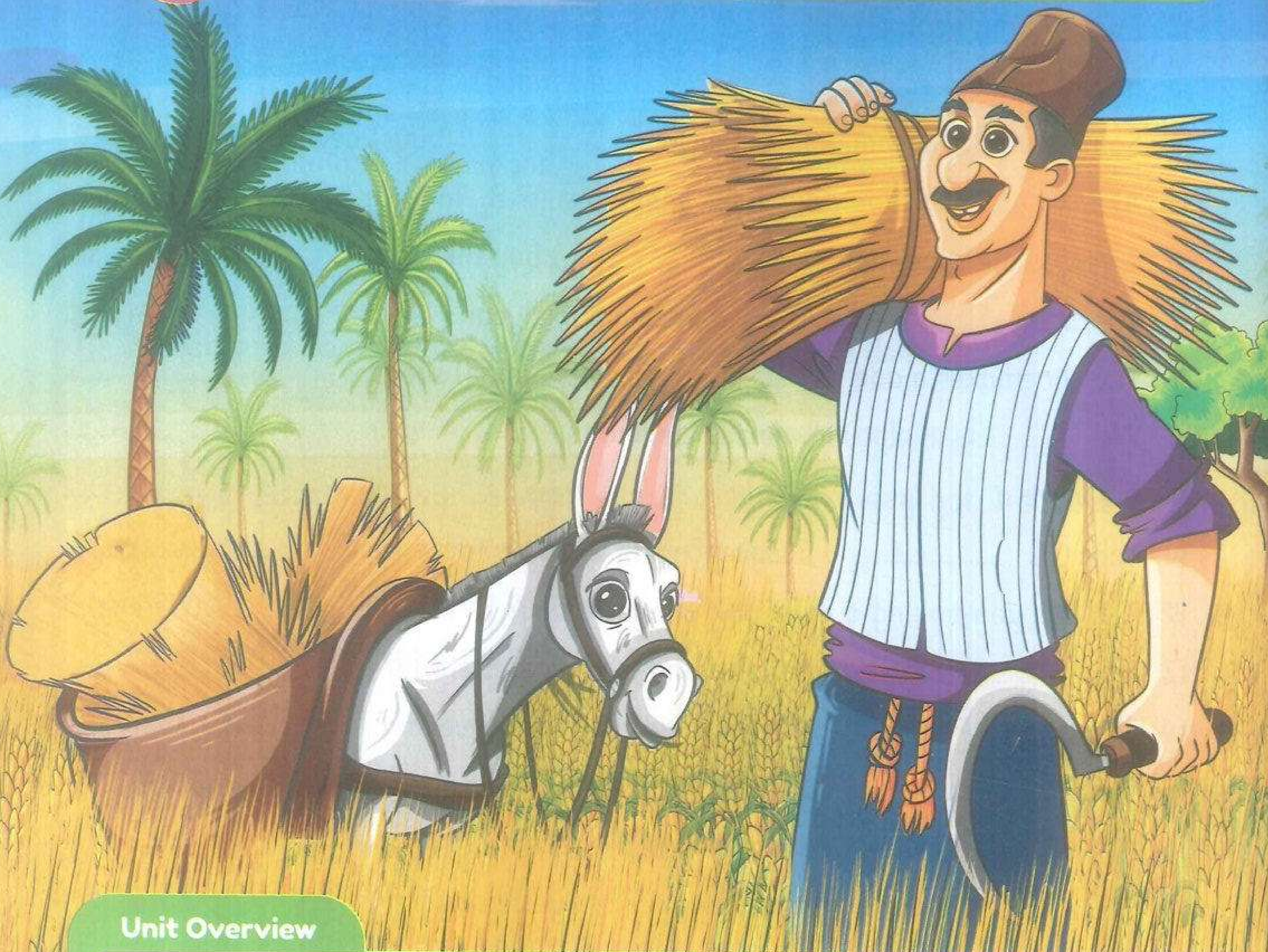
1 i live in giza. القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024
....
2 Aswan is in the south of egypt القاهرة - المرج 2024
....
3 what was Ahmed doing yesterday morning الاسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024
....
4 where did you go القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2024
....


لمزيد من التدريبات ارجع إلى صفحة 246.

Unit 5

Jobs we do

وظائف نقوم بها



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.
- understand ecosystems.
- practice using the present simple to talk about routines.
- practice using "must" to talk about obligation.
- understand and discuss a traditional tale.
- learn to say words with diphthongs.
- understand pie charts.
- write about the pros and cons of different jobs.
- make a poster about teamwork.

- يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن أنواع مختلفة من الوظائف فى مصر القديمة.
- يفهم النظم البيئية.
- يتدرب على استخدام المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن الروتين.
- يتدرب على استخدام «يجب» للتحدث عن الإلزام.
- يفهم ويناقش حكاية تراثية.
- يتعلم نطق الكلمات التى تحتوى على مزيج من حرفين متحركين.
- يفهم المخططات الدائرية.
- يكتب عن إيجابيات وسلبيات الوظائف المختلفة.
- يقوم بعمل ملصق عن العمل الجماعى.

Did you know?

- More than 25% of people in Egypt work in farming. Farming brings a lot of *income to Egypt.

Find out!

- Egypt has other popular jobs like engineering, teaching, tourism, *accounting, *marketing, *management, and medical jobs.

*income	دخل	*accounting	المحاسبة	*marketing	التسويق	*management	الإدارة



Lesson 1
Jobs in Ancient Egypt
وظائف فى مصر القديمة





1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



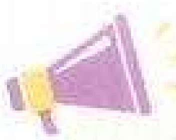
Main vocabulary

Main Vocabulary

scribe	كاتب	trader	تاجر	grains	حبوب
craftsmen/craftspeople	حرفيون	hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	records	سجلات

Extra vocabulary

job	وظيفة	ancient (adj.)	قديم
fisherman	صياد سمك	baker	خباز
doctor	طبيب	farmer	مزارع
fields	حقول	crops	محاصيل
wheat	قمح	corn	ذرة
flax	بذور الكتان	paintings	رسومات / لوحات
gold (adj.)	ذهبى (مصنوع من الذهب)	jewelry	مجوهرات
sculptures	منحوتات	colorful (adj.)	مُلون / مبهج
cooking pots	أوانى الطبخ	expensive (adj.)	غالٍ
meals	وجبات	baskets	سلال
sandals	صنادل	pharaohs	فراعنة
famous (adj.)	مشهور	successful (adj.)	ناجح
temple	معبد	female ruler	الحاكمة
lists	قوائم	wood	خشب
linen	كتان	clay	الطين/الصلصال
signs	علامات	rows	صفوف
columns	أعمدة	medical (adj.)	طبى
medicine	دواء	craftswoman	حرفية (امرأة)



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ci) ينطقان /ʃ/ (ش) كما فى (ancient).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ph) ينطقان /f/ (ف) كما فى (hieroglyphs).

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	weave	ينسج	weaved
bake	يخبز	baked	respect	يحترم	respected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
spend	يقضي (وقتًا)	spent	sell	يبيع	sold
become	يصبح	became	keep	يحافظ على	kept

Expressions and Phrases

work very hard	يعمل جاهدًا	work as	يعمل كـ ...
used to	اعتاد على	weave clothes	ينسج / يخيط الملابس
fewer people	عدد أقل من الناس	know how to ...	يعرف كيف ...
work outside	يعمل بالخارج	take care of = look after	يعتني بـ
as well	أيضًا	important for life	ضروري للحياة
write ... down	يدون/يسجل	keep records for	يحتفظ بالسجلات لـ
do a job	يقوم بوظيفة	travel up and down	يسافر ذهابًا وإيابًا
a system of writing	نظام للكتابة	consist of	يتكون من

Take care!

بعض الأفعال تحول إلى أسماء عند إضافة er

e.g. My mom loves to bake cookies. (verb)

My mom is a baker. (noun)

Verb الفعل		Job الوظيفة	
bake	يخبز	baker	خباز
trade	يتاجر	trader	تاجر
rule	يحكم	ruler	حاكم
farm	يزرع	farmer	مزارع

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job. كل فرد فى مصر القديمة كان لديه وظيفة.
* Farmers worked in fields and planted grains like wheat, corn, and flax. كان المزارعون يعملون فى الحقول ويزرعون الحبوب مثل القمح والذرة وبذور الكتان.
* Craftsmen made beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. صنع الحرفيون مجوهرات ومنحوتات ذهبية جميلة.
* Scribes kept records and lists for important things. احتفظ الكتبة بسجلات وقوائم للأشياء المهمة.
* Traders bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains. كان التجار يشترون ويبيعون أشياء مثل الذهب والخشب والكتان والحبوب.
* Women worked at home and outside, too. عملت النساء فى المنزل وبالخارج أيضًا.



Find out!

There were many other jobs in Ancient Egypt like priests, noblemen, soldiers, hunters, and artists. Most people did the job of their fathers.



كان هناك العديد من الوظائف الأخرى فى مصر القديمة، مثل: الكهنة والنبلاء والجنود والصيادين والفنانين. كان معظم الناس يقومون بعمل آبائهم.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Farmers work in (fields – schools – home – hospitals).

2 The shoemaker makes (sandals – paintings – pots – sculptures).

3 (Traders – Craftsmen – Scribes – Doctors) could write down everything in Ancient Egypt.

4 Women could (bake – weave – cook – travel) clothes and baskets.

5 (Fruits – Vegetables – Grains – Rice) are crops like wheat and corn.

6 A (farmer – ruler – fisherman – baker) is the king or the queen of a country.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Jobs in Ancient Egypt الوظائف فى مصر القديمة



Temple of Hatshepsut, female ruler of Egypt, 1473-1458 BCE

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.

عمل الناس فى مصر القديمة بجد. كان كل شخص لديه وظيفة. تمكنوا أن يعملوا كصيادين وخبازين وأطباء وتجار. لكن معظم الناس عملوا كمزارعين. عمل المزارعون فى الحقول التى كانت قريبة من منازلهم. زرعوا المحاصيل، التى كانت عادة حبوبًا مثل القمح والذرة وبذور الكتان. زرعوا الخضراوات والفواكه أيضًا.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

كان الحرفيون المصريون القدماء جيدين جدًا أيضًا. لقد صنعوا لوحات جميلة ومجوهرات ذهبية ومنحوتات جميلة. اعتادوا على نسج الملابس الجميلة وصنع أوانى الطهى الملونة. عدد أقل من الناس عملوا ككتبة. عرف الكتبة القراءة والكتابة بشكل جيد. الكتابة المصرية لم تكن سهلة التعلم. أمضى الكتبة سنوات عديدة فى تعلم الهيروغليفية، وكان هذا مكلفًا للغاية.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

عملت المرأة المصرية القديمة فى المنزل وكان بإمكانها العمل فى الخارج أيضًا. قامت النساء بطهى وجبات الطعام وتنظيف المنزل والاعتناء بأطفالهن. تمكنت النساء من نسج السِّلال، وخبْز الخُبز، وصنع الصنادل، وتمكنوا من بيعها فى السوق أيضًا. حتى إنهم تمكنوا من أن يصبحوا فراعنة. كانت حتشبسوت إحدى الملكات المشهورات فى مصر القديمة.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

عرف الجميع فى مصر القديمة أن العمل مهم للحياة، لذلك كان قدماء المصريين ناجحين للغاية!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 (Traders – Scribes – Farmers – Doctors) could buy and sell everything in Ancient Egypt.

2 (Traders – Scribes – Farmers – Fishermen) knew how to read and write well.

3 Hatshepsut was a (trader – pharaoh – scribe – fisherman) in Ancient Egypt.

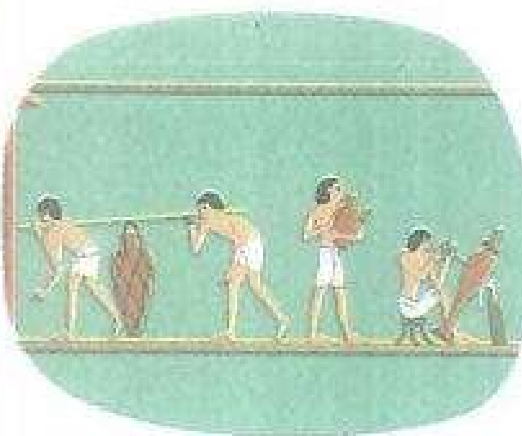
4 The Ancient Egyptians were very (lazy – bored – tired – successful).



3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



Definitions

	scribe كاتب	People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things. الأشخاص الذين شغلوا هذه الوظيفة كانوا مهمين للغاية فى مصر القديمة. يمكنهم تسجيل كل شىء، فقد احتفظوا بسجلات وقوائم لأشياء مهمة.
	trader تاجر	People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains. الناس الذين قاموا بهذا العمل سافروا ذهابًا وإيابًا فى النيل. كانوا يشترون ويبيعون أشياء مثل الذهب والخشب والكتان والحبوب.
	craftsman حِرَفى	If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold. إذا كنت جيدًا فى صنع الأشياء، فهذا العمل كان مناسبًا لك. الأشخاص الذين عملوا فى هذه الوظيفه صنعوا أشياء من الصلصال والخشب والذهب.
	hieroglyphs اللغة الهيروغليفية	A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt. نظام كتابة كان يتكون من حوالى ٥٠٠ علامة، مكتوبة فى صفوف وأعمدة. استخدمه الناس فى مصر القديمة.
	doctor طبيب	Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine. استطاع كل من الرجال والنساء القيام بهذه الوظيفة أيضًا. كان عليك الذهاب إلى مدرسة الطب للحصول على هذه الوظيفة. كان عليك أن تعتنى بالمرضى وتصنع الدواء.



Practice Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Ancient Egyptian women cooked ....
a) pots b) meals c) bread d) corn

2 They .... of their children.
a) looked for b) took care c) looked at d) took turns

3 Women could weave .... and bake bread.
a) paintings b) sculptures c) baskets d) corn

4 Hatshepsut was a famous .... in Ancient Egypt.
a) king b) queen c) scribe d) trader

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ancient Egyptians used .... to write everything down. محافظة الإسكندرية – إدارة الجمرك 2024
a) English b) hieroglyphics c) math d) Arabic

2 Scribes kept .... for important things.
a) sculptures b) pots c) paintings d) records

3 Traders could travel .... and down the Nile. محافظة الجيزة – إدارة الدقي 2024
a) up b) in c) under d) out

4 A .... wrote everything down in Ancient Egypt. محافظة الإسماعيلية 2024
a) scribe b) doctor c) farmer d) craftsman

5 Hieroglyphs consisted of about 500 ....
a) letters b) numbers c) signs d) shapes

6 .... made things from clay, wood, and gold.
a) Craftsmen b) Scribes c) Doctors d) Pharaohs

7 .... is the system of writing in Ancient Egypt.
a) Lists b) Hieroglyphs c) Grains d) Records

8 I want to be a .... I like making beautiful pots and clay. الشرقية – إدارة العاشر 2024
a) doctor b) craftsman c) trader d) scribe

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rivers – records – hieroglyphs – Scribes – papyrus

محافظة الشرقية – إدارة بلبيس 2024

There were many jobs in Ancient Egypt. ....(1)............ wrote everything down. There were scribe schools where they could learn to read and write well. They used a system of pictures called ....(2)............ to do so. They wrote on pyramids, tombs, statues, and ....(3)............ . They wanted to make sure they had ....(4)............ of everything.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

محافظة الجيزة – إدارة الهرم 2024

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. Most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made beautiful paintings and gold jewelry. Hieroglyphs were not easy to learn. Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. They cooked meals, cleaned the houses and took care of their children. They could weave baskets and make sandals to sell at the market. Ancient Egyptians were very successful.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Hieroglyphs were not ....to learn.

a) easy b) difficult c) tall d) short

2 Ancient Egyptians were very ....

a) bad b) successful c) sad d) wrong

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did Ancient Egyptian craftsmen make?

....

4 Where did women sell sandals and baskets?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 clothes – to – Craftsmen – beautiful – weave – used.

....

2 queen – in – Hatshepsut – Ancient Egypt – a famous – was.

....

3 of – Hieroglyphs – signs – 500 – about – consisted.

....

4 corn – planted – like – and – Farmers – wheat – grains.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 The Ancient egyptians were very successful

....

2 Traders traveled up and down the nile

....



Lesson 2

CLIL: Science

Watch a video



A Ecosystems النظم البيئية



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary



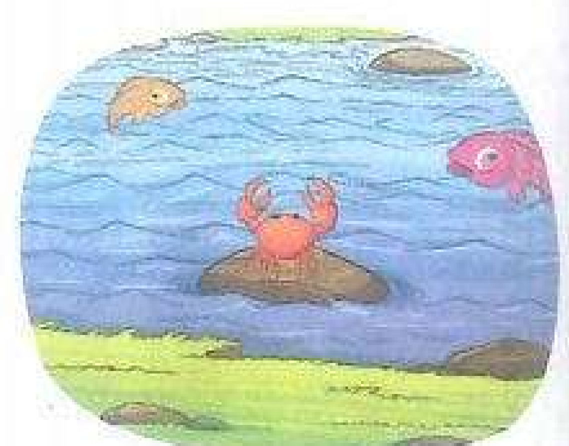
a marine ecosystem
نظام بيئى بحرى



a freshwater ecosystem
نظام بيئى للمياه العذبة

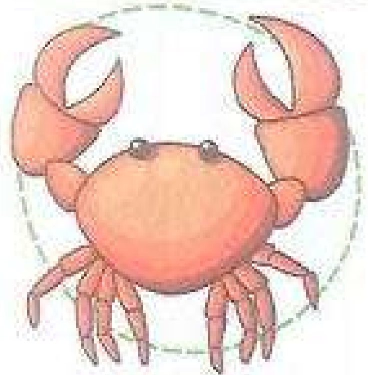


a desert ecosystem
نظام بيئى صحراوى

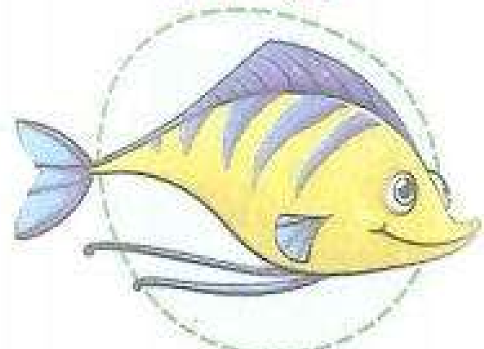


a rockpool ecosystem
نظام بيئى للبرك الصخرية

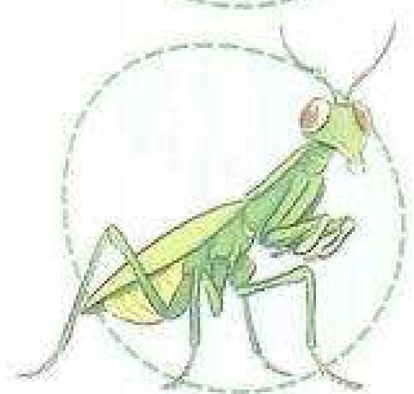
Living things كائنات حية



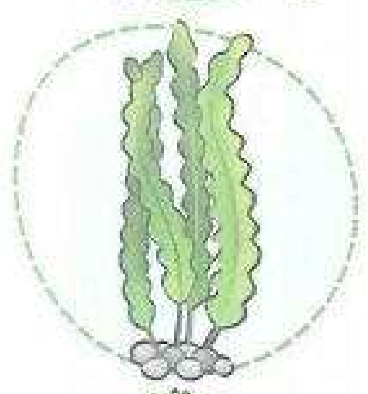
crab
سرطان البحر



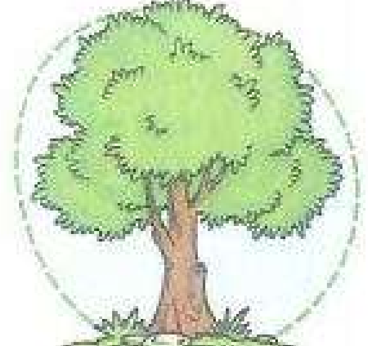
fish
سمكة



insect
حشرة

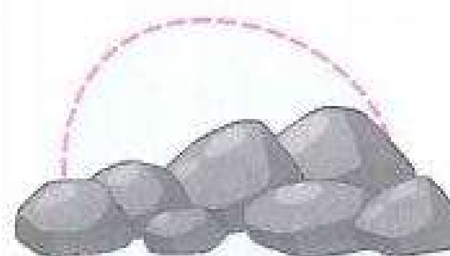


seaweed
أعشاب بحرية

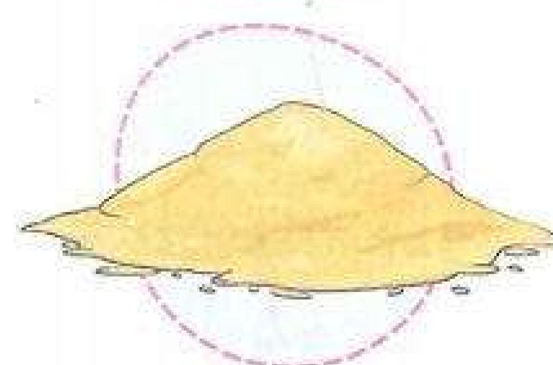


tree
شجرة

Non-living things أشياء غير حية



rocks
صخور



sand
رمال



sunlight
ضوء الشمس



water
مياه

Extra vocabulary

source	مصدر	natural world	عالم الطبيعة	connected (adj.)	متصل
connection	اتصال	area	منطقة	alive (adj.)	على قيد الحياة
Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون الاستوائية	shelter	مأوى (ملجأ)	menu	قائمة الطعام
boss	قائد / زعيم	sharp (adj.)	حاد	knife	سكين
manager	مدير	restaurant	مطعم	delicious (adj.)	شهى
customers	عملاء/ زبائن	university	جامعة	hippo	فرس النهر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
contain	يحتوى على	contained	need	يحتاج	needed
survive	ينجو (يبقى على قيد الحياة)	survived	check	يفحص	checked
prepare	يعد / يجهز	prepared	tidy up	يرتب	tidied up

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
catch	يمسك	caught	fly	يُطير	flew
drive	يقود	drove	wake up	يوقظ	woke up
forget	ينسى	forgot	cut	يقطع / يقص	cut

Expressions and Phrases

on Earth	على سطح الأرض	the same	متشابهان
(be) called	يُدعى / يُسمى	work together	يعمل معًا
catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس	fly a plane	يقود الطيارة
make sure	يتأكد	at midday	فى منتصف النهار
look after	يرعى / يعتنى بـ	give a bath	يحمم

Definitions

living	something that is alive	شىء حى
non-living	something that isn't alive	شىء غير حى
ecosystem	all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place	كل الحيوانات والنباتات والصخور...، إلخ فى مكان ما
rockpool	a small area of water that may contain rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.	مساحة صغيرة من الماء بها صخور وسرطان البحر والأعشاب البحرية ....، إلخ

Take care!

بعض من الأسماء المركبة يتكون عند إضافة اسم + اسم مثل:

e.g. rock + pool = rockpool
sun + light = sunlight
rain + forest = rainforest
sea + weed = seaweed



Think!
We need food, water, and shelter to survive.
نحن نحتاج إلى الطعام والمياه والمأوى لنبقى على قيد الحياة.

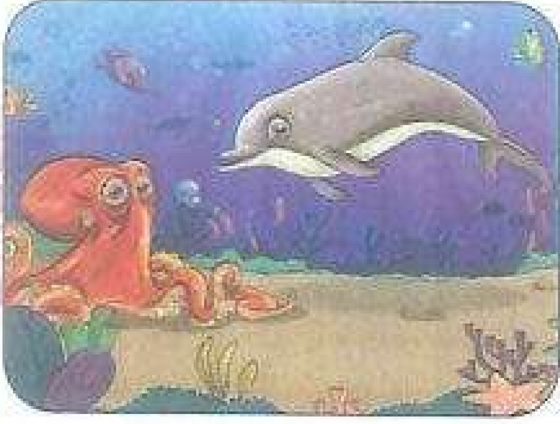


2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The River Nile is the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river.

يعتبر نهر النيل أهم مصدر للمياه العذبة فى مصر. تعيش الكثير من النباتات والحيوانات بالقرب من النهر أو بداخله.

What is an ecosystem? ما هو النظام البيئى؟



a marine ecosystem



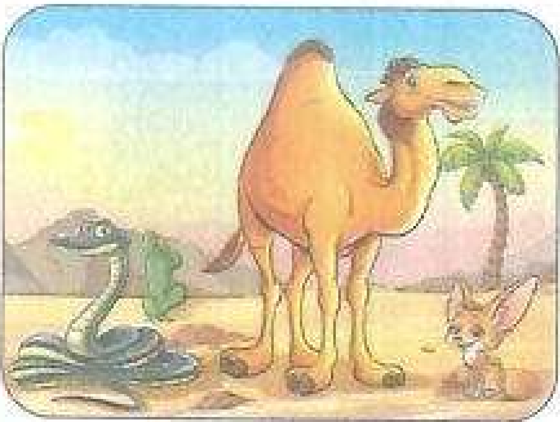
a freshwater ecosystem

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem.

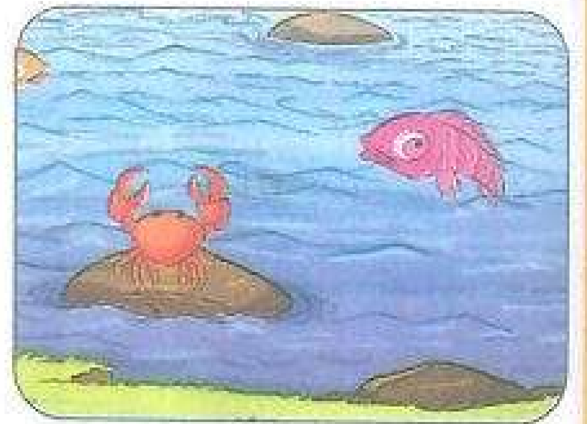
كل شىء فى عالم الطبيعة متصل. يسمى هذا الاتصال بين الأشياء الحية وغير الحية بالنظام البيئى.

Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest.

يمكن أن تكون النظم البيئية صغيرة، مثل بركة صخرية، أو يمكن أن تكون كبيرة جدًّا، مثل غابات الأمازون الاستوائية.



a desert ecosystem



a rockpool ecosystem

The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed.
The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight.

الكائنات الحية فى البركة الصخرية هى: الأسماك وسرطان البحر والأعشاب البحرية. الكائنات غير الحية هى: الصخور والماء والرمال وأشعة الشمس.

All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

كل هذه الأشياء تعمل معًا لإنشاء نظام بيئى. هناك الكثير من النظم البيئية المختلفة على كوكب الأرض.

Check

1 What is an ecosystem?

....

2 What are the non-living things in a rockpool?

....



Language Focus

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

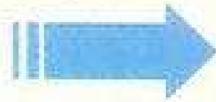
Usage: الاستخدام:

We use the present simple to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.
نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التى نقوم بها كل يوم.

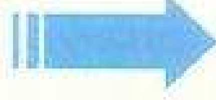
Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ You/ They	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .
He/ She/ It	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) + (s/ es/ ies) ... .

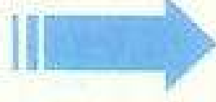
e.g. - I drive to work at 10 am.
- He cuts the vegetables with a sharp knife.



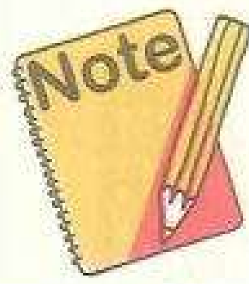
معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):
e.g. She eats fruits every day.



الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss, sh, ch, o, x) يضاف لها (es):
e.g. She catches a bus to school.



الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن, يتم حذف الـ (y) ويضاف للفعل (ies):
e.g. He flies a plane.



إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ال (y) يسبقه حرف متحرك (a, e, i, o, u)، أضف حرف الـ(s) فقط:
e.g. He plays computer games on the weekend.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

I/ We/ You/ They	don't	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .
He/ She/ It	doesn't	

e.g. - I don't drink milk.
- He doesn't walk to school.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال	Do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ...?
	Does	he/ she/ it	

Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject	do/does.
	No,		don't/doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you drive to work?
B: Yes, I do.

A: Does the child play computer games?
B: No, he doesn't.

Wh- Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ...?
	does	he/ she/ it	

e.g. A: What do you do on the weekend?
B: I play football.

A: When does Dad arrive home?
B: He arrives at 6 pm.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I (to eat – eating – eats – eat) fruit.
2 My brother and I (drink – to drink – drinks – drinking) coffee at 11 am.
3 At midday, the manager (check – checks – checking – to check) the restaurant.
4 My sister (study – studies – studying – to study) at Mansoura University.
5 The boy (don't – doesn't – isn't – wasn't) watch TV at 6 pm every day.
6 (Does – Is – Are – Do) you eat yogurt for breakfast?
7 How (was – is – does – do) Sara go to school?
8 They (aren't – don't – doesn't – haven't) visit their grandmother every Friday.
9 My sister doesn't (go – going – goes – went) to bed early every day.
10 We don't (listen – listens – listening – to listen) to music every day.

must / mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do.
عندما نتحدث عن شيء يجب علينا القيام به نستخدم «must» بمعنى «يجب أن».
We use "mustn't" (must not) when we are not allowed to do something.
وعندما لا يُسمح لنا بفعل شيء ما نستخدم «mustn't» بمعنى «يجب ألا».

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

| Subject | must | (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر)... . |

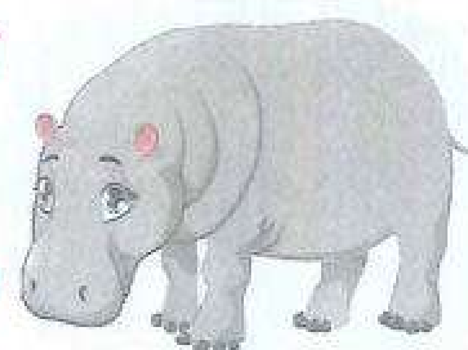
e.g. - I must buy some bananas.
- We must do the English homework.

Negative Form: صيغة النفي:

| Subject | mustn't (must not) | (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر)... . |

e.g. - He mustn't eat in the classroom.
- They mustn't walk on the grass.

Walid looks after hippos. He must make sure they are happy and healthy. He must prepare their food. He must give them fresh water to drink. He must give them a bath. He must even clean their teeth!



وليد يعتني بأفراس النهر. يجب أن يتأكد من أنهم سعداء وبصحة جيدة. يجب أن يعد طعامهم. يجب أن يمنحهم ماءً عذبًا للشرب. يجب أن يحمّمهم. يجب عليه حتى تنظيف أسنانهم!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 We (must – mustn't – should – are) talk in the library.
2 I must (buys – buying – bought – buy) some oranges.
3 You (mustn't – should – can – must) shout in the classroom.
4 He (shouldn't – must – mustn't – can't) listen to the teacher.
5 I (mustn't – must – can't – shouldn't) drink water every day.
6 You must (giving – gives – gave – give) hippos fresh water to drink.

Practice



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Use a .... to cut the watermelon. الشرقية - إدارة الحسينية 2024

a) plate b) knife c) spoon d) fork

2 I loved this meal. It's ....

a) bad b) delicious c) unhealthy d) terrible

3 A/An .... means all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place. البحيرة - إدارة إيتاي البارود 2024

a) river b) living c) ecosystem d) non-living

4 The River Nile is the most important source of .... water in Egypt.

الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية 2024

a) salt b) fresh c) bad d) sand

5 The .... prepared a lovely meal. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024

a) teacher b) farmer c) chef d) fisherman

6 .... is something that isn't alive. بورسعيد 2024

a) Living b) Rainforest c) Non-living d) Rockpool

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rainforest – crabs – sand – connection – eco-tourist

The ....(1)............... between living and non-living things is called ecosystem. They can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon ....(2)............ . The living things in a rockpool are fish, ...(3)............, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, ...(4)............, and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 grass – mustn't – You – the – on – walk.

....

2 seaweed – living – Crabs – things – and – are.

....

3 a small – A rockpool – area – water – of – is. بورسعيد 2024

....

4 library – talk – mustn't – the – We – in. الشرقية - إدارة العاشر 2024

....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Mona .... (catch) the bus to Cairo every day. القليوبية – إدارة الخانكة 2024
2 A teacher.................................. (work) in a school. بورسعيد 2024
3 I don't .... (watching) TV. القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
4 My sister doesn't .... (studies) at Mansoura University.
5 Walid .... (not listen) to music every day.
6 We must .... (helping) our parents. الشرقية – إدارة منيا القمح 2024
7 We mustn't .... (talking) in the library. الشرقية – إدارة أبو كبير 2024
8 You .... (must) walk on the grass.
9 We .... (mustn't) look after the environment. الشرقية – إدارة أولاد صقر 2024
10 .... (Does) they like vegetables?
11 Mrs Soha .... (work) in a school. الإسماعيلية 2024
12 Emad always .... (speak) English very well. البحيرة – إدارة إيتاي البارود 2024
13 He must .... (tidied) his bedroom every day. الشرقية – إدارة ههيا 2024
14 You .... (must) eat in the library. الشرقية – إدارة أولاد صقر 2024
15 I must .... (doing) my English homework. الشرقية – إدارة الصالحية الجديدة 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 what do we need to survive

....

2 you must do your homework الجيزة – إدارة الهرم 2024

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:



"Ecosystem"

- What is an ecosystem?
- Are all ecosystems the same?
- What kinds of ecosystems are there?

....

....

....

....

....



Lesson 3





A Story



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

grasshopper	جراد	relaxing (adj.)	مسترخٍ
fence	سور	boring (adj.)	ممل

Extra vocabulary

spring	فصل الربيع	fields	حقول	lovely (adj.)	رائع
butterflies	فراشات	however	رغم ذلك	lazy (adj.)	كسول
strange (adj.)	غريب	sound	صوت	maybe	ربما
fall	فصل الخريف	winter	فصل الشتاء	conversation	محادثة
future	مستقبل	surprised (adj.)	متفاجئ	moral	الدرس الأخلاق

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
buzz	يطنّ	buzzed	rest	يستريح	rested
reply	يرد	replied	hop	يقفز	hopped
harvest	يحصد	harvested	stop	يتوقف	stopped
remember	يتذكر	remembered	knock	يخبط / يطرق	knocked
prefer	يفضل	preferred	ignore	يتجاهل	ignored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
shine	يشرق	shone	fly	يطير	flew
spend	يقضى	spent	hear	يسمع	heard
have	يمتلك	had	understand	يفهم	understood
teach	يُعلم	taught	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

full of	ملىء بـ	the bees are buzzing	النحل يطنّ	work hard	يعمل بجد
most of his time	معظم وقته	resting against a tree	يستريح مستندًا على شجرة	find out	يكتشف
look over	ينظر من فوق	carry on with my work	أكمل عملى	have to do	مضطر أن تفعل
think about	يفكر فى	hop away	يقفز بعيدًا	grow well	تنمو بشكل جيد
knock on	يطرق على	come in	يدخل	prepare for	يستعد لـ

The Ant and the Grasshopper النملة والجراد



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.

إنه الربيع. الشمس مشرقة والحقول والحدائق مليئة بالزهور لتأكلها الحيوانات والحشرات. إنه يوم جميل. النحل يطنّ والفراشات تطير فى الشمس. ومع ذلك، فإن النمل يعمل بجد.



The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence.

يقضى الجراد الكسول معظم وقته مسترخياً. لا يحب العمل. اليوم، كان يستريح على شجرة عندما سمع صوتًا غريبًا. يريد أن يعرف ما هو. إنه ينظر من فوق سور الحديقة.



The middle

"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper. "Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?" "Thank you, but I need to carry on with my work," says the ant.

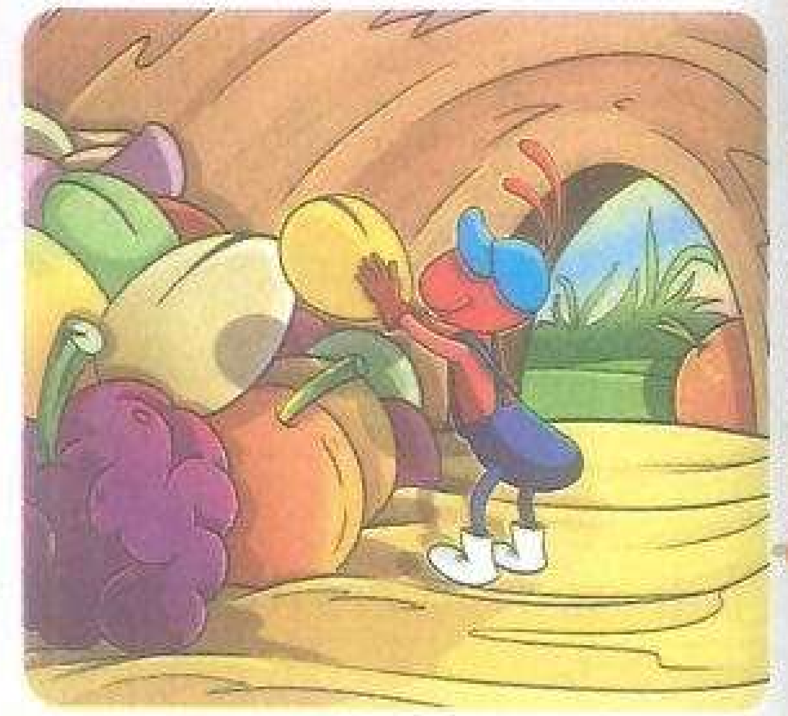
يسأل الجراد «ماذا تفعلين، أيتها النملة؟». تجيب النملة: «أنا أعمل». يقول الجراد: «إنه يوم جميل. لماذا لا تتوقفين عن العمل ويمكننا الحصول على بعض المرح؟ تقول النملة: «شكرًا لك، لكننى بحاجة إلى مواصلة العمل».



'But working is so boring,' replies the grasshopper. 'Maybe,' says the ant, 'but it's something we all have to do. We must think about the future, not just today.' The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away.

أجاب الجراد: «لكن العمل ممل جدًّا». تقول النملة: «ربما، لكن هذا شىء يجب علينا جميعًا القيام به. يجب أن نفكر فى المستقبل، ليس اليوم فقط». لم يفهم الجراد ولذا فقد قفز بعيدًا.





Soon, it is fall. The ant has worked hard and all her crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until he has harvested all the food and taken it inside for the winter.

سرعان ما حل الخريف. قد عملت النملة بجد، ونمت جميع محاصيلها بشكل جيد. لم تتوقف النملة عن العمل حتى حصدت كل الطعام وأخذته إلى الداخل لفصل الشتاء.

The end



Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on the ant's door.

"I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."

سريعًا، يأتي الشتاء ويكون باردًا جدًّا. الجراد جائع، ليس لديه أي طعام ولا يستطيع العثور على أي طعام. فجأة، يتذكر المحادثة التي أجراها مع النملة. طرق باب النملة: «أنا أفهمك الآن، أيتها النملة لقد عملت والآن لديك طعام. لم أعمل والآن أنا جائع. «ادخل»، تقول النملة: «نعم، من الجيد الاستمتاع، ولكن من المهم جداً أن تعمل بجد أيضًا».

The moral of the story

It's important to work to prepare for the future.

من المهم أن تعمل لتستعد للمستقبل.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 The (ant – butterfly – bee – grasshopper) spends his time relaxing.

2 The bees are (singing – shouting – buzzing – screaming) all the day.

3 The (schools – gardens – hospitals – libraries) are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat.

B Pronunciation



3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Diphthong: is a sound formed by the combination of two vowels in a single syllable.
صوت يتكون من مزيج من حرفين متحركين فى مقطع لفظى واحد.

/aɪ/		/ɔɪ/		/aʊ/	
why	لماذا	boy	ولد	down	أسفل
light	ضوء	enjoy	يستمتع	town	بلدة
buy	يشترى	noise	ضوضاء	brown	بنى
eye	عين	point	يشير	loud	صاخب
try	يحاول	toy	لعبة	mouse	فأر

The suffix "-ist" means 'someone who does something'. We often use it in words for jobs. اللاحقة ist- تعنى «الشخص الذى يقوم بفعل الشىء». غالبًا ما نستخدمها فى الكلمات التى تدل على الوظائف.

e.g. dent + ist = dentist



biologist
عالمة أحياء



journalist
صحفية



receptionist
موظف استقبال



pianist
عازفة بيانو



scientist
عالِم



dentist
طبيب أسنان

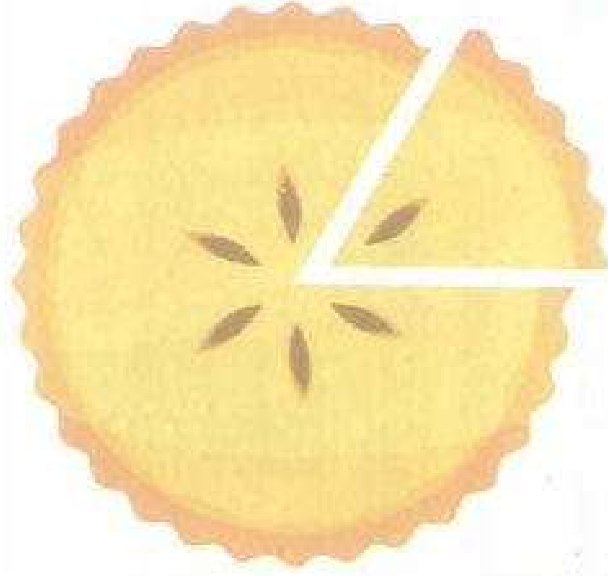


CLIL: Math

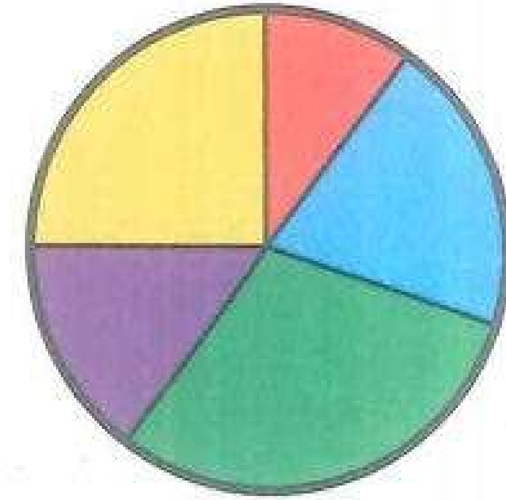


4. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

A pie chart is a way of showing information. المخطط الدائرى هو طريقة لإظهار المعلومات.



This is a pie.
هذه فطيرة.

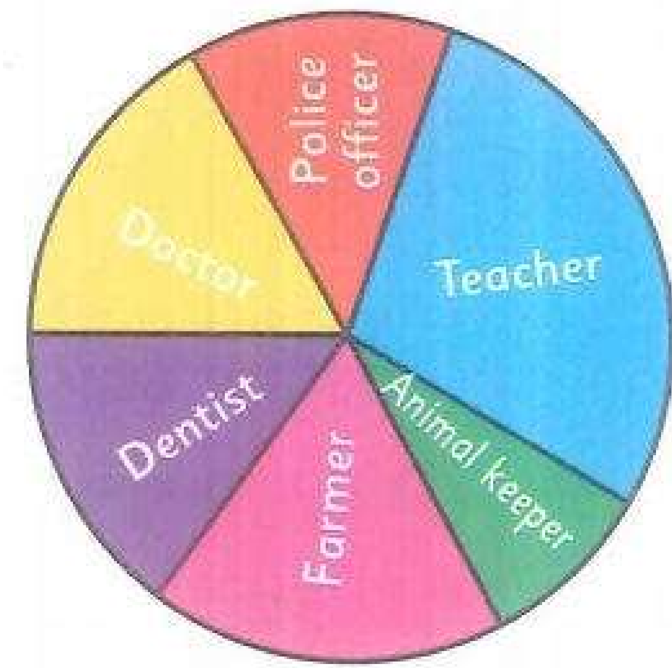


This is a pie chart.
هذا مخطط دائرى (يأخذ شكل الفطيرة).

e.g.

What job do you want to do?
ما الوظيفة التى تريد أن تقوم بها؟

police officer	16
teacher	24
farmer	20
animal keeper	8
dentist	13
doctor	19



Do you want to work indoors or outdoors?
هل تريد العمل فى الداخل أو فى الهواء الطلق؟

indoors	7
outdoors	3

Do you want to wear a uniform at work?
هل تريد ارتداء زى موحد فى العمل؟

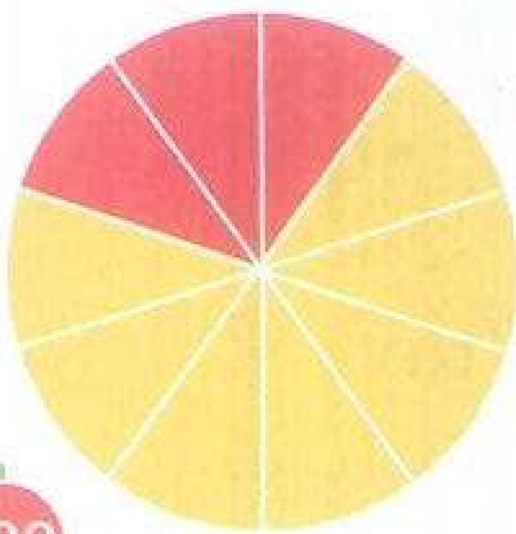
yes	2
no	8

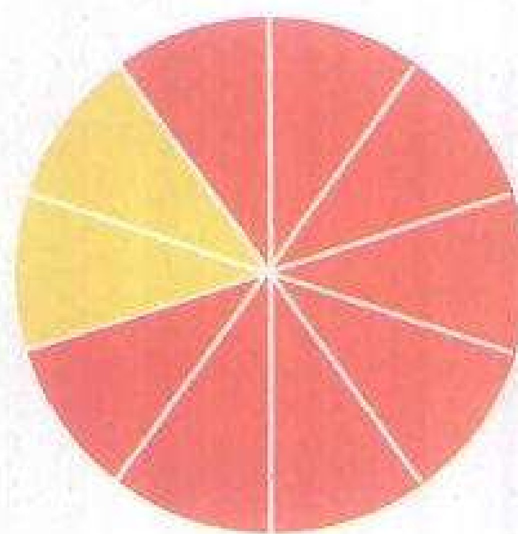
Do you want to work with animals?
هل تريد العمل مع الحيوانات؟

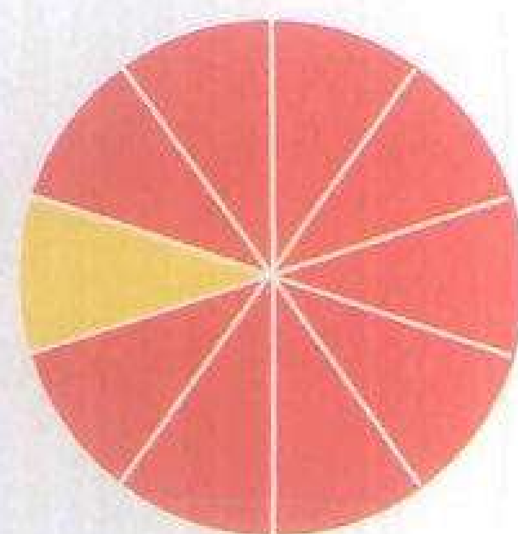
yes	1
no	9

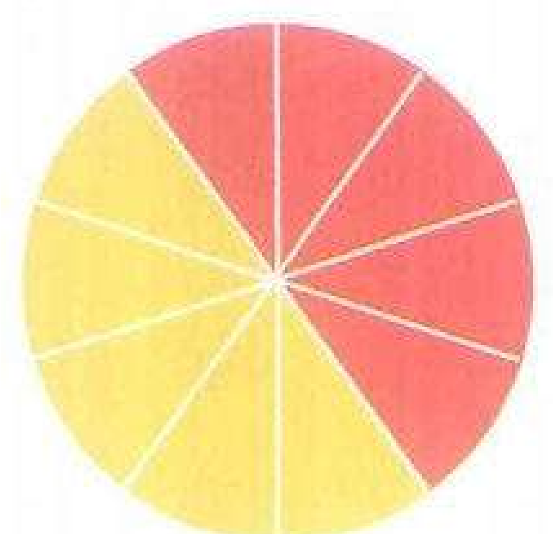
Do you want to work in an office?
هل تريد العمل فى مكتب؟

yes	5
no	5











Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 The grasshopper was ....

a) active b) lazy c) strange d) kind

2 The grasshopper thought work was ....

a) interesting b) exciting c) boring d) relaxing

3 Now, it's ...., and it is very cold.

a) summer b) fall c) spring d) winter

4 The grasshopper doesn't have any ....

a) food b) water c) time d) money

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ali .... on the door before he came in. الشرقية - إدارة غرب الزقازيق 2024

a) knocked b) understood c) came d) had

2 We .... crops when they grow.

a) shine b) spend c) hear d) harvest

3 I can't climb the garden .... because it is high. الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024

a) stairs b) fence c) table d) chair

4 The .... are buzzing all the day. البحيرة - إدارة إيتاي البارود 2024

a) snakes b) ants c) cats d) bees

5 The .... works in hotels. القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2024

a) doctor b) vet c) teacher d) receptionist

6 The .... takes care of our teeth.

a) biologist b) dentist c) scientist d) pianist

7 She is good at playing the piano. She is a .... الشرقية - إدارة أولاد صقر 2024

a) scientist b) pianist c) geologist d) journalist

8 A .... studies our bodies and all living things.

a) dentist b) journalist c) pianist d) biologist

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

dentist – receptionist – hotels – music – biologist

Different people have different jobs. The ....(1)............ works in hotels, offices, companies, and hospitals. He helps you with the information you need. The ....(2)............ takes care of our teeth. The ....(3)............ studies our bodies and all living things around us. The pianist studies ....(4)............ and plays the best music for us.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

A long time ago, an ant and a grasshopper lived in a garden. The grasshopper always spent his time relaxing in the garden. His friend, the ant, was always busy working. The grasshopper always made fun of the hardworking ant. Soon, the winter came. It was too cold, and the grasshopper was hungry. The ant was kind and let the grasshopper come in and gave him food. The grasshopper learned that it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The grasshopper always spent his time .... in the garden.

a) relaxing b) working c) harvesting d) planting

2 The underlined words 'have fun' mean ....

a) eat b) study c) sleep d) enjoy

B Answer the following questions:

3 What was the ant always doing?

....

4 What do you learn from the story?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 are – The – working – ants – hard. الإسكندرية – إدارة وسط 2024

....

2 like – The lazy – work – to – doesn't – grasshopper.

....

3 want – I – to – dentist – be – a. الإسكندرية – إدارة المنتزه 2024

....

4 the – think – future – We – about – must.

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 The grasshopper doesn t have any food

....

2 why don't you stop working

....



Lessons 4 & 5
Writing & Project





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

vet	طبيب بيطرى	computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	operation	عملية جراحية
office job	وظيفة مكتبية	school concert	حفلة مدرسية	teammate	زميل فى الفريق

Extra vocabulary

job	وظيفة	injured (adj.)	مُصاب	inside	بالداخل
dirty (adj.)	متسخ / قذر	countryside	الريف	the worst (adj.)	الأسوأ
outside	بالخارج	problems	مشاكل	team	فريق
the best	الأفضل	solutions	حلول	report	تقرير
teamwork	عمل جماعى	experiment	تجربة علمية	aim	هدف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـــة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
check	يفحص	checked	mind	يمانع	minded	scare	يخيف	scared
solve	يحل	solved	agree	يتفق	agreed	prefer	يفضل	preferred

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
get	يصبح	got	know	يعرف	knew	write	يكتب	wrote
read	يقرأ	read	bring	يُحضر	brought	win	يفوز	won

Expressions and Phrases

work with	يعمل مع	make ... better	يجعل ... بحالة أفضل	check on	يفحص/يتحقق من
I don't mind	أنا لا أمانع	I'm used to	أنا معتاد على	the worst part of	أسوأ جزء من
get sick	يمرض	in the night	فى الليل	get out of bed	ينهض من السرير
keen on	يحب	solving problems	حل المشاكل	I do both!	أنا أفعل كليهما!
work out	يحل / يكتشف	traveling long distances	السفر لمسافات طويلة	making new friends	تكوين صداقات جديدة
do an experiment	يجرى تجربة علمية	do something together	نقوم بشىء ما معًا	by yourself	بمفردك

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Rana is a vet, and she works with animals.
رنا طبيبة بيطرية، وتعمل مع الحيوانات.
* Rana works inside, and sometimes she goes to people's houses to check on animals.
تعمل رنا فى الداخل، وأحيانًا تذهب إلى بيوت الناس لتفحص الحيوانات.
* Sherif is a computer programmer, and he works in a team of 16 people.
شريف مبرمج كمبيوتر ويعمل ضمن فريق مكون من ١٦ شخصًا.
* They don't always agree, but they work out the best solutions.
لا يتفقون دائمًا، لكنهم يتوصلون إلى أفضل الحلول.



A Writing

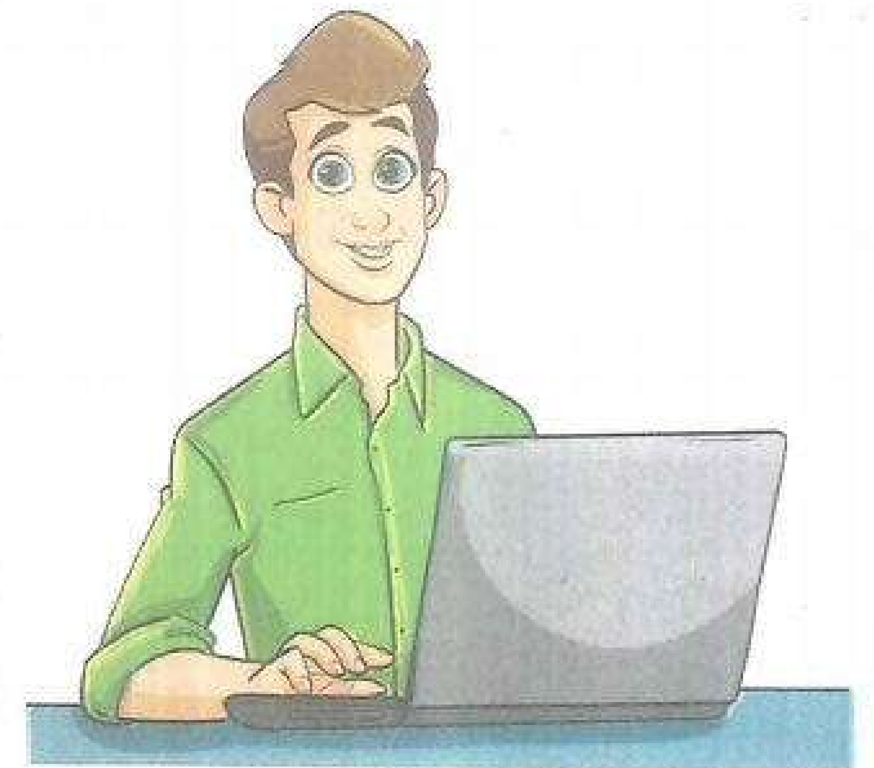
What are Rana and Sherif's jobs? ما هى وظائف رنا وشريف؟

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job.
If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better.
Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me.
If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very, very clean.
On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind!
What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

أنا أسمى رنا. أنا أعمل مع الحيوانات وأحب عملى. إذا كانت الحيوانات مريضة أو مصابة، فأنا أساعد فى جعلها أفضل. فى بعض الأيام أعمل فى الداخل ويحضر الناس حيواناتهم إلىّ. إذا احتاج حيوان إلى عملية جراحية، يجب أن تكون الغرفة نظيفة جدًّا جدًّا. فى أيام أخرى، أذهب إلى منازل الناس أو مزارعهم للاطمئنان على الحيوانات. يمكن أن تكون بعض الأماكن شديدة الاتساخ، لكنى لا أمانع! ما هو أسوأ جزء فى الوظيفة؟ عندما يمرض حيوان فى الليل ويكون علىّ أن أنهض من السرير!



Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job.
When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both!
I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.

مرحبًا أنا شريف. عندما كنت صغيرًا، علمت أننى لا أريد العمل مع الحيوانات. إنهم يخيفوننى! لا أحب أن أكون بالخارج، لذلك أردت الحصول على وظيفة مكتبية. عندما كنت صغيرًا، كنت أحب لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر. أنا أيضًا أستمتع حقًّا بحل المشاكل. لذلك، فى عملى أقوم بالأمرين! أنا أيضًا أستمتع بالعمل مع أشخاص آخرين. هناك ١٦ شخصًا فى فريقى. نحن لا نتفق دائمًا، لكننا نتوصل إلى أفضل الحلول.

Check

1 What does Rana like about working with animals? SB

....

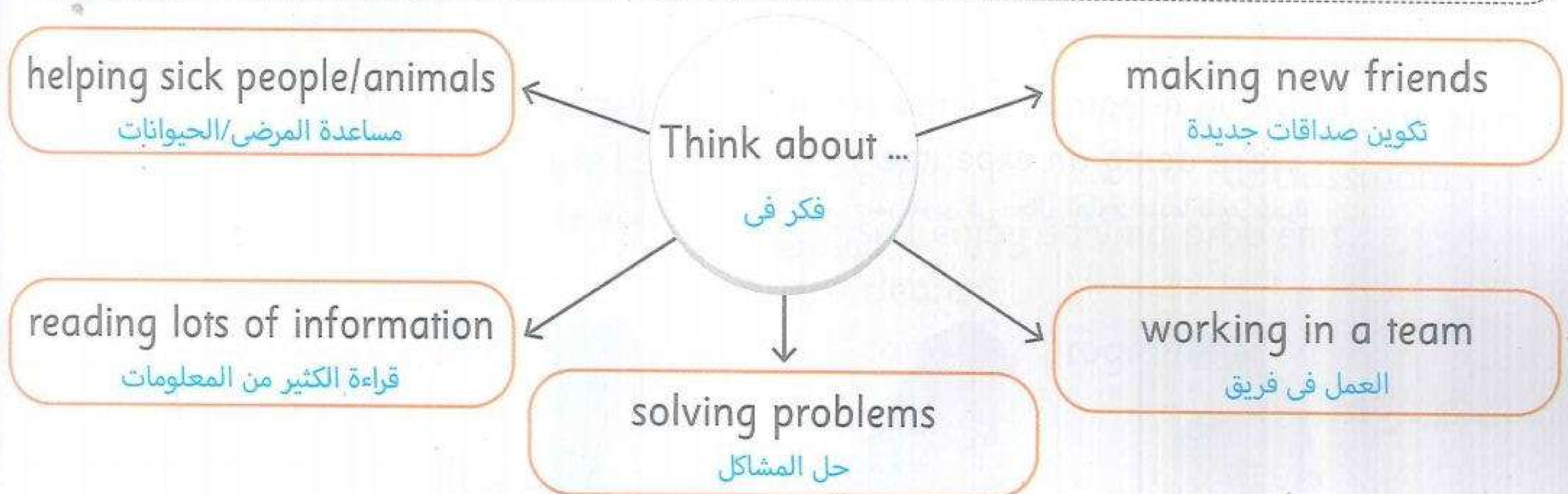
2 Why did Sherif not want to work with animals? SB

....

When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you like and dislike.
عندما تفكر فى وظيفة ماء من المهم أن تفكر فيما تحب وما لا يعجبك.



It's also important to think about what you're good at and what you're not so good at.
ومن المهم أيضًا أن تفكر فيما تجيده وما لا تجيده.



How to write about a job you want and a job you don't want:
كيفية الكتابة عن الوظيفة التى تريدها والوظيفة التى لا تريدها:

When I'm older, I want to be a (وظيفة تحبها) because (السبب). I think this is a good job for me because I like (ما تحب القيام به). I'm good at (مهارة تتقنها) and I enjoy (عمل تستمتع به). I don't want to be a (وظيفة لا تحبها) because I'm not good at (مهارة لا تتقنها). Also, I don't really enjoy (عمل لا تستمتع به).

e.g. When I'm older, I want to be a teacher of English because I like English. I think this is a good job for me because I like meeting new people. I'm good at reading lots of information and I enjoy teaching. I don't want to be an engineer because I'm not good at solving problems. Also, I don't really enjoy being outside.



Project

Teamwork العمل الجماعى



3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Teamwork



I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment.

أنا أعمل ضمن فريق فى مجال العلوم عندما نقوم بإجراء تجربة علمية.



I work in a team when I'm playing football.

أنا أعمل فى فريق عندما ألعب كرة القدم.



I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.

أعمل ضمن فريق عندما أساعد أمى فى المطبخ بالمنزل.



I work in a team for the school concert.

أنا أعمل فى فريق الحفلة المدرسية.

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together. For example, the aim of a football team is to win. You work with teammates to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself!

عندما تعمل فى فريق، فأنت تعمل مع أشخاص آخرين للقيام بشىء ما معًا. على سبيل المثال، هدف فريق كرة القدم هو الفوز. أنت تعمل مع زملائك فى الفريق للقيام بذلك. لا يمكنك الفوز بمباراة كرة قدم بمفردك!

Practice



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 When you work in ...., you work with other people.
a) a room b) a team c) a game d) a class

2 I always work with my friends. We work ....
a) yourself b) alone c) together d) myself

3 I asked my mom to let me play and she ....
a) talked b) checked c) agreed d) scared

4 I don't like dogs. They .... me.
a) scare b) help c) love d) like

5 We're in the science team. We're doing a/an ....
a) cake b) experiment c) meal d) concert

6 She practices hard for the final match to ....
a) win b) lose c) grow d) fly

7 I work in a team for the school .... We play music together.
a) concert b) team c) exam d) classroom

8 I want to be a .... because I enjoy solving problems.
a) nurse b) cleaner
c) gardener d) computer programmer

9 A .... helps sick animals. الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب 2024
a) scribe b) craftsman c) teacher d) vet

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

office – solutions – problems – programmer – game

I'm Sherif. I'm a computer ....(1).......... . I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an ....(2).......... job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving ....(3).......... . I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best ....(4).......... .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very clean. On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind! The worst part of the job is when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 The word "injured" gives the same meaning of being ....
a) strong b) hurt c) well d) healthy

2 Rana's job is to check on the ....
a) students b) animals c) subjects d) houses

B Answer the following questions:

3 How must the room be before an operation?

....

4 What's the worst part of Rana's job?

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 keen – I – outside – on – being – am not.

....

2 work – We – out – the – solutions – best.

....

3 win – by yourself – You – a football – can't – match.

....

4 didn't – animals – I – to – work – want – with.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

do you want to work with animals الشرقية – إدارة أبو كبير 2024

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"A job you want to do" بورسعيد 2024 مجاب عنه صفحة 309

What is it? – Why do you want to do it? – Is it important?

....
....
....
....
....

Unit 5 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

scribe	كاتب	trader	تاجر
grains	حبوب	craftsmen/ craftspeople	حرفيون
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	records	سجلات
ancient	قديم	successful	ناجح
flax	بذور الكتان	paintings	رسومات
jewelry	مجوهرات	sculptures	منحوتات
sandals	صنادل	pharaohs	فراعنة
female ruler	الحاكمة	signs	علامات
cooking pot	إناء الطبخ	lists	قوائم

Lesson (2)

a marine ecosystem	نظام بيئى بحرى	a freshwater ecosystem	نظام بيئى للمياه العذبة
a desert ecosystem	نظام بيئى صحراوى	a rockpool ecosystem	نظام بيئى لبركة الصخور
crab	سرطان البحر	seaweed	أعشاب بحرية
rocks	صخور	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
source	مصدر	natural world	عالم الطبيعة
connected	متصل	connection	اتصال
Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون الاستوائية	shelter	مأوى (ملجأ)

Lesson (3)

grasshopper	جراد	relaxing	مسترخ
fence	سور	boring	ممل
spring	فصل الربيع	fields	حقول
lovely	رائع	butterflies	فراشات
lazy	كسول	fall	فصل الخريف
conversation	محادثة	future	مستقبل
surprised	متفاجئ	moral	الدرس الأخلاقى
winter	فصل الشتاء	strange	غريب
journalist	صحفية	scientist	عالم
receptionist	موظف استقبال	dentist	طبيب أسنان
biologist	عالمة أحياء	pianist	عازفة بيانو

Lessons (4 & 5)

vet	طبيب بيطرى	computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
operation	عملية جراحية	office job	وظيفة مكتبية
school concert	حفلة مدرسية	teammate	زميل فى الفريق
injured	مصاب	dirty	متسخ / قذر
countryside	الريف	problems	مشاكل
team	فريق	solutions	حلول
report	تقرير	teamwork	عمل جماعى
experiment	تجربة علمية	aim	هدف

Language Focus

The Present Simple Tense

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ You/ They	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .
He/ She/ It	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) + (s/ es/ ies) ... .

e.g. I drive to work at 10 am.

He cuts the vegetables with a sharp knife.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

I/ We/ You/ They	don't	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .
He/ She/ It	doesn't	

e.g. I don't drink milk.

He doesn't walk to school.

must / mustn't

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject | must | (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر)... .

e.g. I must buy some bananas.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject | mustn't (must not) | (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر)... .

e.g. He mustn't eat in the classroom.

Unit 5 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

طبيب	....	حرفى	....
اللغة الهيروغليفية	....	كاتب	....
حبوب	....	تاجر	....
معبد	....	سجلات	....

Lesson 2

سرطان البحر	....	صخور	....
مصدر	....	رمال	....
ضوء الشمس	....	مأوى/ ملجأ	....
متصل	....	أعشاب بحرية	....
النظم البيئية	....	حشرة	....

Lesson 3

جراد	....	مسترخٍ	....
سور	....	ممل	....
لعبة	....	بلدة	....
الدرس الأخلاقى	....	فأر	....
ضوء	....	ضوضاء	....
فصل الشتاء	....	عالمة أحياء	....
صحفى	....	موظف استقبال	....
عازفة بيانو	....	عالِم	....

Lessons 4 & 5

طبيب بيطرى	....	مشاكل	....
مبرمج كمبيوتر	....	حلول	....
عملية جراحية	....	عمل جماعى	....
وظيفة مكتبية	....	فريق	....
حفلة مدرسية	....	تجربة علمية	....
زميل فى الفريق	....	مصاب	....

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a job in Ancient Egypt:

1. Ancient Egyptian (الوظيفة) were (صفة) ... .
2. They made (مصنوعات) ... .
3. They used to (أعمال قاموا بها) ... .
4. They used (خامات استخدموها) to make (مصنوعات قاموا بها) ... .

Craftsmen

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good. They made beautiful paintings, beautiful gold jewelry, and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold. They used the gold to make beautiful jewelry.

How to write about ecosystems:

1. An ecosystem is (تعريف النظام البيئى) ... .
2. Ecosystems can be (صفة), like (اسم النظام البيئى) ... .
3. They can be (صفة), like (اسم النظام البيئى) ... .
4. The living things in a (اسم النظام البيئى) are (أسماء الكائنات الحية) ... .
5. The non-living things are (أسماء الكائنات غير الحية) ... .

Ecosystems

An ecosystem is all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool. They can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight.

How to write about a job you want to do:

1. I want to be (اسم الوظيفة) ... .
2. I don't like (أشياء لا تحب القيام بها) ... .
3. I like (أشياء تحب القيام بها) ... .
4. I'm good at (أشياء تجيد القيام بها) ... .
5. I'm not good at (أشياء لا تجيد القيام بها) ... .

A job I want to do

I want to be a computer programmer.
I wanted an office job. I don't like to work with animals. I don't like being outside.
I like playing computer games. I also really like solving problems. I'm good at working with other people and numbers.
I'm not good at studying science.

Unit 5 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة

1 Match the words to their meanings:

A

1 living
2 non-living
3 ecosystem
4 rockpool

B

a. (   ) something that isn't alive
b. (   ) all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place
c. (   ) a small area of water that may contain rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.
d. (   ) something that is alive

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the present simple:

1 Mrs Soha .... (work) in a school.
2 My sister .... (study) at Mansoura University.
3 We .... (play) computer games on the weekend.
4 I .... (eat) yogurt and cheese for breakfast.
5 Mr Said .... (catch) the bus to Cairo every morning.

3 Complete the sentences with (must) or (mustn't):

1 I .... do my English homework. √
2 You .... walk on the grass. X
3 You .... look after the environment. √
4 Nadim .... tidy up the kitchen. √
5 Nahla .... wake her sick brother up. X
6 You .... forget to take a hat today. X





Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Ecosystems can be small, like a/an ....
a) desert b) forest c) rockpool d) island

2 Ecosystems can be ...., like the Amazon rainforest.
a) small b) short c) big d) high

3 The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and ....
a) water b) seaweed c) ships d) rocks

4 Animals and plants need food, water, and shelter to ....
a) travel b) survive c) swim d) fly



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: 4

1 .... are good at making things by their hands. الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس 2024
a) Scribes b) Farmers c) Craftsmen d) Fruit

2 A .... is a person who could read and write. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024
a) scribe b) carpenter c) fisherman d) farmer

3 A .... in Ancient Egypt bought and sold things like gold. الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024
a) trader b) scribe c) vet d) fisherman

4 Fish and .... are living things. الشرقية -إدارة منيا القمح 2024
a) crabs b) rocks c) sunlight d) sand

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

aim – teammates – team – science – maths

I'm Mahmoud. I work in a team in ....(1)............ when we're doing an experiment. When you work in a ....(2)............, you work with other people to do something together. For example, the ....(3)............ of a football team is to win. You work with your ....(4)............ to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself!

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

Hello, I'm Ahmed. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was

young, I loved playing computer games. I also enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Ahmed didn't want to work with ....

a) computers   b) science   c) animals   d) balls

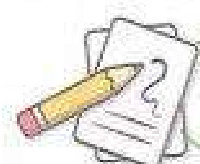
2 Ahmed loved playing .... games when he was young.

a) football   b) basketball   c) computer   d) handball

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why didn't Ahmed want to work with animals? ....

4 How many people are there in Ahmed's team? ....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 like – pots – making – We – clay – from. بورسعيد 2024

....

2 eat – You – in – mustn't – the – classroom. الشرقية – إدارة ههيا 2024

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 Walid must .... (cleans) the hippos' teeth.

2 She (wash) .... the dishes every day. الشرقية – إدارة فاقوس 2024

7 Punctuate the following: 1

what's the color of your karate suit

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5



Jobs in Ancient Egypt

worked hard – most people worked as

....

....

....

....



Assess your progress ★★★★★

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 5 AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحه على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Ancient Egyptian (traders – doctors – craftsmen) were very good.

2 They made beautiful (silver – gold – wood) jewelry and sculptures.

3 They used to (weave – buy – sell) beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 (Traders – Scribes – Fishermen) in Ancient Egypt knew how to read and write well.

2 Sunlight and rocks are (living – non-living – plant) things.

3 (Ecosystem – Sunlight – Rockpool) means all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place.

4 My sister (study – studies – studying) at Mansoura University.

5 You (must – mustn't – does) take your umbrella. It is raining.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 many – Scribes – hieroglyphics – learning – years – spent.

....

2 the – Everything – connected – world – in – natural – is.

....

3 food, – Animals – and – water, – shelter – need.

....

4 the – Walid – looks – hippos – after.

....

5 to – important – It's – work – hard – very.

....

Unit 6 What's the weather like?

ما هى حالة الطقس؟



Unit Overview

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
  - listen, read, research, and write about the weather.
  - read and listen to a short story about a heat wave.
  - use adverbs of frequency with the present simple.
  - understand a dialog about water pollution.
  - learn to distinguish the /p/ and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words.
  - write an account of extreme weather.
  - research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather.

- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**
  - يستمع، يقرأ، يبحث ويكتب عن الطقس.
  - يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة عن موجة حارة.
  - يستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط.
  - يفهم محادثة عن تلوث المياه.
  - يتعلم أن يميز بين صوتى الـ/p/ و/b/ والحروف الصامتة فى الكلمات.
  - يكتب بيانًا / وصفًا عن الطقس القاسى.
  - يبحث ويصمم نشرة عما يجب أن يفعله فى الطقس القاسى.

Did you know?

- The hottest day ever in Egypt was 51.1°C, in Aswan.

Find out!

- Heavy rain, strong winds, and *thunderstorms happened in Egypt in March 2020. Airports and *highways were closed. Schools and some government offices were closed, too.

* thunderstorms	عواصف رعدية	* highways	الطرق السريعة



Lesson 1
The weather
الطقس



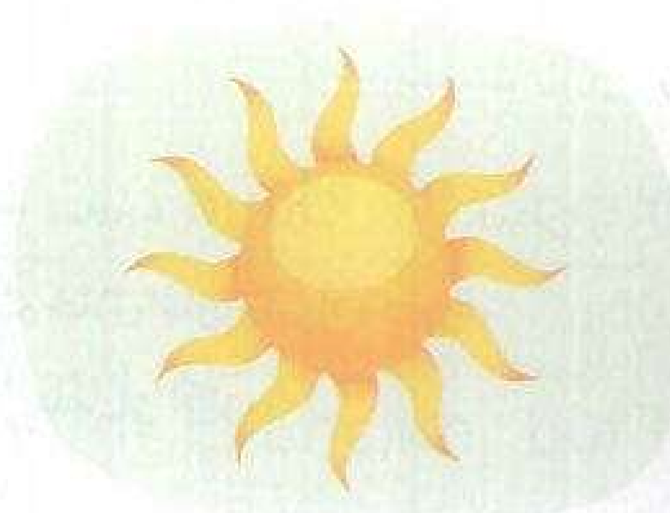
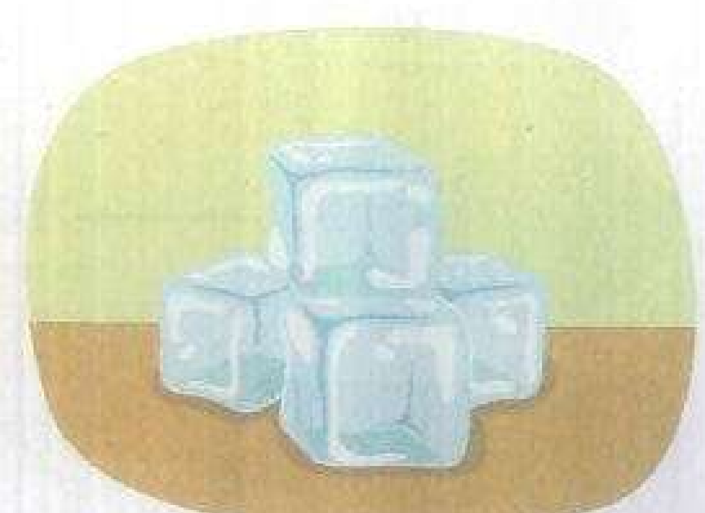


1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary

			
cloud سحابة	rain مطر	snow جليد	rainbow قوس قزح
			
storm عاصفة	wind رياح	sun شمس	ice ثلج
			
windy عاصف	rainy ممطر	cloudy غائم	sunny مشمس

Extra vocabulary

weather	طقس	weatherwoman	مذيعة النشرة الجوية	news	أخبار
normal (adj.)	طبيعي	finally	أخيرًا	variety	تنوع
although	بالرغم من	dry (adj.)	جاف	summers	فصول الصيف
temperature	درجة الحرارة	degrees	درجات	winters	فصول الشتاء
cooler (adj.)	أكثر برودة	special (adj.)	خاص/ مميز	climate	مناخ
warm (adj.)	دافئ	little (adj.)	قليل	south	الجنوب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
rain	تمطر	rained	believe	يصدق	believed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
bring	يحضر	brought	mean	يعنى	meant

Expressions and Phrases

It's going to be ...	من المتوقع أن ...	What about?	ماذا عن؟
Stay at home!	ابق فى المنزل!	goes to	تصل إلى
goes down to	تنخفض إلى	keep cool/warm	يبقى باردًا / دافئًا
in the day	فى فترة النهار	at night	فى فترة الليل
per year	سنويًا	by the sea	بجانب البحر
eight times more	أكثر بثمانى مرات	that's why	ولذلك

Take care!

- تتكون بعض الصفات بإضافة حرف الـ (y) للأسماء.

e.g. rain مطر ⟶ rainy ممطر   cloud سحابة ⟶ cloudy غائم

- الطقس (weather) حدث محدد - مثل عاصفة أو يوم حار - يحدث خلال فترة زمنية قصيرة.
- المناخ (climate) هو متوسط الأحوال الجوية فى مكان على مدى ٣٠ عامًا أو أكثر.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. لدينا تنوع جميل فى الطقس فى مصر.
* We have very hot summers and cooler winters. لدينا فصول صيف حارة جدا وفصول شتاء أكثر برودة.
* In the desert, people try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.
  فى الصحراء، يحاول الناس الحفاظ على البرودة فى النهار والدفء فى الليل.
* It doesn't often rain in Cairo. لا تمطر كثيرًا فى القاهرة.
* The Nile is so important for Egypt because it brings the water from the south.
  نهر النيل مهم جداً لمصر لأنه يجلب الماء من الجنوب.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 When the air is strong, it's always (rainy – windy – sunny – cloudy).
2 It's (snowy – cloudy – hot – sunny) today. Let's go out and enjoy the sun.
3 The (rainbow – ice – storm – wind) has seven colors.
4 We didn't see the sun because it was so (hot – cloudy – sunny – shiny).
5 It's (cold – windy – icy – sunny) in Cairo today. It's 10 °C.
6 Take your umbrella; it is (cloudy – windy – rainy – cold) outside.

Listening script page 90 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



Weatherwoman



Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.

صباح الخير جميعًا! أحمل لكم أخبار الطقس في مصر اليوم. سيكون الجو ممطرًا في القاهرة.



Presenter



Rainy in Cairo? How often does it rain in Cairo? It's always sunny there!

ممطر في القاهرة؟ كم مرة تمطر في القاهرة؟ الجو دائمًا مشمس هناك!



Weatherwoman



I know, but today it's rainy.

أعلم، لكن الطقس اليوم ممطر.

Presenter

What about Sharm El-Sheikh?

ماذا عن شرم الشيخ؟



Weatherwoman



It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.

الجو ليس باردًا أبدًا في شرم الشيخ، ولكن لدينا اليوم بعض الجليد.



Presenter

I don't believe it! What about Alexandria?

لا أصدق ذلك! ماذا عن الإسكندرية؟



Weatherwoman



It's going to be windy. That's normal – it is sometimes windy in Alexandria.

سيكون عاصفًا. هذا طبيعي - أحيانًا يكون الجو عاصفًا في الإسكندرية.



Presenter

Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor?

حسنًا، شكرًا لك. وأخيرًا ماذا عن الأقصر؟



Weatherwoman



Oh, this is very important: Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

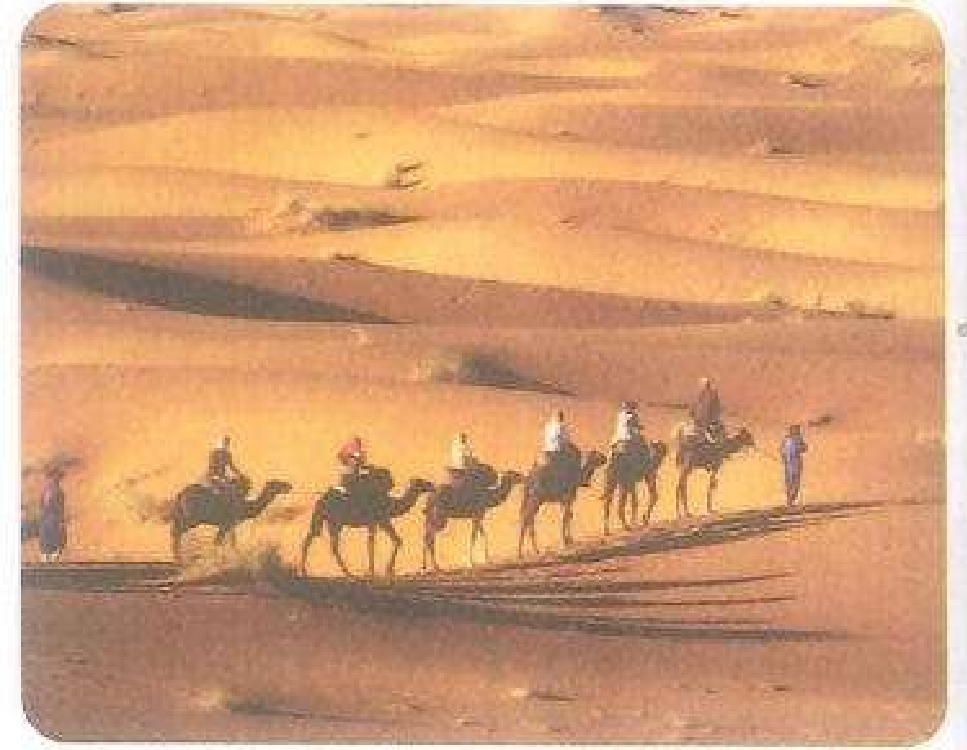
أوه، هذا مهم جدًا: الأقصر ستواجه عاصفة، لذا ابق في المنزل!





3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The weather in Egypt الطقس فى مصر



We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 °C.
The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights. The temperature can go to 0 °C. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

لدينا تنوع رائع فى الطقس فى مصر، بالرغم من أنه عادة ما يكون جافة جدًّا. لدينا صيف حار جدًّا وتصل درجة الحرارة فى بعض الأحيان إلى 50 درجة فى بعض الأماكن! الشتاء لدينا أكثر برودة، ويمكن أن تنخفض درجات الحرارة وصولًا إلى حوالى 12 درجة. تتمتع الصحراء بمناخ خاص جدًّا، مع أيام حارة جدًّا وليالٍ شديدة البرودة. تصل درجة الحرارة إلى صفر درجة مئوية. هذا يعنى أن الناس الذين يعيشون فى الصحراء يحاولون أن يبقوا باردين نهاراً ودافئين ليلاً.



It doesn't often rain in Cairo – there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London:
London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south.
By the sea, it rains a lot more – Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

القاهرة لا تمطر كثيرًا- يوجد حوالى 25 ملم فقط من المطر كل عام. إنها قليلة جدًّا عندما تنظر إلى لندن: لندن لديها حوالى 600 ملم لكل عام. الآن يمكنك أن ترى لماذا النيل مهم جدًّا للجميع فى مصر. إنه يجلب الماء من الجنوب.
بجانب البحر، تمطر أكثر بكثير. الإسكندرية تمطر حوالى ثمانى مرات أكثر من القاهرة. هذا هو السبب فى أنها خضراء جدًّا!

Did you know?

°C is short for "degrees Celsius". °Cهى اختصار لـ «درجة مئوية».

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 In the desert, people try to keep (cool – warm – cold – hot) at night.
2 (London – Cairo – Alexandria – Aswan) has 25 mm of rain per year.
3 Alexandria has around (eight – six – ten – three) times more rain than Cairo.

Practice



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Amira's .... is a weatherman.

a) brother b) father c) uncle d) son

2 It is going to rain in .... today.

a) Alexandria b) Luxor c) Cairo d) Aswan

3 It is going to be very .... in Alexandria today.

a) windy b) cloudy c) snowy d) rainy

4 In Luxor, they are going to have a ....

a) rainbow b) storm c) rain d) wind

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I think it's going to rain. It's very ....

a) sunny b) warm c) hot d) cloudy

2 A: What about the .... in Alexandria? B: It's very cold today.

a) food b) weather c) sports d) traffic

3 The .... are cooler in Egypt.

a) winters b) springs c) summers d) falls

4 It's hot in Luxor. It's always .... in Luxor.

a) cloudy b) rainy c) sunny d) windy

5 After it rains, we can see the .... in the sky. المنوفية - ادارة سرس الليان 2024

a) fire b) rainbow c) ring d) sand

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

night – like – cooler – summers – climate

There is a very nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot ....(1)........... . The temperature can sometimes go up to 50 °C. Winters are ....(2)........... in Egypt. The temperature can go down to around 12 °C. The desert has a very special ....(3)........... . The temperature can go to 0 °C at ....(4)........... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. In Cairo, it doesn't often rain; there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now, you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south. By the sea, it rains a lot more – Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about the ....

a) foods b) clothes c) weather d) people

2 The underlined word "Nile" is a ....

a) lake b) river c) sea d) pond

B Answer the following questions:

3 How much does it rain in London per year?

....

4 Why is the Nile important for Egypt?

....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 does – in – How – Cairo – it – often – rain?

....

2 to – °C – The temperature – goes – 50 – sometimes – up.

....

3 brings – the – The Nile – the south – from – water.

....

4 in – hot – It's – the – very – summer. القاهرة – إدارة حلوان 2024

....

6 Punctuate the following:

1 london has about 600 mm per year

....

2 What about luxor

....



Lessons 2 & 3



A My heat wave story قصتى للموجة الحارة



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary


tornado
إعصار


tidal wave
موجة عارمة


strong winds /storm
رياح شديدة / عاصفة


sandstorm
عاصفة رملية


flood
فيضان


heat wave
موجة حارة

Extra vocabulary

season	فصل من فصول السنة	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	shade	ظل
store	متجر	watermelon	بطيخة	grapes	عنب
lemon	ليمون	lemonade	عصير الليمون	suddenly	فجأة
kind (adj.)	طيب / عطوف	lady	سيدة	son	ابن
worried (adj.)	قلقان	reply	رد	quiet (adj.)	هادئ
voice	صوت (إنسان)	floor	أرضية	nearby	بالقرب من

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
happen	يحدث	happened	stay	يبقى	stayed
pass	يمر بـ	passed	knock	يطرق / يخبط	knocked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
become	يصبح / يتحول	became	hear	يسمع	heard
fall	يسقط	fell	lie	يمدد	lay

Expressions and Phrases

goes very high	ترتفع جدًّا	to cool us down	لتبريدنا
come back	يعود	on the shady side	على الجانب المظلل
past all our friends' houses	مرورًا بمنازل كل أصدقائنا	hear a cry	يسمع صرخة
in her 70s	فى السبعينيات من عمرها	in the day	فى النهار
a bit open	مفتوح قليلًا	at first	فى البداية
what to do	ما الذى يجب أن نفعله؟	come running	يأتى مسرعًا
get ... onto a chair	يضع ... على كرسى	feel ill	يشعر بالتعب
fell down	تسقط أرضًا	lying on the floor	ملقاة على الأرضية



Find out!

Egypt had the coldest weather in the last ten years in January 2022. It was very cold during the daytime and frost at night for up to a month.

شهدت مصر أبرد طقس منذ عشر سنوات فى يناير ٢٠٢٢. كان الطقس شديد البرودة فى النهار وصقيعًا فى الليل لمدة تصل إلى شهر.



عند إضافة الـ (ing) للفعل (lie)، فإنه يتحول إلى (lying).

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 When there's lots of water in the streets, it's a (tornado – heat wave – flood – sandstorm).

2 There are four (seasons – months – weeks – winters) in a year.

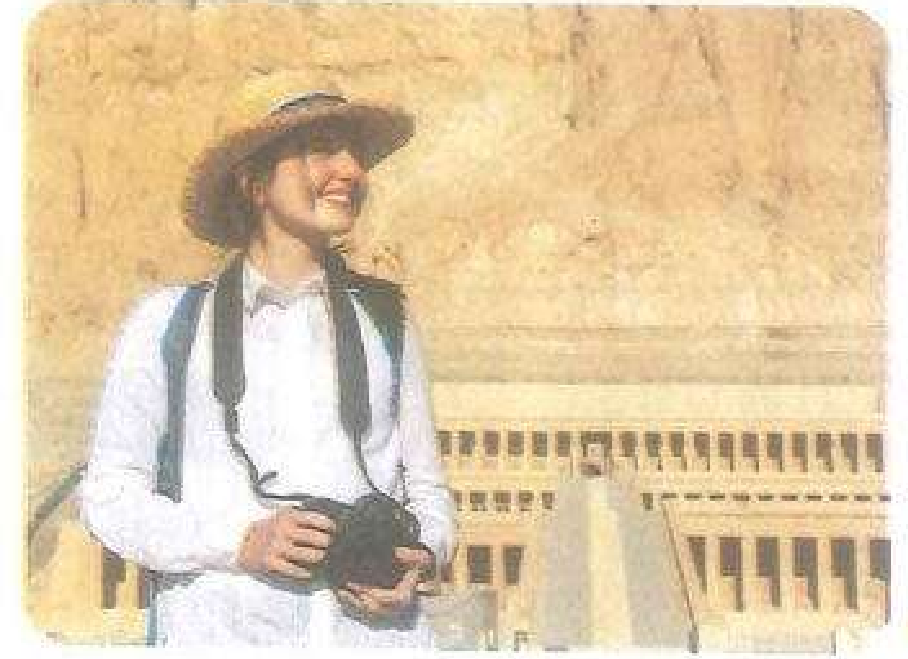
3 I can't see anything in the (tidal wave – sandstorm – wind – flood). The dust is in my eyes.

4 We can drink (potato – lemonade – coffee – tea) when it's so hot.



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning



The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees celcius, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side of the street, and past all our friends' houses.

الصيف شديد الحرارة أصبح موجة حارة. تحدث الموجة الحارة عندما ترتفع درجة الحرارة بشكل كبير فوق ٤٠ درجة، ولا يستطيع أحد فعل أى شىء. بقينا فى الظل وحاولنا شرب الكثير من الماء. طلبت أمى منى ومن صديقتى لمياء الذهاب إلى المتجر لشراء البطيخ والعنب والليمون لصنع عصير الليمون لتبريدنا. ذهبنا إلى المتجر. عدنا على الجانب المظلل من الشارع، ومررنا على منازل أصدقائنا.

The middle

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open, so we knocked and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!' We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said. At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works nearby. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit.

فجأة ونحن نمر على منزل السيدة سهير سمعنا صرخة. السيدة سهير سيدة طيبة للغاية فى السبعينيات من عمرها وتعيش مع ابنها، لكنه يذهب إلى العمل فى النهار. شعرت أنا ولمياء بالقلق وكان باب السيدة سهير مفتوحًا بعض الشىء، لذلك طرقنا ونادينا «السيدة سهير!». فى البداية لم يكن هناك رد، ثم سمعنا صوتًا هادئًا، «أنا هنا!» ذهبنا إلى المطبخ وكانت على الأرض! قالت: «ساعدونى» فى البداية، لم نكن نعرف ما الذى يجب أن نفعله. لكننى بعد ذلك ركضت إلى الخارج ورأيت السيد منيب الذى يعمل فى الجوار. ناديت «سيد منيب، من فضلك ساعد السيدة سهير!». جاء السيد منيب راكضًا. ساعدنا جميعًا فى حمل السيدة سهير على كرسى، ثم أعطيناها الكثير من الماء وبعض الفاكهة.

The end

She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and fell down because it was so hot. She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!

قالت إنها كانت ذاهبة إلى المطبخ للحصول على بعض الماء، لكنها شعرت بالتعب وسقطت على الأرض؛ لأن الجو كان شديد الحرارة. لم تستطع النهوض. كانت سعيدة للغاية؛ لأننا سمعناها وكنا سعداء لأننا استطعنا مساعدتها!

Check

1 What did mom ask them to buy? Why?

....

2 Why do you think Mrs Sohair fell down in her kitchen? SB

....

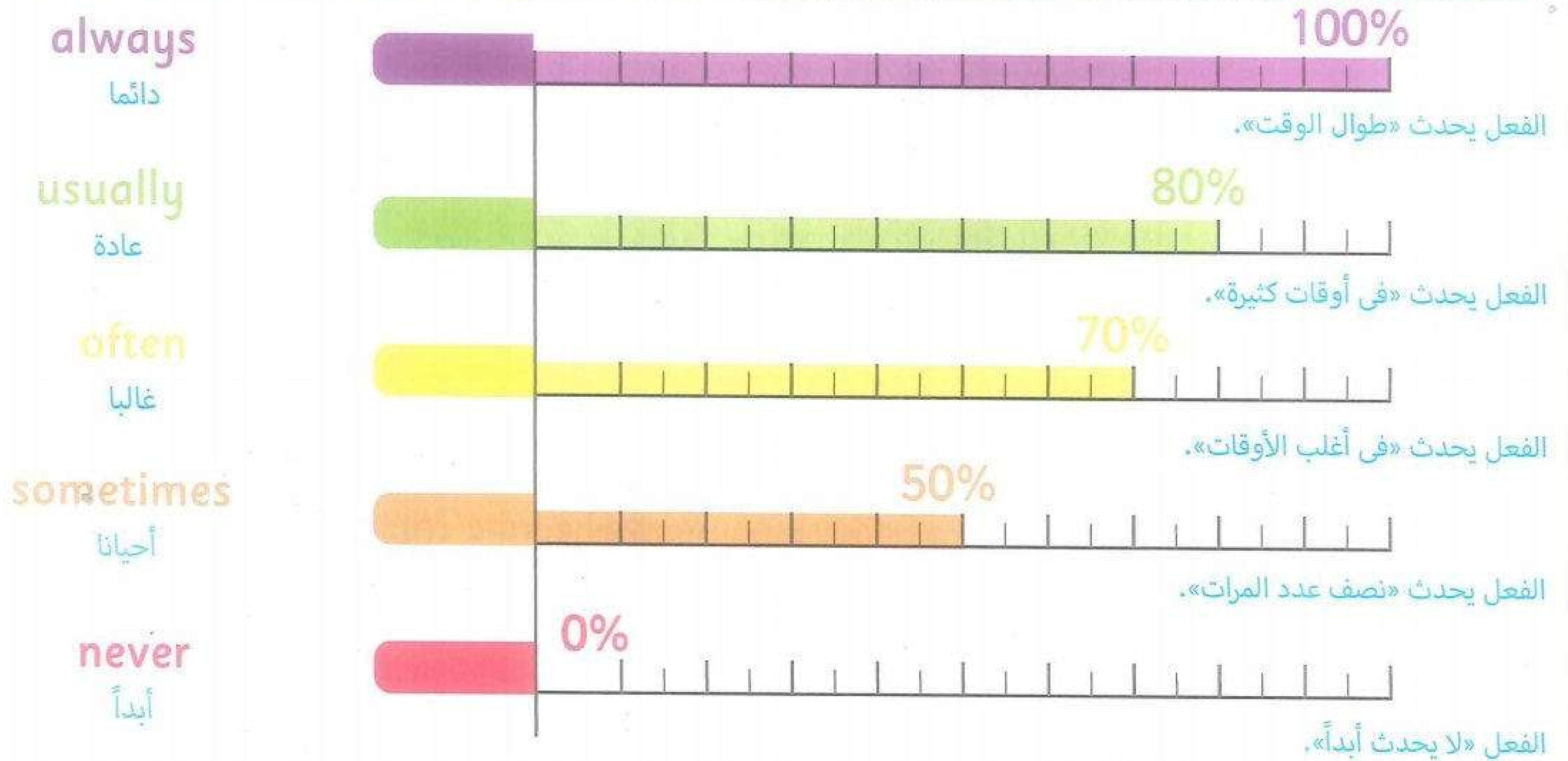


Language Focus

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things.

تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط لنقول كم مرة نقوم بعمل الأشياء.



Form: التكوين

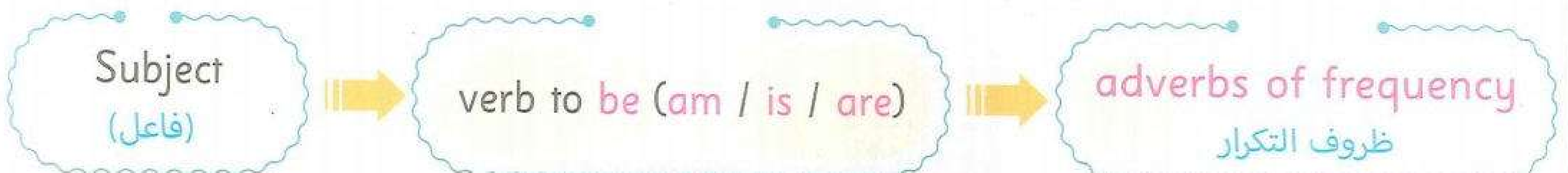


e.g. I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays.

Ahmed usually plays football.

We never go to school on Friday.

لاحظ أن (verb to be) يسبق ظروف التكرار:



e.g. I'm always in bed at 11 pm.

Remember

The Present Simple

- I / We / They / You { (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... . / don't + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .
- He / She / It { (inf.) + (s, es, ies) ... . / doesn't + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .

Wh-questions with "How often ...?" in the present simple tense:

السؤال باستخدام أداة الاستفهام «كم مرة...؟» فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

Question

How often → do + (I/we/they/you) / does + (he/she/it) → (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ...?

Answer

Subject + (always / usually / often / sometimes / never) + main verb ... .

OR

Subject + (am / is / are) + (always/ usually/ often/ sometimes/ never) ... .

e.g.

A: How often do you play tennis?
B: I never play tennis. I can't play!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. I (never – always – often – usually) watch TV. I watch it every day.
2. She (often – always – never – sometimes) drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
3. I usually (visit – visits – visiting – to visit) my grandma on Fridays.
4. She usually (watch – watches – watching – to watch) cartoon movies.
5. She (doesn't – don't – isn't – aren't) speak English.
6. I (doesn't – don't – isn't – aren't) go to the park on Sundays.
7. A: How (tall – often – many – much) do you go swimming? B: Sometimes.
8. I get up at five o'clock seven days a week. I (never – usually – always – sometimes) get up early.
9. How often does he (plays – play – playing – played) video games?
10. It's always hot and sunny. That's why I (always – usually – never – often) see snow.



Pronunciation



3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



We make the sounds /p/ and /b/ at the front of our mouths, by pressing our lips together. But they are very different.

نصنع الأصوات /p/ و /b/ فى مقدمة أفواهنا، بالضغط على شفاهنا معًا. لكنهما مختلفان جدًّا.

Pp
/p/

The /p/ sound is unvoiced. This means air comes out of our mouth when we say it. When you say /p/, the paper moves.

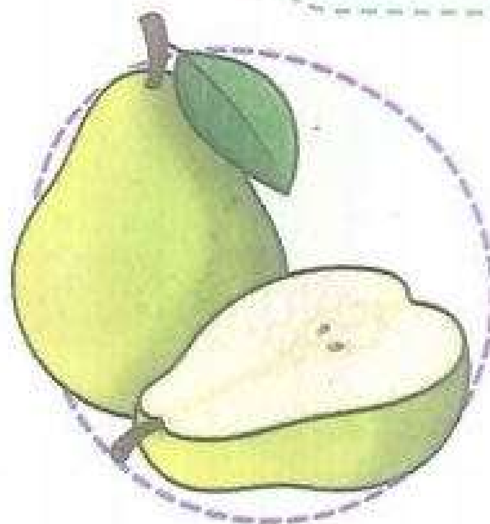
الصوت /p/ غير مسموع. هذا يعنى أن الهواء يخرج من أفواهنا عندما نقول ذلك. عندما تقول /p/ تتحرك الورقة.



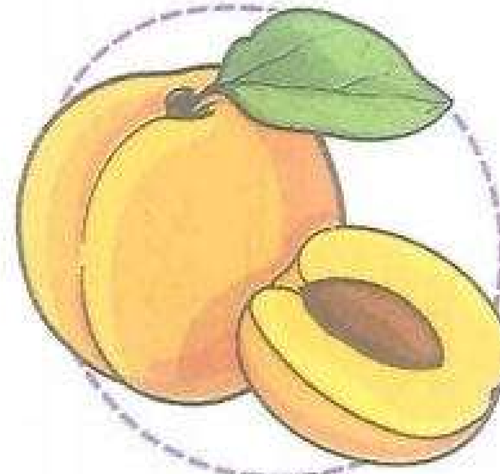
Pp /p/



pull
يسحب



pear
كمثرى



peach
خوخ

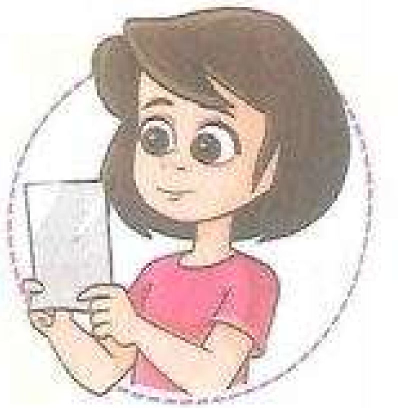


pea
حبة بازلاء

Bb
/b/

The /b/ sound is voiced. This means the paper doesn't move when you say it.

الصوت /b/ مسموع. هذا يعنى أن الورقة لا تتحرك عندما تقول ذلك.



Bb /b/



bull
ثور



bear
دب



beach
شاطئ



bee
نحلة

Silent letters الحروف الصامتة



4. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



In English, there are some words with silent letters – letters we don't pronounce.

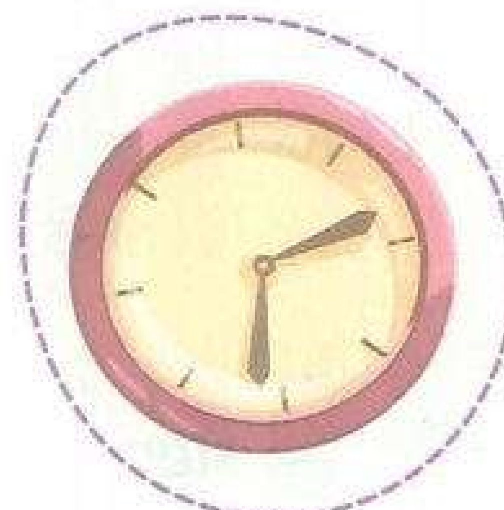
في اللغة الإنجليزية، توجد بعض الكلمات ذات الحروف الصامتة - الحروف التي لا ننطقها.



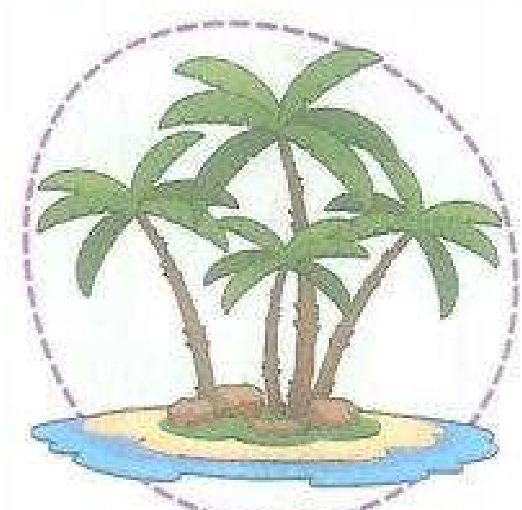
climb
يتسلق



two
اثنان



hour
ساعة



island
جزيرة



knife
سكينة



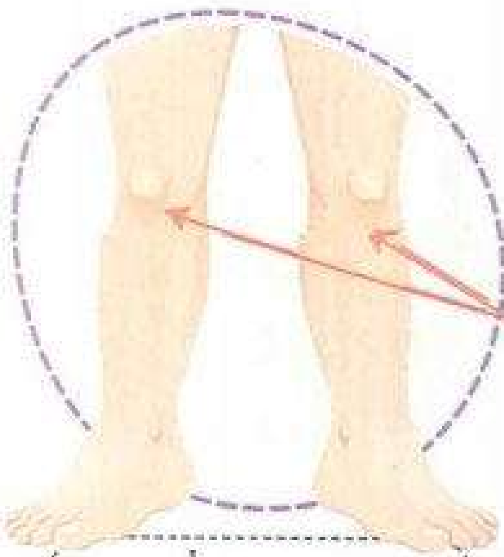
write
يكتب



lamb
خروف صغير



wrist
رسغ



knee
ركبة



answer
إجابة



castle
قلعة



sign
علامة/ لافتة

He was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his wrist. But he was very lucky – he had a knife so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two hours later, people came to save him!

كان يتسلق جزيرة مع قطتيه. سقط على الشاطئ وأصاب معصمه. لكنه كان محظوظًا جدًا. - كان لديه سكين لذلك تمكن من صنع ضمادة وكتب رسالة على الرمال. بعد ساعتين جاء الناس لإنقاذه!



Practice



Lessons 2 & 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Salma always wakes up at .... am every morning.
a) 6 b) 7 c) 8 d) 9

2 Salma usually has .... at 8 am.
a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) snack

3 Salma .... drives her car to work.
a) always b) often c) sometimes d) never

4 Salma .... sleeps late.
a) always b) often c) sometimes d) never

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 When it is hot, we stay in the .... الشرقية – إدارة العاشر من رمضان 2024
a) shade b) sun c) desert d) hot

2 A .... is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees.
a) storm b) heat wave c) flood d) sandstorm

3 The books were dirty from the sand that came from the ....
a) tidal wave b) sandstorm c) flood d) tornado

4 I can't .... this heavy box alone.
a) bull b) pull c) answer d) write

5 A .... is a strong animal that looks like a cow.
a) pea b) pull c) lamb d) bull

6 My favorite fruit is .... They're usually green.
a) peas b) bees c) bears d) pears

7 There was a "No Parking" .... on the road.
a) island b) sign c) hour d) castle

8 The king and the queen live in a .... الإسكندرية – إدارة المنتزه 2024
a) house b) castle c) club d) school

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

lemonade – temperature – watermelons – shade – tea

There was a heat wave yesterday in Cairo. The ....(1)........... was above 45 degrees. People stayed at home or in the ....(2)........... when they were outside. They couldn't do anything. They drank lots of water and ....(3)........... to stay cool. They also ate cold ....(4)........... and grapes.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 do – How – they – tennis – often – play?

....

2 do – I – always – homework – my. الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024

....

3 in – We – summers – hot – Egypt – have. الجيزة - إدارة جنوب الجيزة 2024

....

4 tired – Ola – work – is – after – never.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I .... (usually) play tennis. I can't play it.
2 My sister never eats sweets. She .... (never) eats healthy foods.
3 Rabbits .... (always) eat meat. They eat carrots.
4 Maged ....(never is) late for school. كفر الشيخ - إدارة دسوق التعليمية 2024
5 We .... (plays) computer games at the weekend. القليوبية - إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2024
6 I sometimes .... (has) a sandwich for lunch.
7 They .... (do usually) homework in the evening.
8 .... (He) sometimes help mom in the kitchen.
9 .... (Who) often do they study English?
10 A: How .... (long) do you watch TV? B: Always.
11 How often .... (do) Waleed play tennis?
12 A: How .... (many) do you play tennis? B: I never play tennis. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:



"My daily routine"

get up – brush my teeth – never play video games

....
....
....
....
....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

classmates	زملاء الفصل	tornado	إعصار	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
air conditioning	مكيف الهواء	flood	فيضان	extreme heat	حرارة شديدة
lightning	البرق	electric wires	أسلاك كهربائية	power cut	انقطاع التيار (الكهرباء)
torches	كشافات	unsafe (adj.)	غير آمن	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية

Extra vocabulary

extreme (adj.)	شديد	weather event	حدث الطقس	frightening (adj.)	مخيف
wide (adj.)	واسع	closer (adj.)	أقرب	buildings	مبانٍ
sand	رمال	road	طريق	scared (adj.)	خائف
suddenly	فجأة	tips	نصائح	thirsty (adj.)	عطشان
scarf	وشاح (كوفية)	clothing	ملابس	leaflet	منشور / كتيب
heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة	candles	شموع	afraid (adj.)	خائف

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
describe	يصف	described	twist	يلتوى	twisted
move	يتحرك	moved	destroy	يدمر	destroyed
contact	يتواصل	contacted	check	يتحقق من	checked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hurt	يؤذى	hurt	hit	يضرب	hit
wear	يرتدى	wore	shut	يغلق	shut
fall	يسقط	fell	strike	يضرب	struck

Expressions and Phrases

get dark	يُظلم	getting bigger	تزداد فى الحجم
bits of houses	أجزاء من المنازل	look like	يبدو مثل
drive through the desert	يقود السيارة عبر الصحراء	look out of	ينظر للخارج من
move the car off the road	يبعد السيارة عن الطريق	move away	يتحرك بعيدا
keep safe	يبقى آمنًا	even if	حتى لو
light meals	وجبات خفيفة	get to the side of the road	يتحرك إلى جانب الطريق
make sure	يتأكد	as much as possible	بقدر المستطاع
turn off	يطفئ	in case	فى حالة



Writing

An account of extreme weather event تقرير عن حدث طقس قاسٍ



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

An account of a tornado تقرير عن إعصار



I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the tornado and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses! When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.

كنت فى المدرسة مع زملائى فى الفصل. ثم بدأت السماء تظلم. ذهبنا للخارج. ثم رأيت الإعصار وكان مخيفًا جدًا. كان سحابة سوداء كبيرة وعريضة. عندما اقترب منا، كان يكبر وكان يلتف حولنا. يمكننا أن نرى أشياء فيه، مثل الأبواب وقطع من المنازل! عندما كان أقرب، أصبح أكثر اتساعًا وأكثر ظلمةً. فى اليوم التالى، اكتشفنا أن الإعصار أصاب الكثير من الناس ودمر العديد من المنازل والمبانى الأخرى.

An account of a sandstorm تقرير عن العاصفة الرملية

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see.
We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

ذات يوم، كنت أنا وعائلتى نقود سيارتنا فى الصحراء لزيارة أبناء عمومتى. بعد عشرين دقيقة، نظرت من النافذة ورأيت عاصفة رملية. سرعان ما كان هناك الكثير من الرمال فى الهواء خارج السيارة وكان من الصعب للغاية أن نرى. أغلقنا جميع النوافذ، لكن الآن أصبح الجو مظلمًا للغاية. كانت هناك سيارات أخرى على الطريق. هل سيرتطمون بنا؟ كنت خائفة حقًا. أبعد والدى السيارة عن الطريق وتوقفنا. لم نر المزيد من السيارات على الطريق، لكن العاصفة الرملية تحركت ببطء شديد. ثم فجأة، تحركت بعيدًا. لقد رأينا الشمس مرة أخرى وانطلقنا فى الصحراء!

Tips for keeping safe in extreme weather
نصائح للحفاظ على سلامتك في الطقس القاسي

Keeping safe in extreme heat
البقاء في أمان في الحرارة الشديدة

Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty.

اشرب الكثير من الماء، حتى لو لم تشعر بالعطش.

Try to spend time in cool buildings with air conditioning.

حاول قضاء الوقت في المباني الباردة التي بها مكيف هواء.

Open the windows when there's a cool wind.

افتح النوافذ عندما تكون الرياح باردة.

Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade.

لا تخرج. إذا اضطررت للخروج، ابق في الظل.

Eat small, light meals.

تناول وجبات صغيرة وخفيفة.

Wear light, cool clothing.

ارتدِ ملابس خفيفة ومنعشة.

Keeping safe in a sandstorm
البقاء في أمان في العاصفة الرملية

Wear a scarf to protect your face.

ارتدِ وشاحًا (كوفية) لحماية وجهك.

Stay inside, so the sand can't get in your mouth.

ابق بالداخل حتى لا تدخل الرمال في فمك.

If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road, so you can stop your car.

إذا كنت تقود السيارة، فحاول الوصول إلى جانب الطريق حتى تتمكن من إيقاف سيارتك.

If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in.

إذا كنت في المنزل، فتأكد من إغلاق النوافذ حتى لا تدخل الرمال.

Cover your head and face as much as possible.

قم بتغطية رأسك ووجهك قدر الإمكان.

Turn off air conditioning to stop the sand coming in.

قم بإيقاف تشغيل مكيف الهواء لمنع دخول الرمال.



3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Project

A leaflet about keeping safe in a storm
نشرة حول البقاء بأمان فى العاصفة

What might happen in a storm?
ما الذى يمكن أن يحدث فى العاصفة؟



- There might be very strong winds.

من الممكن أن تكون هناك رياح قوية.

- There might be heavy rain and lightning.

من الممكن أن تحدث أمطار غزيرة وبرق.

- It might not be safe to go outside – electric wires could fall.

قد لا يكون الخروج آمنًا - الأسلاك الكهربائية يمكن أن تقع.

- There might be a power cut.

قد يكون هناك انقطاع فى التيار الكهربائى.

- People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.

قد يكون الناس فى الشارع أو فى المنازل أو فى السيارات فى حاجة إلى مساعدتك.

How can you protect yourself?
كيف تستطيع حماية نفسك؟



- Stay inside and keep dry.

ابق فى الداخل وحافظ على جفافك.

- Make sure you have candles and torches – there might be a power cut.

تأكد من وجود الشموع والمصابيح - قد يكون هناك انقطاع فى التيار الكهربائى.

- Contact your friends and family to check they are safe.

اتصل بأصدقائك وعائلتك للتحقق من أنهم بأمان.

- Don't go anywhere by train – this could be unsafe.

لا تذهب إلى أى مكان بالقطار - فقد يكون هذا غير آمن.

- Help anyone who is afraid.

ساعد أى شخص خائف.

- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes.

لا تقف تحت الأشجار فى حالة حدوث صواعق.

- Don't stand near wires – they could fall and give you an electric shock.

لا تقف بالقرب من الأسلاك - فقد تسقط وتسبب لك صدمة كهربائية.

Practice



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a,b,c, or d:

1 Make sure you have .... There might be a power cut.
a) candles b) pens c) books d) chairs

2 Don't stand under trees in case .... strikes.
a) rain b) wind c) lightning d) cloud

3 Don't stand near .... They could fall and give you an electric shock.
a) trees b) cars c) wires d) houses

4 In extreme heat, spend time in cool buildings with ....
a) air conditioning b) sofas
c) desks d) chairs

5 In extreme heat, open the windows when there's a .... wind.
a) hot b) burning c) warm d) cool

6 In a sandstorm, wear a .... to protect your face.
a) scarf b) galabeya c) jacket d) boot

7 It started to get dark outside. There was a/an ....
a) flood b) tornado c) extreme heat d) volcano

8 The tornado was .... around.
a) twisting b) running c) playing d) jumping

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

torches – electric – strikes – afraid – safe

In a storm, stay inside and keep dry. Make sure you have candles and ....(1)........... because there might be a power cut. Contact your friends and family to check they are ....(2)............ . Don't go anywhere by train. This could be unsafe. Don't stand under trees in case lightning ....(3)............ . Don't stand near wires. They could fall and give you an ....(4)............ shock.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They were going in a/an ....

a) train b) car c) ferry d) underground

2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....

a) sandstorm b) desert c) window d) road

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did they do to keep safe in the extreme weather condition?

....

4 Summarize the passage in two sentences.

....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 a scarf – Wear – protect – face – your – to.

....

2 your – Make – are – shut – windows – sure.

....

3 be – winds – There – strong – might – very.

....

4 anyone – Help – is – afraid – who.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 It s windy in alexandria. القاهرة – إدارة البساتين 2024

....

2 were they going to hit us

....

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 310

"An extreme weather condition"

What is it? – What happens? – What should people do to keep safe?

....

....

....

....

....

Unit 6 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة

Lesson (1)

cloud	سحابة	rain	مطر
snow	جليد	rainbow	قوس قزح
storm	عاصفة	wind	رياح
sun	شمس	ice	ثلج
windy	عاصف	rainy	ممطر
cloudy	غائم	sunny	مشمس
weather	طقس	news	أخبار
variety	تنوع	temperature	درجة الحرارة
degrees	درجات	climate	مناخ

Lessons (2 & 3)

tornado	إعصار	tidal wave	موجة عارمة
strong winds/ storm	رياح شديدة / عاصفة	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
flood	فيضان	heat wave	موجة حارة
season	فصل من فصول السنة	shade	ظل
store	متجر	worried	قلقان
pull	يسحب	pear	كمثرى
peach	خوخ	pea	حبة بازلاء
bull	ثور	bear	دب
beach	شاطئ	bee	نحلة

Lessons (4 & 5)

classmates	زملاء الفصل	air conditioning	مكيف الهواء	extreme heat	حرارة شديدة
lightning	البرق	electric wires	أسلاك كهربائية	power cut	انقطاع التيار (الكهرباء)
torches	كشافات	unsafe	غير أمن	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
weather event	حدث الطقس	frightening	مخيف	wide	واسع
buildings	مبانى	road	طريق	scared	خائف
suddenly	فجأة	tips	نصائح	thirsty	عطشان
scarf	وشاح (كوفية)	clothing	ملابس	leaflet	منشور / كتيب
heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة	candles	شموع	afraid	خائف

Language Focus

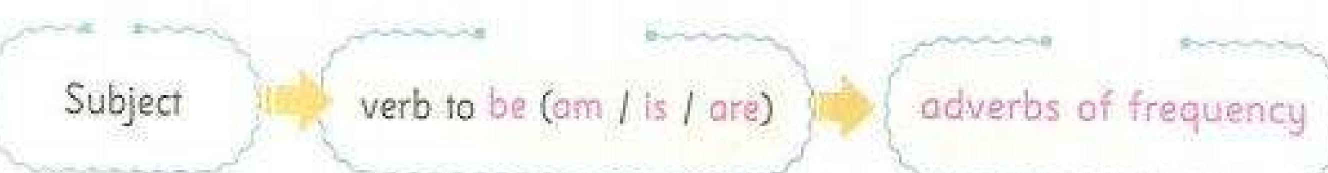
Adverbs of frequency

always	usually	often	sometimes	never
100%	80%	70%	50%	0%

Form: التكوين



e.g. I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays.



e.g. I'm always in bed at 11 pm.

Wh-questions with "How often ...?"

Question: How often ➡ do + (I/we/they/you) / does + (he/she/it) ➡ (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... ?

Answer: Subject + (always / usually / often / sometimes / never) + main verb ... .

OR

Subject + (am / is / are) + (always / usually / often / sometimes / never) ... .

e.g. A: How often do you play tennis?
B: I never play tennis. I can't play!

Unit 6 CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

سحابة	....	عاصفة	....
شمس	....	رياح	....
ثلج	....	قوس قزح	....
مطر	....	عاصف	....
غائم	....	ممطر	....
مشمس	....	جليد	....
درجات الحرارة	....	طقس	....
أخبار	....	تنوع	....

Lessons 2 & 3

موجة عارمة	....	إعصار	....
عصير ليمون	....	عاصفة رملية	....
موجة حارة	....	فيضان	....
خوخ	....	ثور	....
حبة بازلاء	....	دب	....
كمثرى	....	يسحب	....
متجر	....	شاطئ	....
يتسلق	....	صوت (إنسان)	....
ساعة	....	جزيرة	....
سكينة	....	يكتب	....
خروف صغير	....	رسغ	....
ركبة	....	إجابة	....
قلعة	....	علامة/لافتة	....
فصل من فصول السنة	....	ظل	....

Lessons 4 & 5

زملاء الفصل	....	كشافات	....
مكيف الهواء	....	غير آمن	....
حرارة شديدة	....	صدمة كهربائية	....
البرق	....	مخيف	....
أسلاك كهربائية	....	مبانى	....
انقطاع التيار (الكهرباء)	....	خائف	....

WRITING TIME



تجميعة لأهم موضوعات الوحدة

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to present weather conditions:

I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today.

1. It's going to be (حالة الطقس) in (اسم محافظة).
2. It's never very (حالة الطقس نادرة الحدوث) in (اسم محافظة), but today (حالة الطقس).
3. It's going to be (حالة الطقس) in (اسم محافظة).
4. (اسم محافظة) is going to have a (ظاهرة جوية قاسية), so stay at home!

" The weather today "

I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo. It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice. It's going to be windy in Alexandria. Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

How to write about your daily routine:

1. I always (أمر تقوم به دائمًا) … .
2. I often (أمر تقوم به عادة) … .
3. I usually (أمر تقوم به غالبًا) … .
4. I sometimes (أمر تقوم به أحيانًا) … .
5. I never (أمر لا تقوم به أبدًا) … .

" My daily routine "

I always get up early at 6.30 in the morning. I often take a short shower, then I read a book. I help my mom make breakfast at 8 am in the kitchen. I usually eat breakfast at 8.30. I sometimes visit my grandparents on Friday. I never play video games. I don't like them.

How to write about an extreme weather condition:

1. (حالة الطقس) is (تعريف حالة الطقس) … .
2. (حالة الطقس) is when (طبيعة حالة الطقس) … .
3. To keep safe, (احتياطات للأمان) … .
4. Try to (احتياطات للأمان) … .
5. We must (احتياطات للأمان) … .

" A heat Wave "

A heat wave is the very hot summer.
A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 °C. To keep safe, stay in the shade. Try to drink lots of water. Open the windows when there's a cool wind. We must wear light, cool clothing, too.

Unit 6 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة

1 Look and write:

cloud – ice – rain – rainbow – snow – storm – sun – wind

1 
....

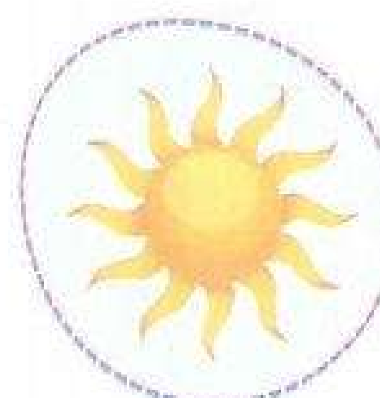
2 
....

3 
....

4 
....

5 
....

6 
....

7 
....

8 
....

2 Look and write:

flood – heat wave – sandstorm – strong winds / storm – tidal wave – tornado

1 
....

2 
....

3 
....

4 
....

5 
....

6 
....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 speak English / I / always / English class / in my /. ....
2 meat / She / red / eats / never /. ....
3 football / plays / He / with his friends / sometimes /. ....
4 wake up / We / before 7 am / sometimes /. ....
5 have / I / usually / a sandwich for lunch /. ....
6 Ola / work / never / is / after / tired /. ....

Test Yourself 30 UNIT 6







Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 When there's a ...., stay inside and keep dry.
a) drought b) traffic c) storm d) heat

2 Make sure you have torches because there might be a .... cut.
a) knee b) power c) wire d) food

3 Don't go anywhere by ....
a) bus b) train c) taxi d) plane

4 Don't stand under .... in case lightning strikes.
a) trees b) buses c) houses d) umbrellas



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 When it's very hot and no one can do anything, it's called a ....
a) flood b) heat wave c) tidal wave d) tornado

2 I like .... They're my favorite fruit.
a) beaches b) peaches c) peas d) bees

3 The tornado could .... buildings.
a) help b) talk c) destroy d) build

4 Don't go ....if there's a sandstorm. القاهرة - إدارة حلوان 2024
a) inside b) outside c) school d) home

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

hot – cool – air conditioning – shade – water

To keep yourself safe in extreme heat, you should drink lots of ....(1)..........., even if you don't feel thirsty. Try to spend time in cool buildings with ....(2)........... . Open the windows when there's a ....(3)........... wind. Eat small, light meals. Wear light, cool clothing. If you must go outside, stay in the ....(4)........... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Noha is an active girl. She is in grade five. She always gets up early at 6.30 in the morning. She often takes a short shower, then reads a book. She helps her mom make breakfast at 8.00 am in the kitchen. They usually eat breakfast at 8.30. She helps her mom clean

the house. She goes to the park with her friends in the evening. She sometimes visits her grandparents on Friday. She never plays video games. She can't play them.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

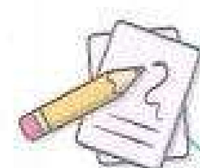
1 Noha is a/an .... girl.
a) lazy b) bad c) active d) naughty

2 Noha is in grade ....
a) 3 b) 4 c) 5 d) 6

B Answer the following questions:

3 How often does Noha play video games?
....

4 When does Noha go to the park?
....


Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 often – How – she – does – dinner – make?
....

2 There – a flood – was – Sudan – in. القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 She always ....(drink) water. الجيزة – إدارة الهرم 2024

2 A: How .... (many) does it rain in the desert? B: Never.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

what's the weather like, Mona القليوبية – إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2024
....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"A heat wave"



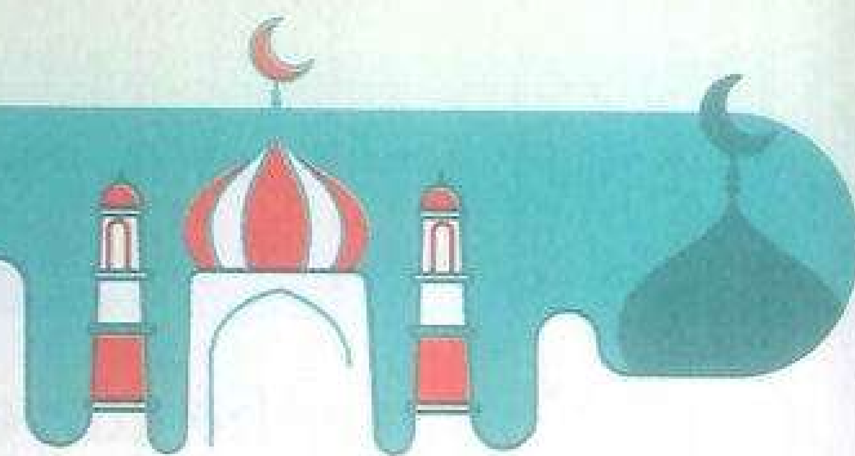
A heat weave is – stay in the shade

....
....
....
....


Assess your progress


< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 6 AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوي هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 It's going to be (windy – snowy – rainy) in Cairo.

2 It's going to be windy in (Cairo – Sharm El-Sheikh – Alexandria).

3 Luxor is going to have a (heat wave – storm – sandstorm), so stay at home.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

When there's a sandstorm, wear a scarf to protect your face. If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut, so no sand can get in. Cover your head and face as much as possible. Stay inside, so the sand can't get in your mouth. If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road, so you can stop your car. Turn off air conditioning to stop the sand coming in.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 When there's a .... , wear a scarf to protect your face.
a) tornado b) sandstorm c) flood d) heat wave

2 In a sandstorm, make sure your windows are shut, so no .... can get in.
a) air b) water c) sand d) smoke

3 In a sandstorm, stay ...., so the sand can't get in your mouth.
a) inside b) outside c) away d) close

B Answer the following questions:

4 What should you do in a sandstorm if you're driving? ....

5 Why should you turn off air conditioning in a sandstorm? ....

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 a – might – cut – There – be – power.

....

2 and – dry – Stay – keep – inside.

....

3 visit – grandparents – my – I – sometimes – on Friday.

....

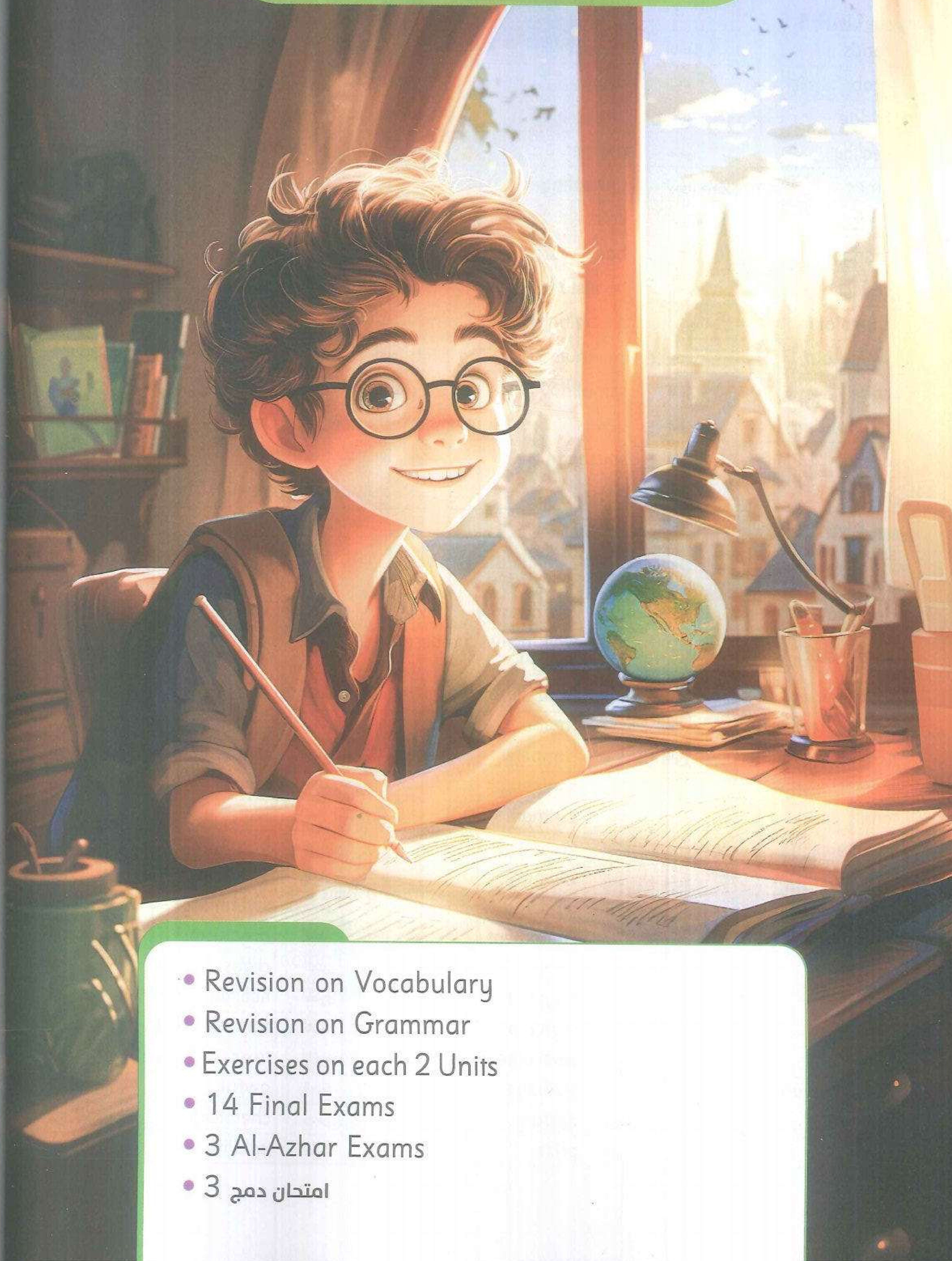
4 Luxor – the – What – in – about – weather?

....

5 in – I'm – 11 – at – bed – always – pm.

....

Final Revision and Exams



- Revision on Vocabulary
- Revision on Grammar
- Exercises on each 2 Units
- 14 Final Exams
- 3 Al-Azhar Exams
- 3 امتحان دمج

Units 1 & 2



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1

foods	أطعمة	chicken	دجاجة	price	سعر
grab	ينتزع	drinks	مشروبات/يشرب	grow	يزرع
fridge	ثلاجة	ingredients	مكونات	lemons	ليمون
healthy	صحى	market	السوق	terrible	مرعب/فظيع
limes	ليمون حامض	unhealthy	غير صحى	need	يحتاج
poor	فقير	eggs	بيض	buy	يشترى
mango	مانجو	bake	يخبز	carrots	جزر
collect	يجمع	beanstalk	ساق الفاصوليا	boil	يغلى
chocolate	شوكولاتة	shopping list	قائمة مشتريات	giant	عملاق
weigh out	يزن	coconuts	جوز الهند	pineapple	ثمرة أناناس
cage	قفص	semolina	دقيق السميد	oven	فرن
diamond	شكل المعين	beans	فول	tomatoes	طماطم
castle	قلعة	saucepan	قدر /إناء	onions	بصل
rich	غنى	chop	يقطع	different	مختلف

Unit 2

sports	ألعاب رياضية	dream	حلم	climb trees	يتسلق الأشجار
medal	ميدالية	kung fu	كونغ فو	high kicks	ركلات عالية
do jigsaws	يحل الصور المتقطعة	Moroccan	مغربى	karate	كاراتيه
karate suit	بدلة الكاراتيه	walk across the desert	يمشى عبر الصحراء	athlete	لاعب رياضى
taekwondo	تايكوندو	football pitch	ملعب كرة القدم	write poems	يكتب قصائد
special needs	احتياجات خاصة	football	كرة القدم	football boots	أحذية كرة القدم
help in the kitchen	يساعد فى المطبخ	compete	ينافس	handball	كرة اليد
team	فريق	competitor	منافس	tennis	تنس
tennis court	ملعب تنس	do math	يحل المسائل الحسابية	water pollution	تلوث الماء
squash	اسكواش	rackets	مضارب	breathe	يتنفس
harmful	ضار	sailing	إبحار	swimming pool	حمام السباحة
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	amazing	مذهل	swimming	السباحة
swimming goggles	نظارات السباحة	equipment	معدات	organisms	الكائنات الحية
match	مباراة	lungs	الرئتين	crabs	كابوريا
club	نادى	Egyptian	مصرى	habitats	أماكن المعيشة
game	لعبة	nightmare	كابوس	famous	مشهور
factories	مصانع	awesome	رائع	toxic	سام
Olympic Games	ألعاب أوليمبية	garbage	قمامة	awful	فظيع / مريع
emissions	عوادم	destroy	يدمر	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
shade	ظل	prize	جائزة	wildlife	الحياة البرية

Practice on Vocabulary (Units 1 & 2)





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 A: What's your favourite .... ? B: I like chicken. البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024
a) food b) drink c) juice d) sport

2 We love chocolate, but it isn't .... البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024
a) unhealthy b) favorite c) healthy d) nice

3 We .... the syrup over the basbousa. المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024
a) chop b) collect c) grow d) pour

4 .... are gases from cars or factories. القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024
a) Shade b) Greenhouses c) Emissions d) Toxic

5 A .... is a very large building built a long time ago.
a) house b) park c) castle d) home

6 To .... is to pick something up quickly. الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق 2024
a) grab b) pour c) cut d) chop

7 He is a very big person, he is .... بورسعيد 2024
a) lucky b) small c) a giant d) rich

8 I've got a .... sweater. It's lined white and pink. بورسعيد 2024
a) sunburned b) dark c) spotted d) striped

9 The farmer uses his .... to cut the wood. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
a) hen b) axe c) spoon d) fork

10 A .... is a box in which we keep animals. البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024
a) cage b) book c) tree d) pot

11 I like swimming. I wear swimming .... to protect my eyes. بورسعيد 2024
a) goggles b) boots c) glasses d) sandals

12 She likes water sports. She is very good at .... البحيرة 2024
a) tennis b) karate c) swimming d) handball

13 A .... is a very bad dream. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024
a) emission b) smoke c) nightmare d) breath

14 I always wear my football .... when I play football.
a) goggles b) belts c) boots d) rackets

15 She is bad at doing .... القليوبية - إدارة قها 2024
a) book b) pen c) math d) nice

16 We can buy and sell things at the .... البحيرة 2024
a) school b) library c) bark d) market

17 Water pollution is very .... الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024

a) useful b) good c) helpful d) harmful

18 We use our .... to play squash. البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024

a) goggles b) rackets c) boots d) hats

19 A/An .... is a glass building used for growing plants.

a) nightmare b) shade c) greenhouse d) emission

20 The farmer .... fresh vegetables at the market. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024

a) plants b) bakes c) sells d) grows

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

met – grapes – buy – rich – special

القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

Jack went to sell his cow in the market. On his way, he ....(1)......... an old man. The man had ....(2)......... beans. He wanted Jack to ....(3)......... them. He said the beans will make Jack ....(4)......... . Jack bought the beans at last.

B)

market – lunch – unhealthy – rice – healthy

الإسكندرية - المنتزه 2024

My favorite food is fish. Fish is ....(1)......... . Mother buys fish from the ....(2)......... . She cooks it for ....(3)............ . We eat fish with ....(4)......... and salad. Eating fish is very important for our body. We eat fish once a week.

C)

born – famous – medal – flag – big

الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق 2024

Hedaya Malak is a ....(1)......... Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian ....(2)......... at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She was ....(3)............ on April, 1993. She won the bronze ....(4)......... at the Rio Olympics in 2016.

D)

suit – racket – twice – famous – go

Heba loves tennis. She practices tennis ....(1)......... a week. She usually uses her ....(2)......... to play with her friend. Amany's favorite sport is karate. She wears her ....(3)............ to do karate. She practices on the court. She wants to be a ....(4)......... player.

Units 1 & 2  B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 1

Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns:

- هى الأسماء التى (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- الأسماء التى تعد تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an) إذا كانت مفردة.

e.g. - a ball ⟶ balls
- an ant ⟶ ants

Uncountable nouns:

- هى الأسماء التى (لا تعد)، ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الأسماء التى لا تعد لا تسبق بأداة نكرة (a/an) .

e.g. milk – bread

a – an

- تستخدم "a" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التى تبدأ بصوت (حرف ساكن).

e.g. - a book - a monkey

- تستخدم "an" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التى تبدأ بصوت (حرف متحرك).

e.g. - an onion - an egg

some/ any with countable and uncountable nouns

- تستخدم «some» مع الجمل المثبتة والعرض والطلب.

some + اسم يُعد جمع / اسم لا يعد

Affirmative الجملة المثبتة

e.g. - Hana has some orange juice.
- The children ate some candies after lunch.

Offer/ Request العرض/ الطلب

e.g. - A: Would you like some pineapples? (عرض)
B: Yes, please.
- A: Can I have some rice, please? (طلب)
B: Sure.

- تستخدم «any» مع الجمل المنفية والسؤال ومع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة.

any + اسم يُعد جمع / اسم لا يعد

Negative sentence الجملة المنفية

e.g. - There isn't any water.
- We don't have any onions.

Question السؤال

e.g. - Are there any books on the table?
- Is there any butter in the fridge?

To Express Offers & Requests التعبير عن العروض والطلبات

To express offers: التعبير عن العروض:

لعرض شيء على أحد يمكنك استخدام إحدى الطريقتين:

1 A: What would you like? → B: I would like + (noun) .

e.g. - I would like a banana, please. - I would like some carrots, please.

2 A: How about + (verb + ing)/(noun)?
A: Would you like some + noun?

B: Yes, please.
B: No, thank you.

e.g. - A: Would you like an orange? B: Yes, please.
- A: How about buying some lemons? B: No, thanks.

To express requests: التعبير عن الطلبات:

Can I have some + (noun) ......, please?

e.g. - A: Can I have some grapes, too? B: Yes, of course.

Unit 2

great/ good/ bad + at

We use "good, great, bad + at" to talk about things we do or don't do well.
نستخدم (good, great, bad + at) للتحدث عن الأشياء التى نفعلها أو لا نفعلها بشكل جيد.

Form

Subject (الفاعل) + (am/is/are) + great at/ good at/ bad at + inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) + ing ... .

e.g. - I'm very good at playing football.
- He is very bad at speaking French.

Subject (الفاعل) + (am/is/are) + great at/ good at/ bad at + noun (اسم) .... .

e.g. - I'm great at tennis.
- She is very bad at karate.



لاحظ عند إضافة (ing) للفعل:

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e)، فإنها تحذف عند إضافة الـ (ing): smile → smiling

٢. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بمتحرك، فإن الحرف الساكن الأخير يتم مضاعفته عند إضافة الـ (ing):

stop → stopping clap → clapping



Practice on Grammar (Units 1 & 2)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Can I have .... water, Sama?
a) an b) a c) some d) any

2 There aren't .... books in the bag.
a) some b) no c) a d) any

3 I have .... orange for breakfast.
a) some b) any c) an d) a

4 Do you like to have .... eggs?
a) some b) any c) a d) an

5 Would you like to eat .... cake?
a) any b) some c) no d) an

6 I don't have .... money to buy this mobile.
a) an b) any c) some d) a

7 How about .... television together?
a) watch b) watching c) watched d) watches

8 Are there any .... in the fridge?
a) sugar b) meat c) tomatoes d) butter

9 Do you have .... potatoes?
a) an b) some c) any d) a

10 Are there .... boys in the class?
a) some b) any c) an d) a

11 I am good at .... English.
a) speaking b) speaks c) spoke d) speak

12 Salma is great at .... pictures.
a) draws b) draw c) drew d) drawing

13 They are bad at .... chess.
a) play b) playing c) played d) plays

14 What sports .... you good at?
a) do b) are c) have d) can

15 Sara likes handball because she is .... at playing it.
a) bad b) great c) short d) small

16 I am better at playing squash .... I am at football.
a) thin b) then c) than d) the

17 Rana is good at .... her mother at home.
a) helping b) help c) helps d) helped

18 My father is a cook, and he is great .... making shawerma.
a) to b) by c) at d) for

19 He is good at .... jigsaws.
a) playing b) doing c) going d) having

20 She is good at playing the piano, but she is .... at playing drums.
a) good b) great c) bad d) big

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Would you like .... (a) coffee?

2 Ali hasn't got .... (some) grapes in his dish. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024

3 Can I have .... (any) orange juice?

4 How about .... (buy) some oranges? القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024

5 There are .... (any) mangoes. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024

6 There .... (aren't) any sugar in the kitchen.

7 There is .... (a) apple in the basket. القليوبية - قها 2024

8 Do you have .... (some) carrots, please? القليوبية - إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2024

9 There aren't .... (some) tomatoes in the fridge. السويس 2024

10 Is there .... (some) jam in the fridge? القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

11 .... (Are) there any milk? بورسعيد 2024

12 I would like .... (any) carrots, please. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024

13 Are there ....(some) tomatoes? البحيرة 2024

14 Monkeys are good at .... (climb) trees. بورسعيد 2024

15 Shady is better .... (then) his brother.

16 How about .... (visit) Cairo? بورسعيد 2024

17 Eslam .... (be) good at playing basketball.

18 Mona is bad at .... (speak) English. بورسعيد 2024

19 We .... (be) bad at doing taekwondo.

20 Ali is bad .... (on) drawing. الإسكندرية - إدارة المنتزه 2024

Units 3 & 4



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 3

clothes	ملابس	striped	مخطط	exciting	شيق / مثير
sunburned	مصاب بحروق الشمس	T-shirt	تيشرت	suitcase	حقيبة السفر
excited	متشوق / متحمس	hidden	مخفى	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
coat	معطف / بالطو	sleeves	أكمام	festival	مهرجان/عيد
swimming shorts	شورت السباحة	galabeya	جلابية	pockets	جيوب
honest	صادق / أمين	scarf	وشاح (كوفية)	trip	رحلة
stripes	خطوط	tired	متعب	sweater	قميص صوف
holiday	إجازة	crown	تاج	shoemaker	صانع الأحذية
sneakers	حذاء رياضى	uniform	زى موحد	gloves	قفازات
leather	جلد	necklace	عقد	pack	يحزم الحقائب أو الأمتعة
school project	مشروع مدرسى	elves	أقزام	pajamas	بيجامة
wear	يرتدى	information	معلومات	pay	يدفع
spotted	منقط	comfortable	مريح	traditional	تقليدى
trousers	بنطلون	pale	فاتح	light	فاتح
feasts	أعياد	celebrations	احتفالات	silver	فضة

Unit 4

world	العالم	Tombs of the Nobles	مقابر النبلاء	eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية
hotel	فندق	look after	يعتنى بـ	reign	فترة الحكم
eco-tourists	السياح البيئيين	plane journeys	رحلات طيران	visit	يزور
calendar	تقويم	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	culture	ثقافة
mountain	جبل	history	تاريخ	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو
preserve	يحافظ على	lake	بحيرة	quite	إلى حدٍّ ما
local people	السكان المحليون	dive	يغطس	waterfall	شلال
sunset	غروب الشمس	eco-resort	منتجع بيئى	forest	غابة
travel	يسافر	eco-village	قرية بيئية	valley	وادى
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	Temple of Philae	معبد فِيَلة	tour guide	مرشد سياحى
rare	نادر	island	جزيرة	postcard	بطاقة بريدية
environment	البيئة	Nubian ibex	الوعل النوبى	city	مدينة
Aswan Botanical Garden	حديقة أسوان النباتية	historical	تاريخى	friendly	ودود
fascinating	جذاب / ساحر	hiking	جولة على الأقدام (التنزه)	quiet	هادئ
eco-lodges	مساكن بيئية	scream	يصرخ	scratch	يخدش
screw	مسمار	throat	حلق	throne	عرش
string	خيط	monuments	آثار تاريخية	structure	بناء / هيكل
eco-destination	وجهة بيئية	camps	معسكرات	Nawamis	قرية نواميس



Practice on Vocabulary (Units 3 & 4)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Galabeyas have .... , but they are hidden. القاهرة – إدارة الشروق 2024
a) sleeves b) socks c) pockets d) crowns

2 A .... has long white sleeves. الإسكندرية – إدارة شرق 2024
a) T-shirt b) skirt c) galabeya d) hat

3 Can you help me .... my suitcases for our holiday tomorrow? القليوبية – إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024
a) wait b) pack c) sink d) back

4 I walk around a lot. I need comfortable .... القاهرة – إدارة الشروق 2024
a) coat b) sneakers c) scarf d) necklace

5 There is no ...., so the island is very quiet. بورسعيد 2024
a) farms b) traffic c) rivers d) buildings

6 Take your .... It's very sunny today. القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024
a) scarf b) suitcase c) sneakers d) sunglasses

7 The sombrero is a traditional Mexican .... القاهرة – المرج 2024
a) shoe b) dress c) hat d) robe

8 The .... makes shoes from leather. المنوفية – شبين الكوم 2024
a) farmer b) shoemaker c) vet d) carpenter

9 Tourists dive in the Red Sea to see the .... reefs. بورسعيد 2024
a) plant b) coral c) shark d) rock

10 The galabeya is cool because it's made from .... البحيرة 2024
a) cotton b) paper c) plastic d) metal

11 Dresses are types of .... القليوبية – إدارة طوخ 2024
a) sports b) meals c) clothes d) teams

12 You can know today's date from the .... on the wall. الإسكندرية – إدارة غرب 2024
a) calendar b) waterfall c) lake d) island

13 Tourists .... in the Red Sea. الإسكندرية – إدارة المنتزه 2024
a) dive b) drive c) build d) grow

14 People wear sweaters and .... in cold weather. الإسكندرية – إدارة غرب 2024
a) goggles b) shorts c) coats d) rings

15 She's a very good climber. She climbs .... القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024
a) mountains b) islands c) forests d) waterfalls

16 Elephantine Island is full of .... الإسكندرية – إدارة الجمرك 2024
a) history b) Arabic c) math d) science

17 He is kind and .... All people love him. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

a) ugly b) lazy c) honest d) angry

18 Tourism gives .... for local people. القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس 2024

a) villages b) jobs c) farms d) rice

19 You can see a lot of trees in the .... الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024

a) coral reef b) waterfall c) desert d) forest

20 .... tell the tourists where they can dive. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

a) Doctors b) Tour guides c) Teachers d) Vets

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

bright – dresses – feasts – stripes – hat

Girls in Mexico wear traditional Mexican ....(1)......... . They are very colorful. There are many colorful ....(2)......... on the dresses. Girls in Mexico like to wear those dresses during celebrations and ....(3)......... . Mexican girls really love ....(4)......... colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear colorful clothes. They are really amazing.

B)

historical – learn – pros – cons – jobs القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

Tourism is very important to Egypt. It can give ....(1)......... for young people. It can help people ....(2)......... about new cultures. But tourism also has some ....(3)......... . Tourists can damage the ....(4)......... places and the monuments.

C)

Elephantine – calm – Nobles – Museum – Nile القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

I'm Mai. I'm on ....(1)......... Island. It's in Aswan. I arrived yesterday. There are lots of things to do and see. I want to go to the Aswan ....(2)......... today. I want to go for walks on the island because the island is a beautiful ....(3)......... place. I also want to walk to the Tombs of the ....(4)......... . I'm very excited.

D)

pockets – cotton – skirt – robe – galabeya السويس 2024

The Egyptian people wear many traditional clothes. Many men wear the ....(1)......... . This is a long white ....(2)......... that is very popular. It looks really cool to wear. It's made from ....(3)......... and is usually white. It has ....(4)........., but they are hidden.

Units 3 & 4 — B) Revision on Grammar



Unit 3

1. Infinitive of Purpose صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

We use "to + infinitive" to express purpose, and to say why someone does something:
نستخدم "to + infinitive" للتعبير عن الغرض، ولتوضيح سبب قيام شخص ما بشىء ما.

Form

to + infinitive (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .

e.g. - We went to the park to play with our friends.
- Sherif bought a new suitcase to go on holiday.



We use "Why" to ask about purpose.
نستخدم «لماذا» لنسأل عن الغرض.

e.g. A: Why did Tarek buy a racket?
B: Tarek bought a racket to play tennis.

2. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express actions that started and ended in the past.
نستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التى بدأت وانتهت فى الماضى.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

- معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed): talk → talked
- الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d): move → moved
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y)، يحذف حرف الـ (y) ويضاف (ied): cry → cried
- الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن مسبوق بمتحرك، يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن: clap → clapped

e.g. Yesterday, I played football.

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

buy ⟶ bought   go ⟶ went   do ⟶ did

e.g. Eslam bought a new car last year.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) … .

e.g. She didn't finish her homework yesterday.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

Question السؤال	A: Did	subject	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) …?
Answer الإجابة	B: Yes, B: No,	subject	did. didn't.

e.g. A: Did Tarek buy a racket?

B: Yes, he did. OR B: No, he didn't

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Question السؤال	A: Wh- word (كلمة الاستفهام)	did	subject	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) …?
Answer الإجابة	B: Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل … .			

e.g. A: Where did you go last week?

B: I went to the zoo last week.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday	last	ago	in the past
أمس	الماضى	منذ	فى الماضى

Verb to "be" in the past simple فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط

I/He/She/It + was/wasn't … ⟶ e.g. - Ahmed was sick yesterday.
- It wasn't a nice game yesterday.

We/They/You + were/weren't … ⟶ e.g. - We were in Alexandria last summer.
- Hany and Hana weren't happy yesterday.

Unit 4 The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضى المستمر

We use the past continuous tense for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضى المستمر للتحدث عن شيء حدث واستمر لفترة من الوقت فى الماضى.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

I/ He/ She/ It	was	(inf.) + ing … .
You/ We/ They	were	

e.g. I was listening to music yesterday evening.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

I/ He/ She/ It	was not (wasn't)	(inf.) + ing + … .
You/ We/ They	were not (weren't)	

e.g. They weren't swimming in the sea yesterday morning.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال	Was	I/ he/ she/ it	(inf.) + ing … ?
	Were	you/ we/ they	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject	was/ were.
	No,		wasn't/ weren't.

e.g. A: Was she doing her homework?
B: Yes, she was. OR B: No, she wasn't.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

all (day / morning / evening / night / yesterday)
at (6, 7, 8, …) o'clock / am / pm / yesterday

e.g. The children were playing football all morning yesterday.
Ali was studying Arabic at 7 pm yesterday.



انتبه كيف نضيف (ing) للفعل:

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) صامت يسبقه حرف ساكن، فإننا نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

make → making   take → taking

٢. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، فإننا نضاعف الحرف الأخير عند إضافة الـ (ing):

swim → swimming   shop → shopping

Practice on Grammar (Units 3 & 4)





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 She needs to .... her suitcases.
a) packs b) pack c) packing d) packed

2 Ah ... nt to the town .... buy new sneakers.
b) with c) at d) to

3 A: .... did he go to the supermarket? B: He went there to buy ice cream.
a) Which b) Who c) Why d) What

4 I bought a new mobile .... my friends.
a) call b) to calling c) calls d) to call

5 My father always goes to the bakery to .... some bread.
a) buys b) buy c) buying d) bought

6 He .... at home yesterday.
a) is b) were c) was d) are

7 They .... scared last night because they didn't want to see the lion.
a) are b) was c) is d) were

8 She .... a sandcastle last week.
a) build b) built c) builds d) building

9 Eslam .... swim in the pool yesterday.
a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) isn't

10 Did Sara .... her homework two hours ago?
a) does b) doing c) do d) did

11 We were .... football at 7 pm yesterday.
a) played b) playing c) plays d) play

12 A: .... you watching television all day yesterday? B: No, I wasn't.
a) Are b) Did c) Were d) Was

13 She .... studying English yesterday evening.
a) is b) was c) were d) are

14 A: Were you sleeping at 9 pm yesterday? B: Yes, I ....
a) was b) were c) is d) am

15 They .... swimming yesterday morning.
a) isn't b) aren't c) wasn't d) weren't

16 Was .... making a cake at 8 o'clock yesterday?
a) you b) we c) he d) they

17 We .... squash at 7 pm yesterday.
a) playing b) played c) were playing d) was playing

18 A: Were they having their breakfast? B: No, they ....
a) were b) was c) weren't d) wasn't

19 What was she .... at 7 am yesterday?
a) does b) did c) doing d) do

20 Where .... you sleeping yesterday evening?
a) did b) are c) were d) do

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 He went to the shop to .... (buying) bread. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

2 They .... (go) to the cinema yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة دار السلام 2024

3 She .... (buys) a red dress for the party last week.

4 Amira didn't .... (cooks) yesterday.

5 Did you .... (visited) your uncle last night?

6 We .... (don't) play handball yesterday.

7 I went to the supermarket .... (in) buy milk. القاهرة - إدارة غرب مدينة نصر 2024

8 Everyone .... (have) a job in Ancient Egypt. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024

9 What did they .... (bought) at the supermarket? القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس 2024

10 She didn't .... (finishes) her homework yesterday. القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2024

11 I .... (were) traveling by boat to the island.

12 He .... (play) volleyball yesterday morning. المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024

13 They .... (was) swimming in the lake at 6 o'clock yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

14 A: Were they climbing mountains all day yesterday? B: Yes, they .... (wasn't).

15 I .... (am) watching a football match at 9 pm yesterday.

16 She was .... (read) a book at seven o'clock yesterday. البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024

17 Mona .... (were) studying English when her father came. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

18 They .... (sleep) at six yesterday. القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024

19 What .... (be) she doing yesterday morning?

20 Ali .... (visits) Samy yesterday. القليوبية - إدارة قها 2024

Units 5 & 6 A) Revision on Vocabulary



Unit 5

scribe	كاتب	a desert ecosystem	نظام بيئى صحراوى	buzz	يطنّ
the worst	الأسوأ	trader	تاجر	a rockpool ecosystem	نظام بيئى لبركة الصخور
knock	يخبط / يطرق	teamwork	عمل جماعى	craftsman	حرفى
living	شىء حى	injured	مُصاب	experiment	تجربة علمية
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	non-living	غير حى	operation	عملية جراحية
school concert	حفلة مدرسية	fisherman	صياد السمك	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
check	يفحص / يراجع	aim	هدف	fields	حقول
crab	كابوريا	scare	يخيف	teammate	زميل فى الفريق
grains	حبوب	seaweed	أعشاب بحرية	keen on	يحب
harvest	يحصد	sculptures	منحوتات	Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون الاستوائية
office job	وظيفة مكتبية	strange	غريب	weave	ينسج
grasshopper	الجراد	solving problems	حل المشاكل	surprised	متفاجئ
a marine ecosystem	نظام بيئى بحرى	fence	سور	work out	يحل / يكتشف
Earth	كوكب الأرض	a freshwater ecosystem	نظام بيئى للمياه العذبة	relaxing	مسترخٍ
solutions	حلول	source	مصدر	jewelry	مجوهرات
female ruler	الحاكمة	paintings	رسومات / لوحات	flax	بذور الكتان
linen	كتان	pharaohs	فراعنة	menu	قائمة الطعام
boss	قائد / زعيم	knife	سكين	sharp	حادٌّ
manager	مدير	delicious	شهى	customers	عملاء/ زبائن
university	جامعة	lovely	جميل / رائع	computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر

Unit 6

weather	الطقس	temperature	درجة الحرارة	sunny	مشمس
cloud	سحابة	degrees	درجات	classmates	زملاء الفصل
rain	مطر	climate	المناخ	frightening	مخيف
snow	جليد	tornado	إعصار	twist	يلتف / يلتوى
rainbow	قوس قزح	tidal wave	موجة عارمة	destroy	يدمر
candles	شموع	strong winds/storm	رياح شديدة / عاصفة	electric wires	أسلاك كهربائية
warm	دافئ	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	power cut	انقطاع التيار (الكهرباء)
ice	ثلج	flood	فيضان	torches	كشافات
windy	عاصف	heat wave	موجة حارة	lightning	البرق
rainy	ممطر	shade	ظل	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
cloudy	غائم	season	فصل	air conditioning	مكيف الهواء



Practice on Vocabulary (Units 5 & 6)



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... could write everything down and they kept records and lists for important things.
a) Farmers b) Doctors c) Traders d) Scribes

2 .... are the system of writing which people used it in Ancient Egypt.
a) List b) Hieroglyphs c) Marker d) Grain

3 Ancient Egyptian .... made beautiful paintings and gold jewelry. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024
a) craftsmen b) farmers c) teachers d) nurses

4 I built a strong .... to protect the garden. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024
a) school b) factory c) hospital d) fence

5 Farmers in Ancient Egypt worked in .... which were near their homes.
a) beaches b) fields c) coasts d) rivers

6 Sama helps animals if they are sick or ....
a) happy b) pleased c) injured d) beautiful

7 The .... in Ancient Egypt bought and sold things like gold. القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024
a) vet b) scribe c) fisherman d) trader

8 After it rains, we can see the .... in the sky. المنوفية - إدارة سرس الليان 2024
a) fire b) rainbow c) ring d) sand

9 .... are buzzing all the day. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
a) Snakes b) Ants c) Cats d) Bees

10 .... is something that isn't alive. القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024
a) Living b) Non-living c) Rock pool d) Rainforest

11 A .... is a small eco-system. القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024
a) rockpool b) river c) city d) village

12 Sunlight and water are .... things. القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024
a) non-living b) living c) forest d) thinking

13 Ecosystem is the .... between living and non-living things. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024
a) connection b) time c) game d) road

14 Randa is a ...., she looks after sick animals. القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024
a) computer programmer b) vet
c) mechanic d) dentist

15 The .... is the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. البحيرة 2024
a) River Nile b) Red Sea c) ocean d) lake

16 I'm so hot! Let's sit in the .... القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024
a) shade b) sun c) nightmare d) costume

17 When there's a lot of water in the whole streets, it is a/an ....
a) heatwave b) earthquake c) tornado d) flood

18 A .... means the temperature goes very high.
a) tornado b) heatwave c) shade d) flood

19 It is very dangerous to touch the .... They will give you an electric shock.
a) clothes b) chairs c) electric wires d) pots

20 Don't go .... if there's a sandstorm. القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024
a) outside b) inside c) school d) home

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

rainforest – ecosystem – sunlight – rockpool – eco-tourist

The connection between living and non-living things is called ....(1)......... . They can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon ....(2)......... . The living things in a ....(3)......... are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and ....(4)......... . All these things work together to make an ecosystem.

B)

jewelry – Egyptian – paintings – juice – learn البحيرة 2024

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very, very good. They drew beautiful ....(1)......... . Also, they made beautiful gold ....(2)................ and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. ....(3)......... writing was not easy to ....(4)......... .

C)

stop – shut – protect – on – off الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024

To stay safe during a sandstorm, you have to follow some instructions. Wear a scarf to ....(1).........your face. Stay inside, so the sand can't get in your month. Drive to the side of the road, so you can ....(2)......... your car. Make sure your windows are ....(3)......... , so no sand get in. Turn ....(4)......... air conditioning to stop the sand from coming in.

D)

grew – fields – farmers – job – fish القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a ....(1)......... . They could be fishermen, bakers, or doctors. But most people worked as ....(2)......... .They worked in ....(3)......... near their homes. They ....(4)......... crops, like wheat and corn. Ancient Egyptians craftsmen were good.

Units 5 & 6 B) Revision on Grammar



Unit 5

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage: الاستخدام:

We use the present simple to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.
نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التى نقوم بها كل يوم.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

(I, We, You, They) + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .

e.g. We cook lots of delicious food.

(He, She, It) + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) + (s/ es/ ies) ... .

e.g. At midday, the manager opens the restaurant.

لاحظ

s → معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):
e.g. She eats fruits every day.

es → الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss, sh, ch, o, x) يضاف لها (es):
e.g. She catches a bus to school.

ies → الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف الـ (y) ويضاف للفعل (ies):
e.g. He flies a plane.



إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (y) يسبقه حرف متحرك (a, e, i, o, u)، أضف حرف ال (s) فقط:
e.g. He plays computer games at the weekend.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

(I, We, You, They) + don't + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .

e.g. I don't eat cheese for breakfast.

(He, She, It) + doesn't + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .

e.g. My sister doesn't study at Cairo University.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ(هل):

Question السؤال	Do	I /you /we /they	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ...?
	Does	he /she /it	

Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject	do/does.
	No,		don't/doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you drive to work?
B: Yes, I do.
Or
B: No, I don't.

e.g. A: Does the child play computer games?
B: Yes, he does.
Or
B: No, he doesn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I /you /we /they	(inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ...?
	does	he /she /it	

e.g. A: What do you do on the weekend?
B: I play football.

e.g. A: When does Dad arrive home?
B: He arrives at 6 pm.

must / mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do.

عندما نتحدث عن شيء يجب علينا القيام به نستخدم «must» بمعنى «يجب أن» .

We use "mustn't" (must not) when we are not allowed to do something.

وعندما لا يُسمح لنا بفعل شيء ما نستخدم «mustn't» بمعنى «يجب ألا».

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + must + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر)... .

e.g. You must look after the environment.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject (الفاعل) + mustn't (must not) + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر)... .

e.g. You mustn't forget to take a hat today.

Unit 6

Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things.

تستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط لنقول كم مرة نقوم بعمل الأشياء.

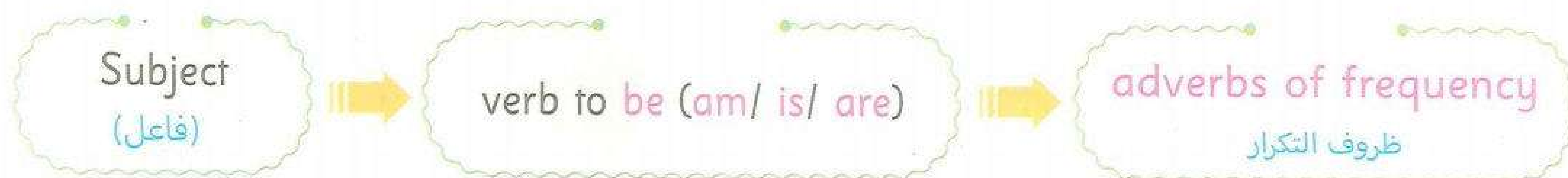
always	usually	often	sometimes	never
100%	80%	70%	50%	0%

Form: التكوين



e.g. I always visit my grandparents on Saturdays.

لاحظ أن (verb to be) يسبق ظروف التكرار:



e.g. Ola is never tired after work.

Wh- questions with "How often ...?" in the present simple tense:

السؤال باستخدام أداة الاستفهام «كم مرة...؟» فى زمن المضارع البسيط:

Question

How often → do + (I/we/they/you) / does + (he/she/it) → (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ...?

Answer

Subject + (always/ usually/ often/ sometimes/ never) + main verb ... .

OR

Subject + (am/ is/ are) + (always/ usually/ often/ sometimes/ never) ... .

e.g.

A: How often do you play tennis?

B: I never play tennis. I can't play!

Practice on Grammar (Units 5 & 6)





1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They .... television at night.
a) watches b) watching c) watch d) are watched

2 Samy always .... up early.
a) gets b) get c) getting d) got

3 Samy and Ramy .... English every day.
a) studies b) study c) studying d) is studying

4 She .... like eating pizza.
a) isn't b) aren't c) doesn't d) don't

5 We .... sleep late.
a) isn't b) aren't c) doesn't d) don't

6 We don't .... our English book.
a) forget b) forgets c) forgot d) forgetting

7 You must .... your English homework.
a) does b) do c) did d) doing

8 We .... talk in the library.
a) mustn't b) should c) must d) are

9 You mustn't .... in the class.
a) eating b) ate c) eat d) eats

10 Children must .... milk.
a) drank b) drinks c) drinking d) drink

11 They .... video games on the weekends.
a) plays always b) always play c) play always d) play never

12 How often .... your friend play football?
a) do b) does c) is d) are

13 How often .... your friends travel to Luxor?
a) do b) does c) is d) are

14 Salma usually .... her lunch at home.
a) have b) has c) having d) to have

15 She .... late for school.
a) always is b) never is c) is never d) usually is

16 Amira never .... squash.
a) plays b) playing c) play d) played

17 We .... go to school on Fridays.
a) always b) usually c) often d) never

18 A: How .... do you study English? B: I always study English.
a) many b) much c) often d) long

19 Ahmed .... salad. He doesn't like it.
a) always eat b) never eats c) eats never d) eat always

20 They .... in the sea.
a) usually swim b) usually swims c) swim usually d) swims usually

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 Mona .... (catch) the bus to Cairo every day. القليوبية – إدارة الخانكة 2024

2 Ali never .... (play) video games in the morning.

3 You mustn't .... (walking) on the grass. القاهرة – إدارة شرق مدينة نصر 2024

4 They .... (doesn't) like playing tennis.

5 She is ill. She .... (mustn't) go to the doctor. القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

6 We ....(has) a big garden.

7 Sara .... (don't) bake cakes.

8 I must .... (bought) some oranges.

9 What .... (do) he play at the club every day? القليوبية – إدارة بنها 2024

10 You must .... (being) careful when you use the sharp knife.

11 How often .... (does) Sara and Ola do sports?

12 Omar doesn't .... (speaking) Italian.

13 I .... (eat usually) healthy food.

14 You ....(must) drink from the canal. It is dangerous.

15 She always .... (talk) on her phone. القليوبية – إدارة قليوب 2024

16 She .... (always is) tired after training.

17 A: How .... (many) do you visit your uncle? B: Always.

18 We must .... (following) our school rules.

19 We .... (always are) happy.

20 Mazin .... (watches never) English movies.

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
like	يحب	liked	collect	يجمع	collected	need	يحتاج	needed
visit	يزور	visited	count	يعد	counted	save	ينقذ	saved
chop	يقطع	chopped	grab	ينتزع	grabbed	bake	يخبز	baked
boil	يغلي	boiled	mix	يخلط	mixed	pour	يصب	poured
weight out	يزن	weighted out	turn on	يشغل	turned on	add	يضيف	added
try	يجرب	tried	agree	يوافق	agreed	smell	يشم	smelled
stay	يبقى	stayed	remember	يتذكر	remembered	wait	ينتظر	waited
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	climb	يتسلق	climbed	cook	يطهو	cooked
walk	يمشى	walked	play	يلعب	played	help	يساعد	helped
kick	يركل	kicked	practice	يتدرب	practiced	compete	يتنافس	competed
pack	يحزم أمتعته	packed	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	borrow	يستعير	borrowed
believe	يعتقد	believed	thank	يشكر	thanked	call	ينادى	called
dance	يرقص	danced	wash	يغسل	washed	tidy	يرتب	tidied
clean	ينظف	cleaned	deliver	يوصل	delivered	live	يعيش	lived
work	يعمل	worked	enjoy	يستمتع	enjoyed	fix	يصلح	fixed
slow	يبطأ	slowed	dress	يرتدى	dressed	taste	يتذوق	tasted
carry	يحمل	carried	promise	يعد	promised	miss	يشتاق	missed
travel	يسافر	traveled	cause	يسبب	caused	preserve	يحفظ	preserved
create	يبدع	created	damage	يدمر	damaged	weave	ينسج	weaved
survive	ينجو	survived	buzz	يطن	buzzed	rest	يستريح	rested
harvest	يحصد	harvested	reply	يرد	replied	ignore	يتجاهل	ignored
prefer	يفضل	preferred	check	يفحص	checked	scare	يخيف	scared
rain	يمطر	rained	pass	يمر بـ	passed	knock	يطرق	knocked
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	move	يحرك	moved	protect	يحمى	protected

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	يزرع	grew	go	يذهب	went
think	يعتقد	thought	catch	يمسك	caught
say	يقول	said	find	يجد	found
cut	يقطع	cut	spend	يقضى	spent
fall	يسقط	fell	fly	يطير	flew
do	يفعل	did	bring	يُحضر	brought
lose	يخسر	lost	drive	يقود	drove
hide	يختبئ	hid	buy	يشترى	bought
leave	يغادر	left	get	يحصل على	got
see	يرى	saw	throw	يرمى	threw
dive	يغطس	dove	know	يعرف	knew
shine	يشرق	shone	keep	يحافظ على	kept
teach	يعلم	taught	write	يكتب	wrote
hurt	يؤذى	hurt	give	يعطى	gave
sell	يبيع	sold	sleep	ينام	slept
come	يأتى	came	pay	يدفع	paid
meet	يقابل	met	understand	يفهم	understood
win	يفوز	won	become	يصبح	became
sit	يجلس	sat	hear	يسمع	heard
make	يصنع	made	mean	يعنى	meant
wear	يرتدى	wore	take	يأخذ	took

Final Exams

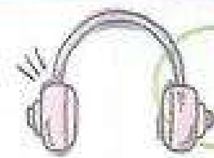
الامتحانات معدلة طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات



خاص بجميع نصوص الاستماع لكل الامتحانات

Exam 1 محافظة القاهرة - إدارة حلوان

..... 30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 I was watching an old .... match.
a) football b) squash c) tennis d) handball

2 Raneem was .... the match.
a) running b) winning c) watching d) losing

3 I like to .... squash and watch it, too.
a) go b) make c) do d) play

4 I play squash with my friend Hossam every ....
a) Friday b) Sunday c) Monday d) Thursday



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 To cut something is to .... it.
a) mix b) eat c) drink d) chop

2 A .... is someone who learned how to read and write in Ancient Egypt.
a) craftsman b) fisherman c) scribe d) farmer

3 She wears a crown on her ....
a) head b) feet c) legs d) hands

4 In hot weather, you must stay in the ....
a) share b) sun c) moon d) shade

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

conditioning – clothing – cool – drinking – hot

In extreme heat, we should drink lots of water, even if we don't feel thirsty. We should open the windows when there's a ....(1).......... wind. We should wear light, cool ....(2).......... . We should try to spend time in cool buildings with air ....(3).......... . We shouldn't go outside in ....(4).......... weather.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

My name is Ahmed. I like traveling very much. I visited many places around Egypt. Last weekend, I went to Taba. It's a beautiful place by the sea. There's a lot to see and do there. I went with my family. We went by bus. We stayed in an eco-lodge.

We did many activities there. We swam in the sea and made sandcastles. We also enjoyed diving, hiking, and camping. We saw a lot of camels, the Nubian ibex, and rare birds as Taba is full of fantastic wildlife. The local people are very friendly, so we usually have a meal with them to talk about their culture. We left the place late at night. We were sad to leave. It was a fantastic holiday.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Taba is good for ....

a) hunting b) eco-tourism c) shopping d) floods

2 We were .... to leave Taba.

a) pleased b) happy c) unhappy d) glad

B Answer the following questions:

3 How did they go to Taba? ....

4 Why do they usually have a meal with the local people?

....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 good – I'm – very – at – football – playing.

....

2 does – help – How – tourism – community – our?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 I .... (mustn't) study hard.

2 He .... (always) swims. He hates swimming.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

what's your favorite food

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"My favorite clothes"

my favorite – white shirt

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Ahmed likes his school ....
a) bus b) uniform c) teachers d) doors

2 Boys wear white .... and blue trousers.
a) hats b) shirts c) dresses d) shoes

3 The girls don't wear ....
a) skirts b) bags c) socks d) trousers

4 Boys and girls have to wear a .... every day.
a) boots b) scarf c) coat d) tie



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 She is good at reading, but she is .... at drawing.
a) cold b) bad c) big d) fat

2 A .... is a very big person.
a) rich b) nice c) giant d) poor

3 We can eat .... for dessert.
a) meat b) rice c) chocolate d) bread

4 A .... helps sick animals.
a) teacher b) vet c) doctor d) scribe

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

favorites – club – football – playing – eating

We are watching a squash match. I love squash and I'm good at ....(1).......... tennis, too. My brother is good at ....(2).......... . My mom's ....(3).......... are sailing and handball. My brother and I play many sports in the ....(4).......... . In Egypt, we have many kinds of sports.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

I'm Noha. I live in Aswan. I'm in grade five. I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my family. I have cheese, yogurt, and fruit salad. My sister has fried eggs and bread. My parents have ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables, fruits, and rice for lunch. My sister and I help our mother in the kitchen. I study my lessons after lunch. I go to bed at nine o'clock.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The general idea of the text is about Noha's ....

a) friends b) family c) school d) sports

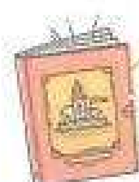
2 The underlined phrase "get up" means ....

a) wake up b) play c) go d) sleep

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What does Noha have for breakfast? ....

4 Where does Noha go in the afternoon? ....



Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (2)

1 makes – The – shoes – his workshop – in – shoemaker.

....

2 market – onions – sells – She – the – at.

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (2)

1 We mustn't .... (talking) in the library.

2 She didn't .... (cleaned) the room yesterday.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (1)

i live in Cairo

....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** (5)

"A fantastic place in Egypt"

beautiful place – had lunch

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Hamza's father is a ....

a) doctor b) tour guide c) teacher d) carpenter

2 Tour guides show .... the country they are visiting.

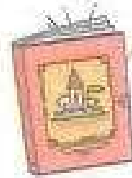
a) tourists b) pilots c) fishermen d) teachers

3 Tour guides need to be ....

a) bad b) sad c) friendly d) old

4 Tourists should have a/an .... holiday.

a) terrible b) poor c) awful d) good



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Football is very .... in Egypt.

a) popular b) smooth c) sleepy d) busy

2 He packed his clothes in a small ....

a) kettle b) pot c) suitcase d) pencil case

3 Wheat is a very useful kind of ....

a) vegetable b) fruit c) meat d) grain

4 The movie was ...., so I stopped watching it.

a) boring b) interesting c) exciting d) wonderful

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

climate – cold – rainy – winters – dry

Egypt has a nice variety of weather. It is usually very ....(1)............... in deserts. In Egypt, we have hot summers. Our ....(2)........... are cooler in Egypt. The desert has a very special ....(3)........... with very hot days and very ....(4)........... nights.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Once upon a time, there was a kind and honest shoemaker. He lived in a town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were very happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money. One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. There was not enough leather to make new shoes. He cut out the leather for the next day. The next morning, he found two pairs of beautiful shoes. They were made by the elves.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The shoemaker was ....

a) rich b) poor c) foolish d) cold

2 The shoemaker and his .... were happy.

a) brother b) sister c) father d) wife

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did the shoemaker work? ....

4 Summarize the text in two sentences. ....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 sleeping – He – yesterday – at – wasn't – night.

....

2 favorite – chocolate – Farida's – is – food.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 Are there .... (some) mangoes?

2 She was .... (cook) dinner.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

hedaya Malak is a famous egyptian taekwondo player.

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Our school uniform"

uniform – smart

....

....

....

....

....

Exam 4 محافظة الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين 30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 I like visiting my ....

a) uncle b) doctor c) cousin d) grandma

2 My grandma has .... in the garden.

a) orange trees b) onions c) mango trees d) lime trees

3 We have .... in our garden.

a) tomatoes b) onions c) orange trees d) lemon trees

4 My grandma made .... for me.

a) koshari b) beans c) mahalabia d) salad



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 I wear football .... to play football.

a) goggles b) boots c) sandals d) rackets

2 A .... is a very large building built a long time ago.

a) cage b) castle c) box d) garden

3 .... could buy and sell everything in Ancient Egypt.

a) Traders b) Scribes c) Doctors d) Teachers

4 Mona is wearing a .... dress, it has red and black dots all over it.

a) spotted b) striped c) costume d) tie

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

Cars – stay – foot – environment – plane

Eco-tourism is unusual and exciting. It looks after the ....(1).......... and helps local people. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by ....(2).......... . They travel by trains, on ....(3).........., or by bikes. They ....(4).......... in small local hotels.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job. They could be fishermen, bakers, or doctors, but most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields near their homes. They grew crops, like wheat and corn. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were good. They made beautiful gold jewelry, and sculptures. They used to weave clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... in Ancient Egypt.

a) cloth b) pots c) jobs d) food

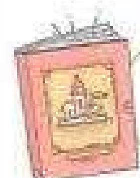
2 .... worked in fields near their homes.

a) Fishermen b) Farmers c) Doctors d) Nurses

B Answer the following questions:

3 What crops did Ancient Egyptian farmers grow? ....

4 What did Ancient Egyptian craftsmen do? ....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 wears – She – skirt – a gray – cotton.

....

2 does – How often – dinner – make – he?

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 They are good at .... (play) football.

2 We .... (go) to the zoo yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following: 1

where did you go on monday?

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Different jobs"

doctor – helping sick people

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Kareem's father is a ....
a) doctor b) tour guide c) teacher d) farmer

2 Tour guides show .... the country they are visiting.
a) tourists b) engineers c) fishermen d) students

3 Tour guides need to be ....
a) bad b) sad c) friendly d) impolite

4 Tourists should have a .... holiday.
a) bad b) terrible c) awful d) good



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Lions are kept in a .... at the zoo.
a) cage b) page c) bag d) coin

2 People wear sweaters and .... in cold weather.
a) goggles b) shorts c) coats d) rings

3 A .... is a bad dream.
a) shade b) nightmare c) problem d) traffic

4 You can know today's date from the .... on the wall.
a) calendar b) waterfall c) lake d) island

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

stop – shut – protect – on – off

To stay safe during a sandstorm, you have to follow some instructions. Wear a scarf to ....(1).......... your face. Stay inside, so the sand can't get in your mouth. Drive to the side of the road, so you can ....(2).......... your car. Make sure your windows are ....(3).......... so no sand can get in. Turn ....(4).......... air conditioning to stop the sand from coming in.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Robot is a machine. It is a special kind of machine that moves. You can control it from a computer. Because it is a machine, it doesn't make mistakes. It doesn't get tired. Robots are all round us. Some robots are used to make things. Robots can help make cars, explore volcanoes, and clean things. These robots can help clean your house. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans, but most robots just look like machines.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 The word They refers to ....

a) computers b) robots c) animals d) volcanoes

2 Most robots just look like ....

a) humans b) cars c) machines d) clothes

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 How can you control a robot? ....

4 What jobs can robots do? ....



Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** 2

1 are – The – working – ants – hard.

....

2 do – I – always – homework – my.

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** 2

1 Jack .... (sees) a very big giant last night.

2 Everyone .... (have) a job in Ancient Egypt.

7 **Punctuate the following:** 1

i practice tennis a lot in the summer

....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** 5

"My favorite healthy food"

fruits and vegetables – balanced diet

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 The desert has a very special ....

a) meal b) climate c) mountain d) wind

2 The temperature can go to .... °C.

a) zero b) one c) two d) three

3 People who live in the desert try to keep .... at night.

a) cool b) calm c) warm d) happy

4 The nights in the desert are very ....

a) hot b) sunny c) warm d) cold



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 People wear hats to .... their faces from the sun.

a) leave b) protect c) make d) have

2 A/An .... is a bad dream.

a) shade b) gate c) nightmare d) gas

3 Gases from cars and factories are called ....

a) emissions b) greenhouses c) gardens d) sports

4 I like ice cream for ....

a) desert b) forest c) coral d) dessert

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

belt – gloves – pockets – striped – crown

I am Talia. I am wearing a..........(1).......... dress with a ....(2).......... . There are two ....(3).......... . I like wearing ....(4).......... on my hands, they are white.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

There are many things we can do to live a healthy life. For example, we can eat fruit and vegetable in our meals. Unhealthy food is bad for us. Try to do some exercise. You can ride your bike to school. Also, you should have enough sleep, not less than six hours.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 .... isn't good for us.

a) Healthy food b) Unhealthy food c) Fruit d) Vegetable

2 You should sleep .... hours.

a) six b) five c) four d) three

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What should you do to live a healthy life? ....

4 Why should we ride bikes? ....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 you – home – Do – at – grow – fruit?

....

2 never – after – Ali – is – work – tired.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 Mr. Ahmed .... (catch) the bus every day.

2 We .... (sleep) at 5 am yesterday.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

hager wants mango pineapple and orange to eat.

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Eco-tourism"

help environment – unusual and exciting

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Omar has got .... brothers.
a) four b) two c) five d) three

2 Omar and his brothers go to school ....
a) on foot b) by bus c) by car d) by train

3 They go to the park on ....
a) Saturday b) Monday c) Tuesday d) Friday

4 They play .... at the park.
a) basketball b) tennis c) football d) volleyball



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 My school .... is a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.
a) uniform b) bag c) book d) subject

2 Eco-tourism helps to .... the wildlife.
a) ask b) build c) buy d) protect

3 The nightmare is a very bad ....
a) name b) person c) dream d) drink

4 A .... helps sick animals.
a) teacher b) vet c) dentist d) doctor

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

amazing – guide – awful – like – tourists

Many people in Egypt work in tourism. A tour ....(1).............. shows the tourists the country. He needs to know the places that the ....(2)............... want to visit. Egypt is an ....(3)............... place for tourists. I would ....(4).............. to be a tour guide in the future.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

People have three meals every day: breakfast, lunch, and dinner. They eat these meals in the morning, in the afternoon, and in the evening. But most people don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very important and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to keep healthy. They also advise people to drink a lot of water and practice a sport every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 People have .... meals every day.

a) four b) one c) three d) five

2 The underlined word "They" refers to ....

a) people b) meals c) fruits d) vegetables

B Answer the following questions:

3 What should people eat? ....

4 Summarize the text in one sentence. ....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: 2

1 eat – We – in – mustn't – the – classroom.

....

2 flowers – full – The – gardens – are – of.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 2

1 She went to the shop to .... (bought) a dress.

2 What were you .... (do) yesterday morning?

7 Punctuate the following: 1

does Ahmed go to school on Monday

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: 5

"Water pollution"

What are the causes? – What are the solutions?

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Sami went to .... on a trip.
a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Paris d) Giza

2 He went to Alex to .... in the sea.
a) play b) dive c) run d) swim

3 He went there by ....
a) car b) bus c) plane d) train

4 It was a/an .... trip.
a) awful b) bad c) boring d) exciting



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Eco-tourism .... after the environment.
a) plays b) looks c) eats d) goes

2 It's .... to eat a balanced diet.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad d) sad

3 Girls and boys have to wear .... at school.
a) dresses b) jeans c) uniforms d) galabeya

4 I'm doing a school .... about Egyptian clothes.
a) project b) story c) trip d) timetable

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

for – much – toxic – hospital – many

I can't breathe. The air is black and ....(1).......... . There are too ....(2).......... emissions from cars. It's dangerous ....(3).......... children. My little brother had to go to the ....(4).......... because of problems with his breathing.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Amira and Adel are a brother and a sister. They usually have a nice weekend. They play football together in the park on Thursday after school. Then Amira helps her mom clean the house. Adel goes to the supermarket with his dad to buy things for the family. On Friday, they visit their grandparents in Mansoura and spend the day on the farm. On Saturday evening, they go to the cinema to watch a movie.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Amira and Adel spent a .... weekend.

a) bad b) sad c) boring d) nice

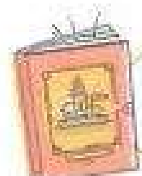
2 .... helps her mom clean the house.

a) Amira b) Adel c) Father d) Amira and Adel

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 Why do Adel and father go to the supermarket? ....

4 What do they do on Friday? ....



Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** 2

1 is – She – playing – good – squash – at.

....

2 wear – to – boots – football – play – I.

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** 2

1 I .... (mustn't) tidy up my room. It's very messy.

2 He was .... (travel)) to Cairo yesterday evening.

7 **Punctuate the following:** 1

ahmed doesn't have any grapes

....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** 5

"Elephantine Island"

visit – Aswan

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian .... player.
a) karate b) taekwondo c) tennis d) football

2 She carried the .... flag at the Tokyo Olympics Games.
a) Egyptian b) French c) American d) Chinese

3 She began practicing taekwondo at the age of.............................. .
a) six b) four c) seven d) one

4 She won many .... at the age of 14.
a) flags b) books c) pens d) prizes



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to ....
a) die b) breathe c) jump d) survive

2 She is .... a spotted dress with a belt.
a) eating b) sleeping c) playing d) wearing

3 The nightmare is a very bad ....
a) dream b) name c) person d) drink

4 A heat wave is when the temperature goes very ....
a) low b) slow c) high d) deep

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

mahalabia – school – garden – fresh – mango

I like chicken and fish. But my favorite food is ....(1).......... . My father grows mango trees in the ....(2).......... . I use mangoes to make ....(3).......... mango juice. We can use them to make fruit salad, too. If we add sugar and milk, we can turn them into delicious ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Sharm El-Sheikh is the best place to visit in Egypt. I traveled there with my uncle. He told me that Sharm El-Sheikh is good for eco-tourism because there are valleys, mountains, deserts, and seas. So, tourists can do different activities. Tourists can enjoy hiking, camping, and diving. They can find everything in Sharm El-Sheikh for a great holiday. Tourists can stay in eco-lodges. They can also meet the local people, have a meal with them, and talk to them about their culture.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Sharm El-Sheikh is in ....

a) Libya b) Jordan c) Oman d) Egypt

2 The underlined word "hiking" means ....

a) sleeping b) running c) walking d) drawing

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What activities can tourists do in Sharm El-Sheikh? ....

4 Summarize the text in one sentence. ....



Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (2)

1 hard – must – We – at – work – school.

....

2 there – tomatoes – Are – any?

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (2)

1 Mona is .... (good) than Nada.

2 Maged .... (never is) late for school.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (1)

i want to be a farmer

....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** (5)

"How to keep safe in a sandstorm"

protect – inside

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 We visited .... yesterday.
a) Aswan b) Alexandria c) Luxor d) Dahab

2 We went there by ....
a) taxi b) plane c) train d) car

3 We saw Elephantine .... there.
a) Lake b) Island c) Pool d) Camp

4 There are no ...., but there are lots of trees.
a) forests b) trees c) islands d) rains



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 She is good at sports. She's a famous ....
a) athlete b) doctor c) teacher d) vet

2 Lamar .... on the door before she came in.
a) tasted b) wanted c) knocked d) lived

3 To " ...." means to pick something up quickly.
a) breathe b) cut off c) grab d) chop

4 She went to the kitchen to .... a cake.
a) buy b) make c) do d) write

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

grew – fields – farmers – job – fish

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a ....(1).......... . They could be fishermen, bakers or doctors. But most people worked as ....(2).......... . They worked in ....(3).......... near their homes. They ....(4).......... crops like wheat and corn. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were good.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. There are many activities to do in Taba. Tourists can hike in the mountains and valleys. They can swim and dive in the sea. They can also camp and stay in eco-lodges. The wildlife is fantastic in Taba. There is the Nubian ibex and many rare birds that live there. If you like history, visit the Nawamis. It is a village of round, very old buildings.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Taba is a good place for ....

a) eco-tourism b) farming c) running d) reading

2 Tourists can .... in the mountains and valleys.

a) drive b) swim c) hike d) play

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What can tourists do in the sea? ....

4 What is Nawamis? ....



Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** (2)

1 having – he – lunch – Was – at – home?

....

2 at – He – reading – good – is – English.

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** (2)

1 Are there .... (some) tomatoes?

2 I must .... (bought) some oranges.

7 **Punctuate the following:** (1)

i like Egyptian food

....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** (5)

"Football"

favorite – pitch

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Eco-tourism is a/an .... idea.
a) bad b) ugly c) exciting d) weak

2 Sherif is a .... in Hurghada.
a) trader b) tour guide c) doctor d) vet

3 He tells the tourists where they can ....
a) play b) walk c) run d) dive

4 Normal tourism .... the natural environment.
a) looks after b) protects c) damages d) saves



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 The .... is a box in which we keep animals.
a) ecosystem b) cage c) desert d) river

2 We stayed in the .... to avoid the hot sunshine.
a) summer b) heat wave c) storm d) shade

3 I can't climb the garden .... because it is high.
a) chair b) fence c) desk d) chair

4 Water .... is a very dangerous problem.
a) population b) sport c) wheel d) pollution

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

robe – hidden – short – long – galabeya

The Egyptian people wear many traditional clothes. Many men wear ....(1).......... . This is a long white ....(2).......... that is very popular. It looks really cool. It's made from cotton and is usually white. The sleeves are ....(3).......... . It has ....(4).......... pockets, but they are long.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. It can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It also can kill the birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats. We should save as much water as possible. We shouldn't throw garbage in or near a lake or a beach.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... pollution.

a) land b) water c) noise d) air

2 The underlined word "garbage" means ....

a) cities b) boxes c) animals d) trash

B Answer the following questions:

3 What are the water bodies? ....

4 What can polluted water kill? ....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 tomatoes – about – some – How – buying?

....

2 a gold – She – wants – medal – win – to.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 We .... (grow always) mangoes in our garden.

2 I have a .... (leather, black) bag.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

where can samy play tennis

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"The weather in Egypt"

nice variety of weather – cool winter

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Hedaya Malak is ....
a) lazy b) famous c) slow d) bad

2 Hedaya plays ....
a) football b) tennis c) taekwondo d) basketball

3 Hedaya carried the Egyptian ....
a) city b) flag c) river d) lake

4 She won .... prizes.
a) many b) some c) much d) any



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 The Elephantine .... is in Aswan.
a) River b) Island c) Lake d) Oasis

2 A .... is a very very big person.
a) poor b) rich c) giant d) short

3 I have lunch .... a day.
a) ten b) one c) once d) two

4 We haven't got .... tomatoes.
a) some b) little c) any d) much

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

Egypt – traditional – are – from – has

The galabeya is a ....(1).......... Egyptian clothing. It is made ....(2).......... cotton. It ....(3).......... pockets but they are hidden. The sleeves ....(4).......... long so we do not get sunburned.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

My name is Samy. I am in primary five. English is my favorite subject. I want to be a vet because I like helping animals. I always take care of my little dog. Its name is Jack. Jack is good, strong, and helpful. One day, a bad boy hit me. Jack quickly helped me. What a brave dog!

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 .... is in primary five.

a) Jack b) Samy c) Jack and Samy d) They

2 Jack is not a .... dog.

a) good b) bad c) strong d) helpful

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What is Samy's favorite subject? ....

4 How did Jack help Samy? ....



Writing

5 **Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:** 2

1 good – am – English – I – at – speaking.

....

2 buying – How – grapes – some – about?

....

6 **Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:** 2

1 I must .... (doing) my English homework.

2 .... (Are) they reading at 2 pm yesterday?

7 **Punctuate the following:** 1

we always help local people

....

8 **Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:** 5

"My favorite sport"

What is your favorite sport? – Where do you play it?

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Farmers worked in .... near their houses.
a) factories b) fields c) schools d) hospitals

2 They grew crops like wheat and ....
a) bananas b) corn c) vegetables d) rice

3 Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made beautiful .... jewelry.
a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) metal

4 Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a ....
a) farm b) statue c) job d) factory



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 .... is something that isn't alive.
a) Living b) Rainforest c) Non-living d) Rockpool

2 The film was.......................... , so I stopped watching it.
a) exciting b) boring c) interesting d) nice

3 The .... of galabeya are long.
a) sleeves b) belts c) boots d) buttons

4 I was traveling by boat to the ....
a) street b) road c) desert d) island

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

back – pack – excited – shorts – sunglasses

I am Soha. I'm going to travel to Alexandria for a holiday with my family next week. We are very ....(1).......... . We need to ....(2).......... our suitcases. My brother Hany needs to pack his swimming ....(3).......... to swim in the sea. I will take my ....(4).......... because it will be sunny. It will be a nice holiday.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

My school uniform is very special and smart. The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The girls wear a long, dark blue skirt. They wear a pale green T-shirt. It is a short-sleeved, cotton one. They don't wear a tie. The boys wear dark blue trousers and a green T-shirt. They have to wear a tie every day. It is striped green and blue. When it's cold, we wear a dark green jacket with pockets.

A **Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 My school uniform is special and ....

a) smart b) tight c) small d) big

2 The boys wear dark .... trousers.

a) yellow b) green c) red d) blue

B **Answer the following questions:**

3 What do the girls wear? ....

4 What do they wear when it's cold? ....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 like – pots – making – We – clay – from.

....

2 wanted – sell – Jack – cow – to – the.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 How about .... (visit) Cairo?

2 .... (Are) there any milk?

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

where do you play tennis

....

8 Write a biography of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"A famous athlete"

Who is she? – Why is she important?

....

....

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Fareeda's favorite healthy food is ....
a) pizza b) fish c) chicken d) salad

2 Fareeda's uncle grows onions and ....
a) carrots b) apples c) rice d) potatoes

3 Dina likes ....
a) bread b) water c) chocolate d) meat

4 Dina has a/an .... tree in her garden.
a) mango b) apple c) lemon d) orange



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 A .... in Ancient Egypt bought and sold things like gold.
a) trader b) scribe c) vet d) fisherman

2 I wear black .... on my hands in winter.
a) shoes b) pants c) gloves d) sunglasses

3 We mustn't talk in the ....
a) library b) street c) stadium d) playground

4 The .... is a box in which we keep animals.
a) citadel b) castle c) cage d) cave

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 4

pool – rackets – pitch – goggles – boots

I like to play football on the ....(1)......... . I wear my football ....(2)......... to play with my friends. My sister goes swimming in the ....(3)......... . She uses her ....(4)......... to protect her eyes.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Football is one of the most popular sports in the world. People like it very much. People play football on pitches. It is one of the most important games in the Olympic Games since 1900 . People play football by foot, but the *goalkeeper is the only player who can hold the ball with his hands. People play football in two teams. Each team consists of eleven players. The winner is the team who scores the most goals in the match.

*حارس المرمى

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 People play football on ....

a) pools b) pitches c) farms d) courts

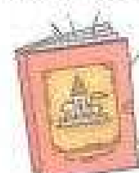
2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....

a) foot b) match c) football d) pitch

B Answer the following questions:

3 Who can hold the ball with his hand? ....

4 How many players are there in each team? ....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2)

1 would – like – I – carrots – some – , please.

....

2 beautiful – a – Egypt – is – very – country.

....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (2)

1 I am great at .... (play) tennis.

2 We haven't got .... (some) sugar.

7 Punctuate the following: (1)

my pajamas are really cool

....

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: (5)

"Sports equipment"

boots – rackets

....

....

....

....

....

Exam 1

30



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Fares is .... years old.
(five – ten – four)

2 He has got .... brother(s).
(one – two – three)

3 They go to the park on ....
(Saturday – Tuesday – Friday)

Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

8

Yes – vet – do – animals

Ahmed : What job do you want to (1) .... when you grow up?
Omar : I want to be a (2) ....
Ahmed : Do you like (3) ....?
Omar : (4) ...., I do.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

7.5

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian sports person. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 She began practicing .... at the age of seven.
(taekwondo – football – tennis)

2 Hedaya carried her country's .... in 2021.
(cup – club – flag)

3 She won the bronze .... in Tokyo in 2021.
(necklace – medal – glasses)

B Answer the following questions:

4 Who is Hedaya Malak?

....

5 When was she born?

....

Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

1 Candies and cola are ....

a) healthy b) fresh c) unhealthy

2 The weather is .... It's very hot.

a) windy b) sunny c) cloudy

3 I wear .... to protect my eyes.

a) sunglasses b) gloves c) crowns

4 She's good at .... poems.

a) write b) writing c) wrote

5 Are there .... carrots?

a) an b) some c) any

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

1 sleep – I – late – never.

....

2 an orange – Would – like – you?

....

3 red – sweater – I'll – pack – my.

....

4 very – summers – We – hot – have.

....

5 hard – must – work – You.

....

Exam 2 (30)



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: (4.5)

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 My mom and I are going shopping at the ....
(school – supermarket – hospital)

2 We need milk to make ....
(bread – candy – cake)

3 We need bread to make sandwiches for ....
(lunch – dinner – breakfast)

Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue: (8)

friends – How often – tennis – club

Omar : What is your favorite sport?
Ramy : My favorite sport is (1) ....
Omar : Where do you play it?
Ramy : I play it in the (2) ....
Omar : Who do you play tennis with?
Ramy : I play tennis with my (3) ....
Omar : (4) .... do you go to the club?
Ramy : I go to the club three times a week.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (7.5)

An eco-system is a place where animals, plants, and other living things live together. Animals and plants need each other to live. They also need suitable conditions. Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to survive. They need food, water, and shelter. Plants need sunlight and water to survive. They also need the right climate.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
(eco-hotel – eco-tourism – eco-system)

2 The underlined pronoun "They" refers to ....
(animals – deserts – people)

3 Plants need .... and water to survive.
(people – sunlight – money)

B Answer the following questions:

4 What is an eco-system? ....

5 What do plants need to survive? ....

Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer:

5

1 The .... are buzzing all the day.
a) snakes b) ants c) bees

2 People wear hats to .... themselves from the sun.
a) hurt b) protect c) keep

3 Wheat is a very useful kind of ....
a) vegetables b) meat c) grains

4 We .... squash at 7 pm yesterday.
a) playing b) played c) were playing

5 .... you meet Ali last night?
a) Do b) Does c) Did

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

1 am – I – Island – Elephantine – on.

....

2 have – mango – trees – you – Do – any?

....

3 a – want – be – I – to – vet.

....

4 some – you – Would – like – oranges?

....

5 sleep – to – I – bedroom – went – my – to.

....

Exam 3

30



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: 4.5

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. Hassan's father is a/an ....
   (doctor – teacher – farmer)
2. He works in a /an ....
   (school – farm – hospital)
3. He gets up at ....
   (seven – six – nine)

Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue: 8

chocolate – list – dinner – need

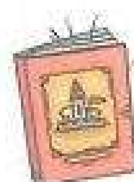
Dad : OK, what do we (1) .... to get, Amal?

Amal : We need (2) ....

Dad : Is it on Mom's (3) .... ?

Amal : No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?

Dad : OK, but don't eat it until after (4) ...., Amal.



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions: 7.5

Youssef, Nesma and Wael are friends. They are at the same age. They will visit Al Fayoum next Friday. They are excited to go there. They need to pack their suitcases for the holiday. Youssef will need his sneakers because they will walk around a lot and he needs to wear something comfortable on his feet. Nesma will pack her sunglasses because it will be very sunny there. Wael will pack his swimming shorts because he wants to go swimming there.

A Choose the correct answer:

1 Youssef, Nesma and Wael are ....

(friends – cousins – brothers)

2 The underlined word "excited" means ....

(angry – sad – happy)

3 It will be sunny in Al Fayoum so Nesma will pack her ....

(necklace – sunglasses – gloves)

B Answer the following questions:

4 When will the friends visit Al Fayoum? ....

5 Why does Youssef want to pack his sneakers? ....

Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer: (5)

1 .... helps people learn about new cultures.

a) Pollution b) Tourism c) Wildlife

2 .... are good at making things by their hands.

a) Farmers b) Craftsmen c) Scribes

3 Salma is great at .... pictures.

a) draws b) draw c) drawing

4 We stayed in the .... to avoid the hot sunshine.

a) summer b) storm c) shade

5 Ahmed .... salad. He doesn't like it.

a) always eat b) never eats c) eats never

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences: (5)

1 in – there – boys – Are – the class – any? ....

2 wants – be – He – to – healthy. ....

3 good – I'm – piano – playing – at – the. ....

4 you – Did – play – video – games – yesterday? ....

5 travels – every – Dina – to – year – Paris. ....

Exam 1 (30)



Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text: (8)

playing – like – in – with

My favorite sport is football. I ....(1).......... football very much. I play it once a week. I play it well. I play football ....(2).......... my friends. I play it ....(3).......... the club. I play it in the evening. I like it very much. It's fun. I enjoy ....(4).......... football.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d: (6)

1 .... the basbousa in the oven.
a) Mix b) Eat c) Drink d) Bake

2 She is good at playing the piano. She is a ....
a) scientist b) pianist c) geologist d) journalist

3 To " .... " means to pick something up quickly.
a) breathe b) cut off c) grab d) chop

4 She is wearing .... on her hands.
a) belts b) gloves c) sunglasses d) boots

3 Read the text and answer the questions: (6)

Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It's a busy city. About 20 million people live and work there. People can have a nice sightseeing in Cairo. You can take the subway or drive a car to the museum. You can catch a taxi to get to the Cairo Tower. It's the tallest place in Cairo. You can see all the city from it.

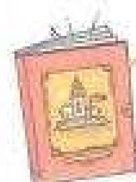
A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Giza d) Aswan

2 Cairo is a/an .... city.
a) bad b) busy c) small d) dangerous

3 There are .... million people live and work in Cairo.
a) 1 b) 2 c) 10 d) 20

4 The Cairo .... is the tallest place in Cairo.
a) Zoo b) Museum c) Tower d) Pyramid



Writing

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c: 4

1 have – some – juice – like – I'd – to.

a) I'd like to have some juice.

b) I'd like have to some juice.

c) I'd have like to some juice.

2 your – should – wear – You – uniform – school.

a) You should wear your uniform school.

b) You should wear your school uniform.

c) You wear should school your uniform.

5 Order the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d: 6

a) I ordered fish and rice there. 1. (   )

b) I ordered salad, too. 2. (   )

c) After I had my meal, I went back home. 3. (   )

d) Yesterday, I went to a restaurant. 4. (   )

Exam 2

30



Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

8

juice – mango – delicious – drinking

I like to eat fruit. My favorite fruit is ....(1).......... . We can make..........(2).......... from it. It's very ....(3).......... . I like ....(4).......... it very much.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 I'm good .... playing football.

a) at b) for c) in d) on

2 I planted an apple tree in my ....

a) library b) office c) room d) garden

3 To be healthy, eat healthy food like ....

a) chocolate b) vegetabales c) sweets d) water

4 The .... are buzzing.

a) birds b) bees c) ants d) chickens

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

My favorite food is fish. It's a delicious meal. Fish is healthy. I always eat it with rice and salad. I buy it at the market. I like fish a lot.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) clothes b) shop c) fish d) school

2 It's a/an .... meal.

a) unhealthy b) delicious c) bad d) fat

3 I eat fish with ....

a) rice and salad b) chicken c) mango d) apple

4 I buy fish at the ....

a) shop b) market c) restaurant d) park



Writing

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c:

4

1 you – What – would – like?

a) Like you what would.

b) You like what would.

c) What would you like?

2 very – were – They – poor.

a) Were they poor very.

b) They were very poor.

c) Poor they were very.

5 Order the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

6

a) We played football. 1. ( )

b) Then, I met my friends. 2. ( )

c) After that I went back home. 3. ( )

d) Yesterday, I went to the club. 4. ( )

Exam 3 30



Reading

1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text: 8

one – foot – in – park

My name is Ali. I'm ....(1).......... primary five. I've got two brothers and ....(2).......... sister. My brothers go to school by bus. I go to school on ....(3).......... . But my sister go to school with my father by car. On Fridays, we go to the ....(4).......... with our parents.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 6

1 It's .... to eat a lot of chocolate.

a) useful b) good c) healthy d) unhealthy

2 My grandmother .... potatoes and onions.

a) drinks b) sleeps c) plays d) grows

3 We sit under the .... of this tree and have lunch.

a) shade b) shape c) shore d) shop

4 I always wear my swimming .... in the sea.

a) goggles b) beach c) pitch d) court

3 Read the text and answer the questions: 6

Asser is excited. He is packing his suitcase for the holiday tomorrow. He is going to Al Fayoum to see his uncle and aunt. He is packing his green T-shirt and the swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool. He will need his sunglasses because it will be sunny. He should pack a sweater because it can be cool in the evenings. He will pack his stripped pajamas for sleep.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Asser is ....

a) sad b) fat c) thin d) excited

2 Asser will go to ....

a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Al Fayoum d) Giza

3 Asser's uncle has a lovely ....

a) river b) lake c) sea d) pool

4 Asser will need his sweater because it can be ....

a) sunny b) cool c) warm d) cloudy



Writing

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c: (4)

1 watching – you – What – are?

a) What are you watching?

b) What you are watching?

c) What watching you are?

2 is – in – hot – summer – It.

a) It summer is hot in.

b) It is hot in summer.

c) It in summer hot.

5 Order the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d: (6)

a) Then, I have breakfast with my family. 1. ( )

b) After that, I go to school with my friends. 2. ( )

c) I wake up at 7 every morning. 3. ( )

d) I wash my face and brush my teeth. 4. ( )

Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

Fareeda likes food. Her favorite food is chocolate. She thinks that eating a lot of chocolate is unhealthy, but it's OK if we eat a little. She also likes to eat fruits. Her favorite fruit is mango. She has a mango tree in the garden.

Practice on Lesson 3

Jack bought some special beans. The beans grew into a giant stalk. He climbed the stalk and found a magic hen in a cage. Next to the hen was a golden egg. The hen stayed with Jack and his mother. They became rich and happy ever after.

Test Yourself on Unit 1

Marwan eats too much unhealthy food. He always has cheese, jam, and bread for breakfast. He has fried chicken, French fries, and rice for lunch. Then he has pizza for dinner. At night, he has chocolate and cookies as a snack. I think he needs to eat more healthy food.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

Seleem and Wael are friends. Wael is very good at playing football, but he is bad at playing handball. Seleem is good at playing squash, but he is bad at playing tennis. Seleem is watching an old squash match. Raneem El Weleily is winning the match.

Practice on Lesson 3

Rami, Hana, Ahmed, and Amira like sports. Rami likes karate as he can do a lot of moves. Hana likes to swim. She goes to the swimming pool twice a week. Ahmed plays football on the pitch. Amira is a good squash player. Her racket is white and blue.

Test Yourself on Unit 2

Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

Al-Azhar Corner

My name is Marwan. I'm good at tennis. I go to the club every Friday to play tennis. I'm bad at handball. I never win.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

My name is Mariam. Tomorrow, I will travel to Al Fayoum. I need to pack my suitcase. I need to pack my green T-shirt and my black pants. My sister Soha needs to pack her sunglasses because it will be very sunny. She will pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

Practice on Lesson 3

There was a kind and honest shoemaker. One day, the shoemaker was too tired to make the shoes. He cut out the leather and left it until the next morning. Two little elves helped the shoemaker and made a beautiful pair of shoes for him. The shoemaker was very happy and gave new clothes to the elves.

Test Yourself on Unit 3

At school, boys wear a dark blue shirt. Boys have to wear a tie every day. It's white with light blue stripes on it. Boys wear dark gray trousers. The girls wear a dark blue shirt, too. They wear a dark gray skirt. In winter, boys and girls wear a dark red jacket.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 1

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is full of history. You can visit the Aswan Museum, where you can find very old things from the island, like a rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III. The island is also a beautiful, calm place.

Practice on Lesson 2

I'm Sara. I was studying English at 10 yesterday. My family and I were having breakfast at 8 in the morning. We were listening to the radio yesterday evening. We went to a lake near the house. The fish were swimming in the lake.

Practice on Lesson 3

Sherif is a tour guide. He is telling us about the pros and cons of tourism. It gives jobs for local people. It helps people learn about new cultures. But it creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Tourism damages the natural environment. It damages historical places or monuments.

Test Yourself on Unit 4

Elephantine Island is an amazing place. It's in Aswan. Tourists come from all over the world to visit it. They can travel by boat to visit it. The island is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is a beautiful historical place. There are no forests, but there are lots of trees.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals and cleaned the house. They took care of their children. Women could weave baskets and bake bread. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

Practice on Lesson 3

The grasshopper was lazy. He thought work was boring. Now, it's winter, and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food, and he can't find any. The ant wasn't lazy. He worked, and now he has food.

Test Yourself on Unit 5

Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. Animals and plants need each other to live. They need food, water, and shelter to survive.

Al-Azhar Corner

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good. They made beautiful paintings, beautiful gold jewelry, and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.

UNIT 6

Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Amira. My father is a weatherman. He says it is going to rain in Cairo today. It's going to be very windy in Alexandria today. Today in Sharm El-Sheikh, they will have some ice. In Luxor, they

are going to have a storm, so they should stay at home.

Practice on Lessons 2&3

I'm Salma. I always wake up at 7 am every morning. I usually have breakfast at 8 am. I often drive my car. I sometimes take the bus. I sometimes watch TV at 5 o'clock. I never sleep late. I always go to sleep early.

Test Yourself on Unit 6

When there's a storm, stay inside and keep dry. Make sure you have candles and torches because there might be a power cut. Don't go anywhere by train. Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes. Don't stand near wires – they could fall and give you an electric shock.

Al-Azhar Corner

It's going to be rainy in Cairo. It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice. It's going to be windy in Alexandria. Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home.

نصوص استماع الامتحانات النهائية

Exam 1

Yesterday, I was watching an old squash match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini. Raneem was winning the match. I like to play squash. I like to watch it, too. I play squash with my friend Hossam every Friday.

Exam 2

Ahmed is a good student. He likes his school uniform very much. He goes to school with his friends. They wear the school uniform every day. Boys wear white shirts and blue trousers. The girls don't wear trousers, but they wear blue skirts. Boys and girls have to wear a tie every day.

Exam 3

Hamza is my friend. His father is a tour guide. Tour guides always help tourists. They show tourists the country they are visiting. Tour guides need to be friendly. Tourists have fun when they visit other countries. They should have a good holiday.

Exam 4

I like visiting my grandma. She is very kind. She has mango trees in her garden. We have orange trees in our garden. She always cooks very delicious food. I visited her yesterday. She made mahalabia for me.

Exam 5

My name is Kareem. I live in Hurghada by the beach. My father is a tour guide. I want to be like him. He shows tourists the country they are visiting. He tells the tourists where they can dive. He needs to be friendly. Tourists should have a good holiday.

Exam 6

The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights. The temperature can go to 0 °C. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

Exam 7

I am Omar. I am in grade five. I live in Cairo with a small family. I have got two brothers. We go to the same school. Our school is near our house. We always go to school on foot. We go to the park on Friday. We play football there.

Exam 8

Sami went to Alexandria on a trip. He went to Alex to swim in the sea. He went there with his family. They went by train. They ate a delicious meal at a famous restaurant. They walked along the beach. It was an exciting trip.

Exam 9

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She was born on April 21, 1993. She carried the Egyptian flag at at the Tokyo Olympics Games. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14.

Exam 10

We visited Aswan yesterday. It was a nice trip. We went there by train. We went on a trip on Felucca. We saw Elephantine Island. There are no forests, but there are lots of trees.

Exam 11

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada. He likes his job. He tells the tourists where they can dive. Eco-tourism is better than the normal tourism. Normal tourism usually damages the natural environment.

Exam 12

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is very good at playing taekwondo. She was born on April 21,1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She carried the Egyptian flag at Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021.

Exam 13

There were many important jobs in Ancient Egypt. Farmers worked in fields near their houses. They grew crops like wheat and corn. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made beautiful gold jewelry. Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job.

Exam 14

Fareeda and Dina are friends. They are at the same school. Fareeda likes healthy food. Her favorite healthy food is chicken. Her uncle grows onions and carrots. Dina eats unhealthy food. She likes chocolate. She has an orange tree in her garden, so she can make delicious orange juice.

امتحانات الأزهر الشريف

Exam 1

Fares is ten years old. He has got three brothers. He always plays with them. They go to the park on Friday.

Exam 2

My mom and I are going shopping at the supermarket. First, we make a list of all the things we need to buy. We need milk to make a cake. We need bread to make sandwiches for lunch.

Exam 3

I am Hassan. I love my family so much. My father is a doctor. He works in a big hospital. He goes to work very early, so he gets up at six o' clock.

Writing Answers

يحتوى هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 1 Lesson 2

"Healthy food"

Healthy food helps us grow strong and stay healthy. You should make sure you eat a balanced diet, so your body gets the nutrients it needs. I have ful medames and bread for breakfast. I have chicken, rice, and salad for lunch. I have yogurt and fruit salad for dinner.

UNIT 1 Lessons 4 & 5

"My favorite recipe"

I like all kinds of food. My favorite food is ful medames. It's an easy recipe. I eat it with bread. We can add olive oil to it. It's delicious.

Test Yourself on Unit 1

"My shopping list"

My mom and I go shopping at the supermarket. First, we make a list of all the things we need to buy. We need milk to make a cake for breakfast. We need bread to make sandwiches for lunch.

UNIT 2 Lesson 2

"My favorite sport"

I love playing sports. I'm good at running. I can run very fast! I'm also great at playing football. I enjoy kicking the ball. I practice football with my friends in the club every day.

UNIT 2 Lessons 4 & 5

"Hedaya Malak"

Hedaya Malak is a famous athlete from Egypt. She is great at taekwondo. Hedaya started practicing taekwondo when she was 7. In 2016, Hedaya made her country

proud by winning a bronze medal at the Olympic Games. Then, she won many more medals around the world.

Test Yourself on Unit 2

"Water pollution"

Water pollution happens when harmful things like trash and chemicals get into rivers, lakes, and oceans. These things can make the water dirty and unhealthy. Animals living in polluted water can get sick, and plants may not grow well. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

UNIT 3 Lesson 2

"My favorite clothes"

I like to wear galabeya. I like the galabeya because it is comfortable, especially in the hot weather. The galabeya is cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too.

UNIT 3 Lessons 4 & 5

"My school uniform"

I wear a school uniform every day when I go to school. My uniform is blue and white. I have a blue shirt and white shorts. My friends and I look smart in our school uniforms.

Test Yourself on Unit 3

"Clothes"

In Egypt, people wear special clothes to keep them comfortable in the hot weather like the "galabeya". It's made from cotton to help people stay cool. The sleeves are long, so we don't get sunburned!

UNIT 4 Lesson 2

"What were you doing?"

Yesterday at 6 am, I was getting up early. I was having my breakfast with my family at 7 am. At 10 am, I was going to the park with my mom. I was reading my storybook before bedtime yesterday at 10 pm.

UNIT 4 Lessons 4 & 5

"My favorite eco-resort"

Taba is my favorite eco-resort! Taba has lovely eco-friendly huts where tourists can stay. They are comfortable. In Taba, you can see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! You can see the Nubian ibex and some rare birds. There, you can hike, swim, dive, and go camping.

Test Yourself on Unit 4

"My trip to Aswan"

I went on a trip to Aswan with my family last month. First, we went to the Aswan Museum. Then, we went to Elephantine Island. I traveled by boat to the island with my friends. Next, we visited the temples of Philae. In the evening, we went to a Nubian village and learned about their culture.

UNIT 5 Lesson 2

"Ecosystem"

The connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem. There are different kinds of ecosystems. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest.

UNIT 5 Lessons 4 & 5

"A job you want to do"

I want to be a vet. I like to work with animals and I love this job. If animals are sick or injured, I can help to make them better. I think this job is very important.

Test Yourself on Unit 5

"Jobs in Ancient Egypt"

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers worked hard in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax.

UNIT 6 Lesson 2

"My daily routine"

Every day, I get up early in the morning. First, I brush my teeth and wash my face. Then, I have a delicious breakfast. After that, I get dressed and walk to school. When I come back home, I have lunch and do my homework. In the evening, I read books. I never play video games.

UNIT 6 Lessons 4 & 5

"An extreme weather condition"

A tornado is a very strong wind that turns very fast. When a tornado comes, it can be very dangerous. It can blow houses, trees, and cars away! People need to stay safe and go to a safe place. After the tornado passes, people help each other clean up.

Test Yourself on Unit 6

"A heat wave"

A heat wave is when the weather is very hot for many days. A heat wave can make us feel tired. So, it is important to stay cool and drink lots of water. Wear light clothes and stay in the shade. Some people like to go swimming to cool down. Never leave pets or people in a hot car!